

SATEL-GW600 Series User manual

SATEL-GW600



Issue:

1.04

Date:

30 November 2017

Contents

1	Introduction	14
1.1	Document scope	14
1.1.1	GW600 Series routers	14
1.2	Using this documentation	14
1.2.1	Information tables	14
1.2.2	Definitions	16
1.2.3	Diagnostics	16
1.2.4	UCI commands	16
2	SATEL-GW600 series hardware specification	17
2.1.1	GW600 Series router	17
2.2	GW600 hardware features	17
2.3	Serial ports on the GW600 Series router	17
2.4	GSM and LTE technology	19
2.5	Power supply	20
2.5.1	Power supply symbols	20
2.6	GW600 Series router power supply	20
2.7	GW600 Series router environmental conditions	20
2.8	GW600 Series router dimensions	21
2.9	GW600 Series router compliance	21
2.10	Operating temperature range	21
2.11	Antenna	21
2.12	Components	21
2.13	Inserting a SIM card	21
2.14	Connecting the SIM lock	21
2.14.1	Connecting cables	22
2.15	Connecting the antenna	22
2.16	Powering up the GW600 Series router	22
2.17	Reset button	22
2.18	Recovery mode	22
3	SATEL-GW600 Series LED behaviour	24
3.1	Main LED behaviour	24
3.2	Ethernet port LED behaviour	25
4	Factory configuration extraction from SIM card	27
5	Accessing the router	28
5.1	Configuration packages used	28
5.2	Accessing the router over Ethernet using the web interface	28
5.3	Accessing the router over Ethernet using an SSH client	29
5.3.1	SCP (Secure Copy Protocol)	29

5.4	Accessing the router over Ethernet using a Telnet client	30
5.5	Configuring the password.....	30
5.5.1	Configuration packages used	30
5.6	Configuring the password using the web interface	30
5.7	Configuring the password using UCI	31
5.8	Configuring the password using package options.....	31
5.9	Accessing the device using RADIUS authentication	32
5.10	Accessing the device using TACACS+ authentication	33
5.11	SSH	37
5.11.1	Configuration packages used	37
5.11.2	SSH access using the web interface	37
5.12	Package dropbear using UCI.....	38
5.13	Certs and private keys.....	39
5.14	Configuring a router's web server	40
5.14.1	Configuration packages used	40
5.14.2	Main settings.....	41
5.14.3	HTTP server using UCI.....	43
5.14.4	HTTPs server certificate settings	44
5.14.5	HTTPs server using UCI	45
5.15	Basic authentication (httpd conf)	45
5.16	Securing uhttpd	46
5.17	Displaying custom information via login screen	46
5.17.1	Configuration packages used	46
5.17.2	Configuring login screen custom information	46
6	Configuring Dynamic DNS.....	49
6.1	Overview	49
6.2	Configuration packages used	49
6.3	Configuring Dynamic DNS using the web interface	49
6.3.1	Dynamic DNS settings	50
6.4	Dynamic DNS using UCI.....	51
6.4.1	UCI commands for DDNS	51
7	System settings	53
7.1	Configuration package used	53
7.2	Configuring system properties	53
7.2.1	General settings	53
7.2.2	Logging	54
7.2.3	Language and style	56
7.2.4	Time synchronization.....	56
7.2.5	System reboot.....	57
7.3	System settings using UCI	57

7.4	System diagnostics	58
7.4.1	System events.....	58
7.4.2	System events in flash	59
8	Upgrading router firmware	61
8.1	Software versions	61
8.1.1	Identify your software version	61
8.1.2	Upgrading router firmware for software versions pre- 72.002	62
8.1.3	Upgrading router firmware for software version 72.002 and above.....	64
8.1.4	Flash image and do not reboot option.....	65
8.1.5	Update flash image and reboot using new image immediately option.....	65
8.1.6	Possible file corruption.....	66
8.1.7	Verify the firmware has been upgraded successfully	66
8.2	Upgrading firmware using CLI	67
8.2.1	Transfer file to router	67
9	Router file structure	70
9.1	System information.....	70
9.2	Identify your software version	71
9.3	Image files.....	71
9.4	Directory locations for UCI configuration files	72
9.5	Viewing and changing current configuration	72
9.6	Configuration file syntax	73
9.7	Managing configurations	73
9.7.1	Managing sets of configuration files using directory manipulation.....	73
9.8	Exporting a configuration file	74
9.8.1	Exporting a configuration file using the web interface for software versions pre- 72.002	74
9.8.2	Exporting a configuration file using the web interface for software version 72.002 and above.....	74
9.8.3	Exporting a configuration file using UCI	75
9.9	Importing a configuration file	75
9.9.1	Importing a configuration file using the web interface for software versions pre- 72.002	76
9.9.2	Importing a configuration file using the web interface for software version 72.002 and above.....	77
9.9.3	Importing a configuration file using UCI.....	78
10	Using the Command Line Interface.....	79
10.1	Overview of some common commands	79
10.2	Using Unified Configuration Interface (UCI)	82
10.2.1	Using uci commit to avoid router reboot	84
10.2.2	Export a configuration	84
10.2.3	Show a configuration tree	84

10.2.4	Display just the value of an option	85
10.2.5	High level image commands.....	86
10.2.6	Format of multiple rules.....	86
10.3	Configuration files	87
10.4	Configuration file syntax	87
11	Management configuration settings	89
11.1	Activator.....	89
11.2	Monitor.....	89
11.3	Configuration packages used	89
11.4	Autoload: boot up activation.....	89
11.5	Autoload packages	90
11.5.1	Create a configuration file	90
11.6	Autoload using UCI	93
11.7	HTTP Client: configuring activation using the web interface	94
11.7.1	HTTP Client configuratn packages.....	94
11.7.2	Web configuration.....	94
11.8	Httpclient: Activator configuration using UCI	96
11.9	Httpclient: Activator configuration using package options.....	97
11.10	User management using UCI	98
11.10.1	User management packages	98
11.10.2	Configuring user management.....	98
11.11	Configuring the management user password using UCI.....	99
11.12	Configuring management user password using package options.....	99
11.13	User management using UCI	100
11.14	User management using package options	100
11.15	Configuring user access to specific web pages	101
12	Configuring an Ethernet interface.....	102
12.1	Configuration packages used	102
12.2	Configuring an Ethernet interface using the web interface	102
12.2.1	Interface overview: editing an existing interface	103
12.2.2	Interface overview: creating a new interface	103
12.2.3	Interface overview: common configuration.....	104
12.2.4	Interface overview: IP-aliases	110
12.2.5	Interface overview: DHCP server	112
12.3	Interface configuration using UCI.....	114
12.3.1	Interface common configuration using package options	115
12.3.2	Loopback interfaces	116
12.4	Configuring port maps	117
12.5	Port map packages.....	117
12.5.1	Configuring port map using the web interface.....	117

12.5.2	Configuring port maps using UCI	118
12.5.3	Configuring port map using package options	118
12.5.4	ATM bridges	118
12.6	Interface diagnostics	118
12.6.1	Interfaces status.....	118
12.6.2	ARP table status	120
12.6.3	Route status.....	120
13	Configuring DHCP server and DNS (Dnsmasq).....	121
13.1	Configuration package used	121
13.2	Configuring DHCP and DNS using the web interface	121
13.2.1	Dnsmasq: general settings.....	123
13.2.2	Dnsmasq: resolv and host files	124
13.2.3	Dnsmasq: TFTP settings	125
13.2.4	Dnsmasq: advanced settings.....	126
13.2.5	Active leases	127
13.2.6	Static leases.....	128
13.3	Configuring DHCP and DNS using UCI.....	129
13.3.1	Common options section.....	129
13.4	Configuring DHCP pools using UCI.....	131
13.5	Configuring static leases using UCI.....	132
14	Configuring VLAN	134
14.1	Maximum number of VLANs supported	134
14.2	Configuration package used	134
14.3	Configuring VLAN using the web interface	134
14.3.1	Create a VLAN interface.....	134
14.3.2	General setup: VLAN	136
14.3.3	Firewall settings: VLAN	137
14.4	Viewing VLAN interface settings	137
15	QoS: VLAN 802.1Q PCP tagging	138
15.1	Configuring VLAN PCP tagging	138
16	QoS: type of service.....	141
16.1	QoS configuration overview	141
16.2	Configuration packages used	141
16.3	Configuring QoS using the web interface.....	141
16.4	Configuring QoS using UCI	143
16.4.1	Interface.....	143
16.4.2	Classgroup.....	144
16.4.3	Classes	145
16.4.4	Classify.....	145
16.5	Example QoS configurations	146

16.6	Configuring VLAN using the UCI interface.....	147
17	Configuring static routes	148
17.1	Configuration package used	148
17.2	Configuring static routes using the web interface	148
17.3	Configuring IPv6 routes using the web interface	149
17.4	Configuring routes using command line	149
17.5	IPv4 routes using UCI.....	150
17.6	IPv4 routes using package options	151
17.7	IPv6 routes using UCI.....	151
17.8	IPv6 routes using packages options.....	151
17.9	Static routes diagnostics	152
17.9.1	Route status.....	152
18	Configuring BGP (Border Gateway Protocol)	153
18.1	Configuration package used	153
18.2	Configuring BGP using the web interface.....	153
18.2.1	BGP global settings	154
18.2.2	Optionally configure a BGP route map	154
18.2.3	Configure BGP neighbours.....	156
18.3	Configuring BGP using UCI	156
18.4	Configuring BGP using packages options	157
18.5	View routes statistics.....	158
19	Configuring OSPF (Open Shortest Path First)	158
19.1	Introduction	158
19.1.1	OSPF areas	159
19.1.2	OSPF neighbours	159
19.1.3	OSPF designated routers.....	160
19.1.4	OSPF neighbour states	160
19.1.5	OSPF network types	161
19.1.6	The OSPF hierarchy.....	162
19.1.7	OSPF router types.....	163
19.2	Configuration package used	163
19.3	Configuring OSPF using the web interface	163
19.3.1	Global settings	164
19.3.2	Topology configuration	164
19.3.3	Interfaces configuration.....	165
19.4	Configuring OSPF using the command line	167
19.5	OSPF using UCI	168
19.6	OSPF using package options.....	169
19.7	OSPF diagnostics	170
19.7.1	Route status.....	170

19.7.2	Tracing OSPF packets	170
19.8	Quagga/Zebra console.....	171
19.8.1	OSPF debug console.....	172
20	Configuring a mobile connection	178
20.1	Configuration package used	178
20.2	Configuring a mobile connection using the web interface.....	178
20.2.1	Create a new mobile interface	178
20.3	Configuring a mobile connection using CLI	184
20.3.1	UCI	184
20.3.2	Package options.....	185
20.4	Diagnositcs	185
20.4.1	Mobile status via the web.....	185
20.4.2	Mobile status using UCI	187
21	Configuring mobile manager.....	190
21.1	Configuration package used	190
21.2	Configuring mobile manager using the web interface.....	190
21.2.1	Mobile manager: basic settings.....	191
21.2.2	Mobile manager: CDMA settings	193
21.2.3	Mobile manager: callers.....	195
21.2.4	Mobile manager: roaming interface template.....	195
21.3	Configuring mobile manager using command line.....	196
21.3.1	Mobile manager using UCI	196
21.3.2	Mobile manager using package options.....	196
21.4	Monitoring SMS	197
21.5	Sending SMS from the router	198
21.6	Sending SMS to the router	198
22	Configuring Multi-WAN	199
22.1	Configuration package used	199
22.2	Configuring Multi-WAN using the web interface.....	199
22.3	Multi-WAN traffic rules.....	204
22.4	Configuring Multi-WAN using UCI	204
22.5	Multi-WAN diagnostics	205
23	Automatic operator selection.....	208
23.1	Configuration package used	208
23.2	Configuring automatic operator selection via the web interface	208
23.2.1	Scenario 1: PMP + roaming: pre-empt enabled.....	209
23.2.2	Set options for automatically created interfaces (failover)	217
23.2.3	Roaming interface template	219
23.2.4	Scenario 2: PMP + roaming: pre-empt disabled	222
23.2.5	Scenario 3: No PMP + roaming	223

23.2.6	Set options for automatically created interfaces (failover)	223
23.2.7	Roaming interface template	225
23.3	Configuring via UCI	228
23.3.1	PMP + roaming: pre-empt enabled & disabled via UCI	228
23.4	Configuring no PMP + roaming using UCI.....	232
23.5	Automatic operator selection diagnostics via the web interface	235
23.5.1	Checking the status of the Multi-WAN package	235
23.6	Automatic operator selection diagnostics via UCI	236
24	Configuring IPSec.....	238
24.1	Configuration package used	238
24.2	Configuring IPSec using the web interface.....	238
24.2.1	Configure common settings.....	238
24.2.2	Common settings: configure connection.....	240
24.2.3	Common settings: IP addressing.....	241
24.2.4	Common settings: IPSec settings.....	243
24.2.5	Configure secret settings	246
24.3	Configuring IPSec using UCI.....	247
24.3.1	Common settings.....	247
24.3.2	Connection settings.....	247
24.3.3	Shunt connection	249
24.3.4	Secret settings	250
24.4	Configuring an IPSec template for DMVPN via the web interface	251
24.4.1	Configure common settings.....	252
24.4.2	Configure connection settings.....	253
24.4.3	Configure secret settings	258
24.5	Configuring an IPSec template to use with DMVPN	259
24.6	IPSec diagnostics using the web interface	261
24.6.1	IPSec status.....	261
24.7	IPSec diagnostics using UCI	261
24.7.1	IPSec configuration	261
24.7.2	IPSec status	261
24.7.3	To view IPSec status, enter:.....	261
25	Configuring a GRE interface.....	263
25.1	Configuration packages used	263
25.2	Creating a GRE connection using the web interface	263
25.2.1	GRE connection: common configuration - general setup.....	265
25.2.2	GRE connection: common configuration-advanced settings	266
25.2.3	GRE connection: firewall settings	267
25.2.4	GRE connection: adding a static route	268
25.3	GRE configuration using command line	268

25.4	GRE configuration using UCI.....	268
25.5	GRE configuration using package options	268
25.6	GRE diagnostics.....	269
25.6.1	GRE interface status.....	269
26	Dynamic Multipoint Virtual Private Network (DMVPN)	271
26.1	Prerequisites for configuring DMVPN.....	271
26.2	Advantages of using DMVPN	271
26.3	DMVPN scenarios	272
26.3.1	Scenario 1	272
26.3.2	Scenario 2	273
26.4	Configuration packages used	274
26.5	Configuring DMVPN using the web interface	274
26.5.1	DMVPN general settings.....	274
26.5.2	DMVPN hub settings.....	275
26.5.3	Configuring an IPSec template for DMVPN using the web interface	275
26.6	DMVPN diagnostics.....	276
27	Open VPN	279
27.1	Client configuration	279
27.1.1	Load secret key	280
27.1.2	Add routes to a VPN connection	280
28	Configuring firewall	282
28.1	Configuration package used	282
28.2	Configuring firewall using the web interface	282
28.2.1	Firewall: zone settings.....	282
28.2.2	Firewall port forwards.....	287
28.2.3	Firewall traffic rules.....	291
28.3	Configuring firewall using UCI.....	294
28.3.1	Firewall general settings	294
28.3.2	Firewall zone settings	294
28.3.3	Inter-zone forwarding.....	295
28.3.4	Firewall port forwards.....	295
28.3.5	Firewall traffic rules.....	296
28.4	IPv6 notes	297
28.5	Implications of DROP vs. REJECT	297
28.6	Connection tracking	298
28.7	Firewall examples	299
28.7.1	Opening ports	299
28.7.2	Forwarding ports (destination NAT/DNAT)	299
28.7.3	Source NAT (SNAT).....	300
28.7.4	True destination port forwarding	300

28.7.5	Block access to a specific host	300
28.7.6	Block access to the internet using MAC	301
28.7.7	Block access to the internet for specific IP on certain times	301
28.7.8	Restricted forwarding rule	301
28.7.9	Denial of service protection rule.....	302
28.7.10	IP spoofing prevention mechchnism	302
28.7.11	Simple DMZ rule.....	302
28.7.12	Transparent proxy rule (external)	303
28.7.13	Transparent proxy rule (same host)	303
28.7.14	IPSec passthrough	303
28.7.15	Manual iptables rules.....	304
28.7.16	Firewall management	304
28.7.17	Debug generated rule set	305
29	Configuring SNMP	306
29.1	Configuration package used	306
29.2	Configuring SMNP using the web interface.....	306
29.2.1	System and agent settings.....	307
29.2.2	Com2Sec settings	307
29.2.3	Group settings.....	308
29.2.4	View settings.....	309
29.2.5	Access settings.....	310
29.2.6	Trap receiver.....	311
29.2.7	Inform receiver.....	312
29.3	Configuring SNMP using command line	312
29.3.1	System settings using UCI	313
29.3.2	System settings using package options.....	313
29.3.3	com2sec settings	313
29.3.4	Group settings.....	314
29.3.5	View settings.....	317
29.3.6	Access settings.....	317
29.3.7	SNMP traps settings	318
29.4	Configuring SNMP interface alias with static SNMP index	318
29.4.1	Configuration package used	319
29.4.2	Configuring SNMP interface alias.....	319
29.4.3	Configuring SNMP interface alias using the command line	320
29.4.4	SNMP interface alias MIBS	320
29.5	SNMP diagnostics.....	320
29.5.1	SNMP process.....	320
29.5.2	SNMP port.....	321
29.5.3	Retrieving SNMP values	321

29.5.4	SNMP status.....	322
30	Configuring VRRP	323
30.1	Overview	323
30.2	Configuration package used	323
30.3	Configuring VRRP using the web interface	323
30.4	Configuring VRRP using command line	325
30.4.1	VRRP using UCI	326
30.4.2	VRRP using package options.....	327
31	Configuring multicasting using PIM and IGMP interfaces	328
31.1	Overview	328
31.2	Configuration package used	328
31.3	Configuring PIM and IGMP using the web interface	328
31.3.1	Global settings	329
31.3.2	Interfaces configuration.....	329
31.4	Configuring PIM and IGMP using UCI	330
32	Configuring Terminal Server.....	332
32.1	Overview	332
32.2	Configuration packages used	332
32.3	Configuring Terminal Server using the web interface	332
32.3.1	Configure main settings.....	332
32.3.2	Configure port settings	333
32.4	Terminal Server using UCI	343
32.5	Terminal Server using package options.....	343
32.6	Terminal Server diagnostics	343
32.6.1	Checking Terminal Server process.....	344
32.6.2	Terminal Server statistics.....	344
32.6.3	Terminal Server debug statistics	344
32.6.4	Terminal Server advanced debugging	344
33	Configuring VRF-lite	347
33.1	Configuration package used	347
33.2	VRF (Virtual Routing and Forwarding) overview	347
33.3	Configuring VRF using UCI	347
34	Event system	348
34.1	Configuration package used	348
34.2	Implementation of the event system	348
34.3	Supported events.....	348
34.4	Supported targets	349
34.5	Supported connection testers	349
34.6	Configuring the event system using the web interface	349
34.7	Configuring the event system using UCI	349

34.7.1	Va_eventd: main section	349
34.7.2	Va_eventd: forwarding	350
34.7.3	Forwarding using UCI	350
34.7.4	Forwarding using package options.....	351
34.7.5	Forwarding table options.....	351
34.7.6	Va_eventd: connection testers	352
34.7.7	Supported targets	354
34.7.8	SNMP target.....	358
34.8	Event system diagnostics	361
34.8.1	Displaying VA events.....	361
34.8.2	Viewing the event system config	364
35	Configuring SLA reporting on Monitor.....	368
35.1	Introduction	368
35.2	Configuring SLA reporting	368
35.3	Configuring router upload protocol	369
35.4	Viewing graphs.....	369
35.5	Generating a report.....	372
35.5.1	Create a report.....	372
35.5.2	Statistics settings	375
35.6	Reporting device status to Monitor using UCI.....	376
36	Configuring SLA for a router.....	379
36.1	Configuration package used	379
36.2	Configuring SLA for a router using the web interface	379
36.3	Configuring SLA for a router using UCI	381
37	Configuring GPIO.....	384
37.1	SATEL-GW600 connectors	384
37.2	Digital opto-isolated input ports	384
37.3	Configuring the event system using UCI	384
37.4	Relay output port	386
37.4.1	Configuring the relay output port	386
38	SCADA IEC104 Gateway	388
38.1	Overview	388
38.2	Configuration packages used	389
38.3	IEC104 gateway configuration using the web interface	389
38.3.1	Main settings.....	390
38.3.2	Port settings.....	390
38.3.3	IEC101 links.....	400
38.3.4	Points.....	401
38.4	IEC104 gateway configuration using command line	403
38.4.1	IEC104 to IEC101 conversion (balanced or unbalanced)	404

38.4.2 IEC104 to DNP3 conversion.....	408
38.4.3 IEC104 to Modbus conversion.....	412
38.5 Configuring the terminal server	416
38.5.1 Configuring the terminal server for IEC104 to IEC101	416
38.5.2 Configuring the terminal server for IEC104 to DNP3	421
38.5.3 Configuring the terminal server for IEC104 to Modbus over serial	421
38.6 Configuring IEC61850 to IEC101 conversion.....	426
38.6.1 Relation of IEC101 data types to IEC61850 data types	427
38.6.2 IEC61850 to IEC101 conversion using the command line	429
38.7 Diagnostics	434
38.7.1 Starting and stopping services.....	434
38.7.2 Events.....	435
38.7.3 Viewing statistics	435
38.7.4 Viewing point mappings.....	436

1 Introduction

This user manual describes the features and how to configure SATEL-GW600 series routers.

The SATEL-GW600 Series routers enable 3G/LTE connectivity for Utility customers, where secure, reliable networking is required, whether it's IP or serial based communication. It is providing a variety of high availability, security and protocol features, complementing the utility requirements as a part of the SATEL XPRS solution.

1.1 Document scope

This document covers models in the SATEL-GW600 Series. For general references, we refer to the "GW600 Series" throughout, including all (future) variants of the series. Possible feature variations between GW600 Series variants are described in separate sections.

1.1.1 GW600 Series routers

The SATEL XPRS SATEL-GW600 Series router is a 3G/4G LTE router designed with a rugged metal casing with multiple Ethernet connections, dual serial ports, Relay and Digital Input / Output connections, complemented with variety of software features.

GW600: Quad Ethernet, two serial ports, 4G/LTE, Dual SIM, Relay contact and Digital I/O

1.2 Using this documentation

You can configure your router using either the router's web interface or via the command line using UCI commands. Each chapter explains first the web interface settings, followed by how to configure the router using UCI. The web interface screens are shown along with a path to the screen for example, 'In the top menu, select **Service -> SNMP**' followed by a screen grab.

After the screen grab there is an information table that describes each of the screen's fields.

1.2.1 Information tables

We use information tables to show the different ways to configure the router using the router's web and command line. The left-hand column shows three options:

- **Web:** refers the command on the router's web page,
- **UCI:** shows the specific UCI command, and
- **Opt:** shows the package option.

The right-hand column shows a description field that describes the feature's field or command and shows any options for that feature.

Some features have a drop-down menu and the options are described in a table within the description column. The default value is shown in a grey cell.

Values for enabling and disabling a feature are varied throughout the web interface, for example, 1/0; Yes/No; True/False; check/uncheck a radio button. In the table descriptions, we use **0** to denote Disable and **1** to denote Enable.

Some configuration sections can be defined more than once. An example of this is the routing table where multiple routes can exist and all are named 'route'. For these sections, the UCI command will have a code value [**0**] or [**x**] (where x is the section number) to identify the section.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Metric UCI: network.@route[0].metric Opt: metric	Specifies the route metric to use.

Note: these sections can be given a label for identification when using UCI or package options.

```
network.@route[0]=route
network.@route[0].metric=0
```

can be written as:

```
network.routename=route
network.routename.metric=0
```

However the documentation usually assumes that a section label is not configured.

The table below shows fields from a variety of chapters to illustrate the explanations above.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description																
Web: Enable UCI: cesop.main.enable Opt: enable	Enables CESoPSN services. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.												
0	Disabled.																
1	Enabled.																
Web: Syslog Severity UCI: cesop.main.severity Opt: log_severity	Selects the severity used for logging events CESoPSN in syslog. The following levels are available. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Emergency</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Alert</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Critical</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Error</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Warning</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Notice</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>Informational</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>Debug</td> </tr> </table>	0	Emergency	1	Alert	2	Critical	3	Error	4	Warning	5	Notice	6	Informational	7	Debug
0	Emergency																
1	Alert																
2	Critical																
3	Error																
4	Warning																
5	Notice																
6	Informational																
7	Debug																
Web: Agent Address UCI: snmpd.agent[0].agentaddress Opt: agentaddress	Specifies the address(es) and port(s) on which the agent should listen. [(udp tcp):]port[@address][,...]																

Table 1: Example of an information table

1.2.2 Definitions

Throughout the document, we use the host name ‘GW_router’ to cover all router models. UCI commands and package option examples are shown in the following format:

```
root@GW_router:~# cmd show current config
```

1.2.3 Diagnostics

Diagnostics are explained at the end of each feature’s chapter.

1.2.4 UCI commands

For detailed information on using UCI commands, read chapters ‘Router File Structure’ and ‘Using Command Line Interface’.

2 SATEL-GW600 series hardware specification

2.1.1 GW600 Series router



Figure 1: The GW600 series router

GW600: 4 x Ethernet, 2G, 3G, 4G/LTE, 1xRS232 and 1xRS485, digital I/O, dual SIM, metal case

Note: the second input is either RS232 or RS485 and is software selectable.

2.2 GW600 hardware features

- Dual SIM sockets
- Dual antenna SMA connectors
- Up to eight 10/100 Mbps Ethernet ports.
- Optional 1 or 2 RS232 ports
- Optional 4KV isolation ports
- Optional RS485 port
- SIM cover

2.3 Serial ports on the GW600 Series router

The asynchronous serial ports are named:

- Port 0: '/dev/ttySC0'
- Port 1: '/dev/ttySC1'

Each serial port has a number of configurable settings, such as baud rate, word size, parity, flow control mode, etc.



Figure 2: Serial ports on the GW600 series router

2.3.1.1 RS232 pinout for the GW600 Series router

Pin	Name	Direction
1	RTS	Out
2	DTR	Out
3	TX Data	Out
4	GND	-
5	GND	-
6	RX Data	In
7	DSR	In
8	CTS	In

2.3.1.2 RS485 pinout for the GW600 Series router

Pin	Half Duplex Mode			Full Duplex Mode	
	Name	Direction (From GW600 series router)		Pin	Name
1	-	-		1	-
2	-	-		2	-
3	-	-		3	-
4	GND	-		4	GND
5	GND	-		5	GND
6	Tx1/Rx1+	In/Out		6	Tx1/Rx1+
7	Tx1/Rx1-	In/Out		7	Tx1/Rx1-
8	-	-		8	-

2.3.1.3 GPIOs on the GW600 Series router: digital inputs

Pin	Name	Direction	Description
1	Input 0+	In	Isolated positive input for Digital Input 0
2	Input 0-	In	Isolated negative input for Digital Input 0
3	Input 1+	In	Isolated positive input for Digital Input 1
4	Input 1-	In	Isolated negative input for Digital Input 1
5	5V0	Out	Non isolated 5V supply for Digital Input 0
6	5V1	Out	Non isolated 5V supply for Digital Input 1
7	GND	-	Non isolated ground terminal for Digital Inputs
8	GND	-	Non isolated ground terminal for Digital Inputs

The maximum input voltage for the Digital Inputs is 9V.

The maximum input current for the Digital Inputs is 60 mA.

2.3.1.4 GPIOs on the GW600 Series router: digital outputs

Pin	Name	Direction	Description
1	Output N/O	-	Digital Output, normally open
2	Output Com	-	Digital Output, common
3	Output N/C	-	Digital Output, normally open

The maximum voltage for the Digital Output is 30V DC.

The maximum current for the Digital Output is 2A.

2.4 GSM and LTE technology

- 4G LTE
- HSPA+
- EDGE/GPRS
- Download up to 21 Mbps
- Upload up to 5.76 Mbps
- 2100/1900/1800/900/850/450 MHz bands

2.5 Power supply

WARNING

Only properly trained service personnel should remove or install power supplies.

Do not touch bare parts inside the enclosure: there may be hazardous energy levels.

The user is responsible for checking equipment ratings, operating instructions and installation instructions before commissioning or maintenance.

The user is responsible for ensuring the equipment is installed, operated and used for its intended function in the manner specified by SATEL. Failure to do so may invalidate safety features of the equipment.

2.5.1 Power supply symbols

Symbol	Publication	Description
	IEC 60417-5031 (2002-10)	Direct current
	IEC 60417-5032 (2002-10)	Alternating current
	IEC 60417-5033 (2002-10)	Both direct and alternating current
	IEC 60417-5017 (2006-08)	Earth (ground) terminal

Table 2: power supply symbols

2.6 GW600 Series router power supply

- 9V-59DC
- Power consumption: 5W

2.7 GW600 Series router environmental conditions

The following environmental conditions apply to all GW600 Series routers.

- Rated IP2X when mounted in normal position of use
- Rated pollution degree 2 when mounted in normal position of use
- Rated insulation class III when mounted in normal position of use

2.8 GW600 Series router dimensions

GW600 Series unit size:	52W 116D 157H
GW600 Series unit weight:	500g

2.9 GW600 Series router compliance

The GW600 Series router is compliant and tested to the following standards:

Safety	EN 60950-1: 2006, + A11:2009 + A1 2010 + A12:2011 + A2:2013
EMC	EN55022 and EN55024 for more specific details please read the GW600 datasheet.
Environmental	ETSI 300 019-1-3 Sinusoidal Vibration and Shock ETSI 300 019-2-3 Random Vibration.

2.10 Operating temperature range

The operating temperature range depends on the router's type of power supply.

GW600	-20°C to 70°C	DIN rail PSU
-------	---------------	--------------

2.11 Antenna

The GW600 Series router has two SMA connectors for connection of two antennas for antenna diversity. Antenna diversity helps improve the quality of a wireless link by mitigating problems associated with multipath interference.

2.12 Components

To enable and configure connections on your router, it must be correctly installed.

The GW600 Series router contains an internal web server that you use for configurations. Before you can access the internal web server and start the configuration, ensure the components are correctly connected and that your PC has the correct networking setup.

2.13 Inserting a SIM card

1. Ensure the unit is powered off.
2. Hold the SIM 1 card with the chip side facing down and the cut corner front left.
3. Gently push the SIM card into SIM slot 1 until it clicks in.
4. If using SIM 2 then hold the SIM with the cut corner front right
5. Gently push the SIM card into SIM slot 2 until it clicks in.

2.14 Connecting the SIM lock

Connect the SIM lock using the Allen key provided.

2.14.1 Connecting cables

Connect one end of the Ethernet cable into port A and the other end to your PC or switch.

2.15 Connecting the antenna

If you are only connecting one antenna, screw the antenna into the MAIN SMA connector.

If you are using two antennas, screw the main antenna into the MAIN SMA connector and the secondary antenna into the AUX SMA connector.

2.16 Powering up the GW600 Series router

The SATEL-GW600 Series routers are supplied with a plug in terminal connector or optional external power supply.

6. Wire the 12V DC input to the appropriate DC supply in accordance with local regulations.
7. Plug the terminal connector into the GW600 Series router.

2.17 Reset button

The reset button is used to request a system reset.

When you press the reset button all LEDs turn on simultaneously. The length of time you hold the reset button will determine its behaviour.

Press Duration	PWR/CONFIG LED behaviour	Router Behaviour on depress
0-3 seconds	On	Normal reset to running config. No special LED activity.
Between 3 and 15 seconds	Flashing slowly	Releasing between 3-15 seconds switches the router back to factory configuration.
Between 15 and 20 seconds	On	Releasing between 15-20 seconds performs a normal reset to running config.
Between 20 seconds and 30 seconds	Flashing faster	Releasing between 20-30 seconds reboots the router in recovery mode.
Over 30 seconds	On	Releasing after 30 seconds performs a normal reset.

Table 3: GW600 Series router reset behaviour

2.18 Recovery mode

Recovery mode is a fail-safe mode where the router can load a default configuration from the routers firmware. If your router goes into recovery mode, all config files are kept intact. After the next reboot, the router will revert to the previous config file.

You can use recovery mode to manipulate the config files, but should only be used if all other config files are corrupt. If your router has entered recovery mode, contact your local reseller for access information.

3 SATEL-GW600 Series LED behaviour

3.1 Main LED behaviour

The GW600 Series router has single colour LEDs for Power, Config, SIM1, SIM2 and signal strength. When the router is powered on, the LED is green.

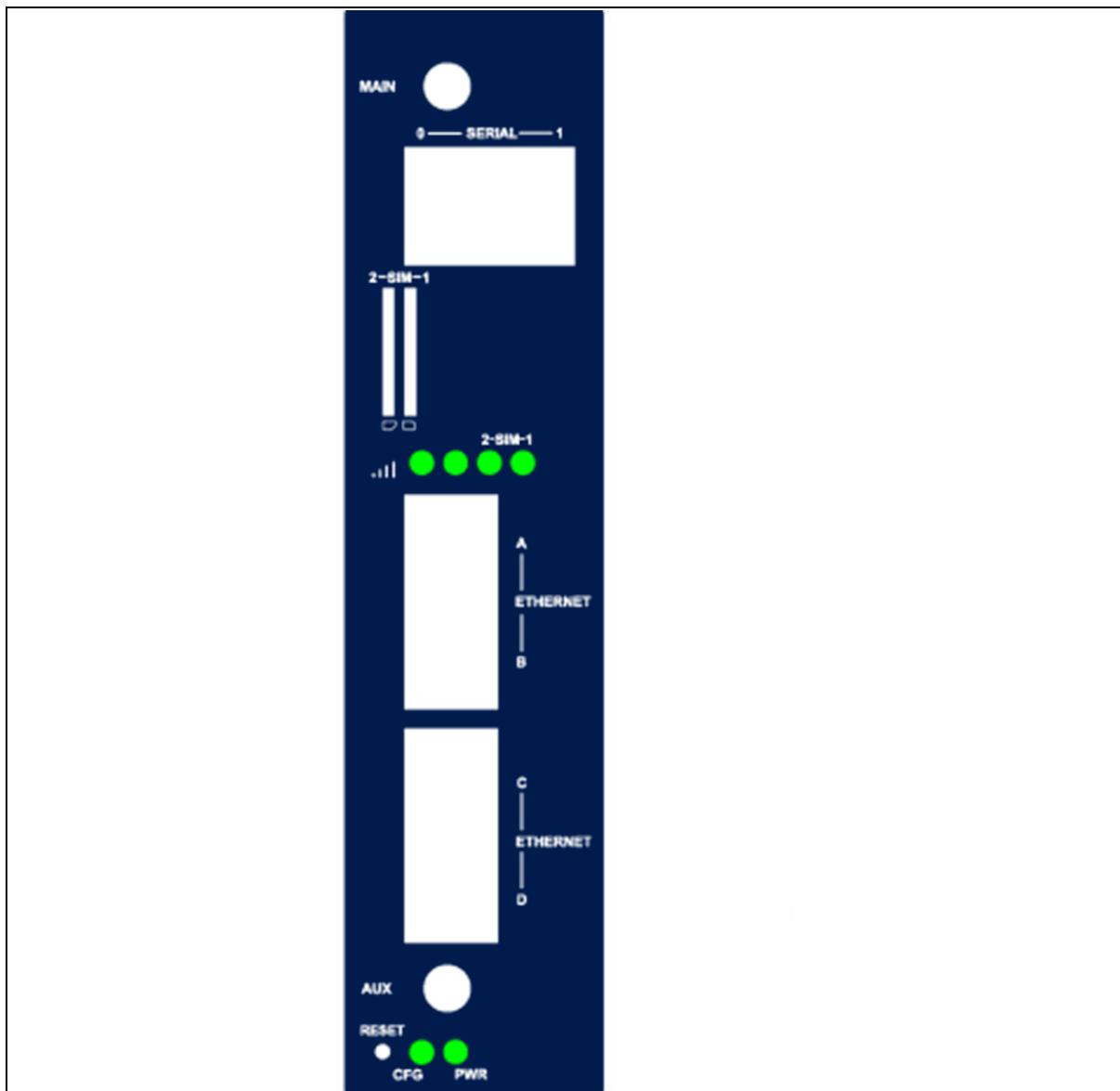


Figure 3: Example of LED activity

The possible LED states are:

- Off
- Flashing slowing
- Flashing quickly
- On

Booting		The GW600 takes approximately 2 minutes to boot up. During this time, the power LED flashes. Other LEDs display different diagnostic patterns during boot up. Booting is complete when the power LED stops flashing and stays on steady.
Power LED	On	Power connected.
	Off	No power/boot loader does not exist.
Config LED	On	Unit running a valid configuration file.
	Flashing slowly	Unit running in recovery mode (5 Hz).
	Flashing quickly	Unit running in factory configuration (2.5 Hz).
SIM LEDs	On	SIM selected and registered on the network.
	Off	Not selected or SIM not inserted.
	Flashing	SIM selected and not registered on the network.
Signal LEDs	None	PPP not connected or signal strength <= -113dBm.
	Bottom on, top off	Data connection up and signal strength <= -89dBm.
	Bottom off, top on	Data connection up and signal strength between -89dBm and -69dBm.
	Both on	Data connection up and signal strength >-69dBm.

Table 4: LED behaviour and descriptions

Note: when PPP is not connected, none of the signal LEDs will light regardless of signal strength.

3.2 Ethernet port LED behaviour

The Ethernet port has two LEDs: a LINK LED (green) and an ACT LED (amber). When looking at the port, the LED on the top is the LINK LED, and the ACT LED is on the bottom.



Figure 4: Ethernet LED activity

Link LED (green)	Off	No physical Ethernet link detected
	On	Physical Ethernet link detected
ACT LED (amber)	Off	No data is being transmitted/received over the link
	Flashing	Data is being transmitted/ received over the link

4 Factory configuration extraction from SIM card

SATEL routers have a feature to update the factory configuration from a SIM card. This allows you to change the factory configuration of a router when installing the SIM.

8. Make sure the SIM card you are inserting has the required configuration written on it.
9. Ensure the router is powered off.
10. Hold the SIM 1 card with the chip side facing down and the cut corner front left.
11. Gently push the SIM card into SIM slot 1 until it clicks in.
12. Power up the router.

Depending on the model, the power LED and/or the configuration LED flash as usual.

The SIM LED starts flashing. This indicates the application responsible for 3G and configuration extraction management is running. It also means the update of the configuration is happening.

When the update is finished, depending on the model, the power LED and/or the configuration LED blink alternatively and very fast for 20 seconds.

Note: factory configuration extraction is only supported on mobile modules that support phone book operations.

5 Accessing the router

Access the router through the web interface or by using SSH. By default, Telnet is disabled.

5.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
dropbear	dropbear
system	main
uhttpd	main cert

5.2 Accessing the router over Ethernet using the web interface

DHCP is disabled by default, so if you do not receive an IP address via DHCP, assign a static IP to the PC that will be connected to the router.

PC IP address	192.168.100.100
Network mask	255.255.255.0
Default gateway	192.168.100.1

Assuming that the PC is connected to Port A on the router, in your internet browser, type in the default local IP address 192.168.100.1, and press **Enter**. The Authorization page appears.

The screenshot shows a login form titled "Authorization Required". The text "Please enter your username and password." is displayed above the input fields. There are two input fields: "Username" containing "root" and "Password" containing "*****". Below the password field is a small blue asterisk icon. At the bottom are two buttons: "Login" and "Reset".

Figure 5: The login page

The password may vary depending on the factory configuration the router has been shipped with. The default settings are shown below. The username and password are case sensitive.

In the username field, type **root**.

In the Password field, type **admin**.

Click **Login**. The Status page appears.

5.3 Accessing the router over Ethernet using an SSH client

You can also access the router over Ethernet, using Secure Shell (SSH) and optionally over Telnet.

To access CLI over Ethernet start an SSH client and connect to the router's management IP address, on port **22: 192.168.100.1/24**.

On the first connection, you may be asked to confirm that you trust the host.

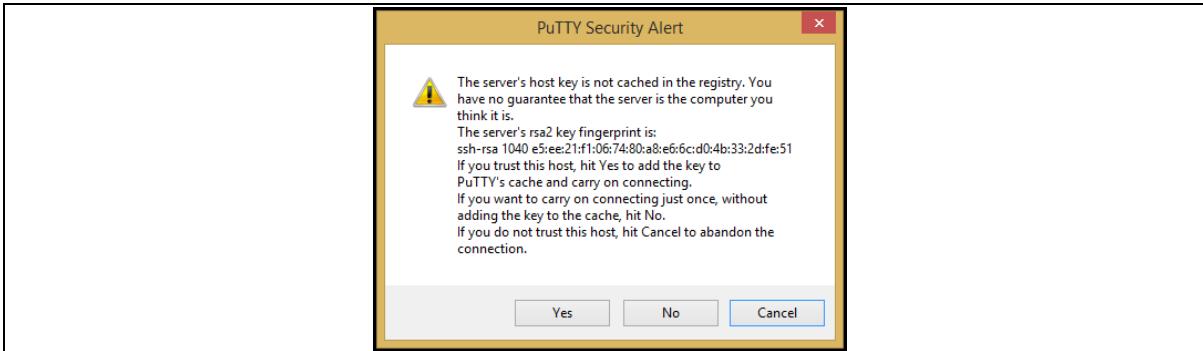


Figure 6: Confirming trust of the routers public key over SSH

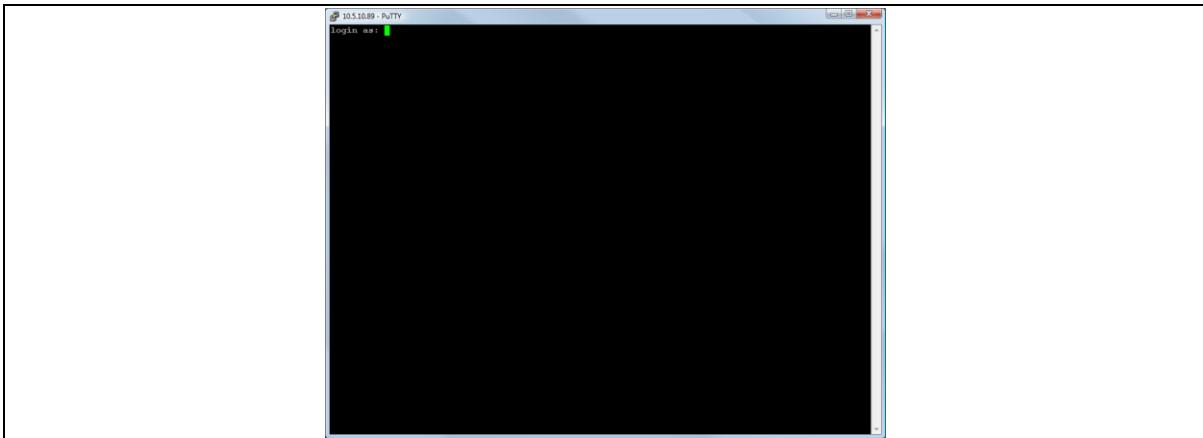


Figure 7: SSH CLI logon screen

In the SSH CLI logon screen, enter the default username and password.

Username: **root**

Password: **admin**

5.3.1 SCP (Secure Copy Protocol)

As part of accessing the router over SSH, you can also use SCP protocol. Use the same user authentication credentials as for SSH access. You can use SCP protocol to securely, manually transfer files from and to the router's SCP server.

No dedicated SPC client is supported; select the SCP client software of your own choice.

5.4 Accessing the router over Ethernet using a Telnet client

Telnet is disabled by default, when you enable Telnet, SSH is disabled.

To enable Telnet, enter:

```
root@GW_router: ~# /etc/init.d/dropbear disable
root@GW_router: ~# reboot -f
```

To re-enable SSH, enter:

```
root@GW_router: ~# /etc/init.d/dropbear enable
root@GW_router: ~# reboot -f
```

Note: As SSH is enabled by default, initial connection to the router to enable Telnet must be established over SSH.

5.5 Configuring the password

5.5.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
system	main

5.6 Configuring the password using the web interface

To change your password, in the top menu click **System -> Administration**. The Administration page appears.

The screenshot shows a web-based administrative interface. At the top, there is a dark navigation bar with links for Status, System, Services, Network, and Logout. Below this, the main content area has a title 'Router Password' in blue. A sub-instruction 'Changes the administrator password for accessing the device.' is displayed. There are two input fields: 'Password' and 'Confirmation', each accompanied by a small green lock icon.

Figure 8: The router password section

In the Router Password section, type your new password in the password field and then retype the password in the confirmation field.

Scroll down the page and click **Save & Apply**.

Note: the username 'root' cannot be changed.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Password	Defines the root password. The password is displayed encrypted via the CLI using the 'hashpassword' option.
UCI: system.main.password	UCI: system.main.hashpassword
Opt: password	Opt: hashpassword

5.7 Configuring the password using UCI

The root password is displayed encrypted via the CLI using the hashpassword option.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show system
system.main=system
system.main.hostname=GW_router
system.main.hashpassword=$1$jRX/x8A/$U5kLCMp19dcahRh017eZV1
```

If you are changing the password using UCI, enter the new password in plain text using the password option.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci system.main.password=newpassword
root@GW_router:~# uci commit
```

The new password will take effect after reboot and will now be displayed in encrypted format via the hashpassword option.

5.8 Configuring the password using package options

The root password is displayed encrypted via the CLI using the hashpassword option.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export system
package system

config system 'main'
    option hostname 'GW_router'
    option hashpassword '$1$wRYYiJOz$EeHN.GQcxXhRgNPVbqxVw'
```

If you are changing the password using UCI, enter the new password in plain text using the password option.

```
package system

config system 'main'
    option hostname 'GW_router'
    option hashpassword '$1$wRYYiJOz$EeHN.GQcxXhRgNPVbqxVw'
    option password 'newpassword'
```

The new password will take effect after reboot and will now be displayed in encrypted format via the hashpassword option.

5.9 Accessing the device using RADIUS authentication

You can configure RADIUS authentication to access the router over SSH, web or local console interface.

```
package system

config system 'main'
    option hostname 'SATEL'
    option timezone 'UTC'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'login'
    option pammodule 'auth'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'radius'
    option servers '192.168.0.1:3333|test|20 192.168.2.5|secret|10'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'sshd'
    option pammodule 'auth'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'           it checks package
management_users
    option type 'radius'
    option servers '192.168.0.1:3333|test|20 192.168.2.5|secret|10'

config 'pam_auth'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'luci"
    option pammodule 'auth'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'radius'
    servers '192.168.0.1:3333|test|20 192.168.2.5|secret|10'
```

UCI/Package Option	Description	
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].enabled=yes Opt: enabled	Enables and disables RADIUS configuration sections.	
	yes	Enables following RADIUS configuration section.
	no	Disables following RADIUS configuration section.
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pamservice Opt: pamservice	Selects the method which users should be authenticated by.	
	login	User connecting over console cable.
	sshd	User connecting over SSH.
	luci	User connecting over web.
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pamcontrol Opt: pamcontrol	Specifies authentication behaviour after authentication fails or connection to RADIUS server is broken.	
	Sufficient	First authenticates against remote RADIUS if password authentication fails then it tries local database (user defined in package management_users)
	Required	If either authentication fails or RADIUS server is not reachable then user is not allowed to access the router.
	[success=done new_authtok_reqd=done authinfo_unavail=ignore default=die]	Local database is only checked if RADIUS server is not reachable.
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pammodule.auth Opt: pammodule	Enables user authentication.	
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].type.radius Opt: type	Specifies the authentication method.	
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].servers Opt: servers	Specifies the RADIUS server or multiple servers along with port number and password. The example below explains the syntax. 192.168.0.1:3333 test 20 192.168.2.5 secret 10	

Table 5: Information table for RADIUS authentication

5.10 Accessing the device using TACACS+ authentication

TACACS+ authentication can be configured for accessing the router over SSH, web or local console interface.

```
package system

config system 'main'
    option hostname 'SATEL'
    option timezone 'UTC'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
```

```
option pamservice 'sshd'
option pammodule 'auth'
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'sshd'
    option pammodule 'account'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'tacplus'
    option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
    option args 'service=ppp'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'sshd'
    option pammodule 'session'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'tacplus'
    option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
    option args 'service=ppp'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'luci'
    option pammodule 'auth'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'tacplus'
    option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'luci'
    option pammodule 'account'
```

```
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
option args 'service=ppp'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'luci'
    option pammodule 'session'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'tacplus'
    option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
    option args 'service=ppp'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'login'
    option pammodule 'auth'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'tacplus'
    option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'login'
    option pammodule 'account'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'tacplus'
    option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
    option args 'service=ppp'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'login'
    option pammodule 'session'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'tacplus'
```

```

option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
option args 'service=ppp'

```

UCI/Package Option	Description	
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].enabled=yes Opt: enabled	Enables and disables TACACS configuration sections.	
	yes	Enables following TACACS configuration section.
	no	Disables following TACACS configuration section.
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pamservice Opt: pamservice	Selects the method which users should be authenticated by.	
	login	User connecting over console cable.
	sshd	User connecting over SSH.
	luci	User connecting over web.
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pamcontrol Opt: pamcontrol	Specifies authentication behaviour after authentication fails or connection to TACACS server is broken.	
	Sufficient	First authenticates against remote TACACS if password authentication fails then it tries local database (user defined in package management_users)
	Required	If either authentication fails or TACACS server is not reachable then user is not allowed to access the router.
	[success=done new_authtok_reqd=done authinfo_unavail=ignore default=die]	Local database is only checked if TACACS server is not reachable.
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pammodule.auth Opt: pammodule	Selects which TACACS module this part of configuration relates to.	
	auth	auth module provides the actual authentication and sets credentials
	account	account module checks to make sure that access is allowed for the user
	session	session module performs additional tasks which are needed to allow access
system.@pam_auth[0].type=tacplus Opt: type	Specifies the authentication method.	
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].servers Opt: servers	Specifies the TACACS servers along with port number and password. The example below explains the syntax. 192.168.0.1:49 secret '	
UCI: system.@pam_auth[1].args=service=ppp Opt: args	Additional arguments to pass to TACACS server.	

Table7: Information table for TACACS authentication

5.11 SSH

SSH allows you to access remote machines over text-based shell sessions. SSH uses public key cryptography to create a secure connection. These connections allow you to issue commands remotely via a command line.

The router uses a package called Dropbear to configure the SSH server on the box. You can configure Dropbear via the web interface or through an SSH connection by editing the file stored on: /etc/config_name/dropbear.

5.11.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
dropbear	dropbear

5.11.2 SSH access using the web interface

In the top menu, click **System -> Administration**. The Administration page appears. Scroll down to the SSH Access section.

The screenshot shows the 'SSH Access' configuration page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for Status, System, Services, Network, and Logout. Below the navigation bar, the title 'SSH Access' is displayed, followed by a sub-instruction: 'Dropbear offers SSH network shell access and an integrated SCP server'. The main configuration area starts with 'Dropbear Instance' and a 'Delete' button. It includes the following settings:

- Interface:** A list of network interfaces with radio buttons: 3G, ADSL, lan, lan1, loopback, and unspecified. The 'unspecified' option is selected.
- Port:** A text input field containing '22', with a tooltip explaining it specifies the listening port of this Dropbear instance.
- Password authentication:** A checkbox labeled 'Allow SSH password authentication' is checked.
- Allow root logins with password:** A checkbox labeled 'Allow the root user to login with password' is checked.
- Gateway ports:** A checkbox labeled 'Allow remote hosts to connect to local SSH forwarded ports' is unchecked.
- Idle Session Timeout (seconds):** A text input field containing '0', with a tooltip explaining it is the number of seconds of inactivity before a session is closed.

Figure 9: The SSH access section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Basic settings					
Web: Interface UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].Interface Opt: interface	<p>Listens only on the selected interface. If unspecified is checked, listens on all interfaces. All configured interfaces will be displayed via the web GUI.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>(unspecified)</td> <td>listens on all interfaces.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td>Configured interface names.</td> </tr> </table>	(unspecified)	listens on all interfaces.	Range	Configured interface names.
(unspecified)	listens on all interfaces.				
Range	Configured interface names.				
Web: Port UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].Port Opt: port	<p>Specifies the listening port of the Dropbear instance.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>22</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td>0-65535</td> </tr> </table>	22		Range	0-65535
22					
Range	0-65535				
Web: Password authentication UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].PasswordAuth Opt: PasswordAuth	<p>If enabled, allows SSH password authentication.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Allow root logins with password UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].RootPasswordAuth Opt: RootPasswordAuth	<p>Allows the root user to login with password.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Gateway ports UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].GatewayPorts Opt: GatewayPorts	<p>Allows remote hosts to connect to local SSH forwarded ports.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Idle Session Timeout UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].IdleTimeout Opt: IdleTimeout	<p>Defines the idle period where remote session will be closed after the allocated number of seconds of inactivity.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>30</td> <td>30 seconds.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	30	30 seconds.	Range	
30	30 seconds.				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].BannerFile Opt: BannerFile	<p>Defines a banner file to be displayed during login.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>/etc/banner</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	/etc/banner		Range	
/etc/banner					
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].MaxLoginAttempts Opt: MaxLoginAttempts	<p>Specifies maximum login failures before session terminates.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>10</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0-infinite</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	10		0-infinite	
10					
0-infinite					

Table 6: Information table for SSH access settings

5.12 Package dropbear using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show dropbear
dropbear.@dropbear[0]=dropbear
dropbear.@dropbear[0].PasswordAuth=on
dropbear.@dropbear[0].RootPasswordAuth=on
dropbear.@dropbear[0].GatewayPorts=0
dropbear.@dropbear[0].IdleTimeout=30
dropbear.@dropbear[0].Port=22
dropbear.@dropbear[0].MaxLoginAttempts=3
```

```
Package dropbear using package options
root@GW_router:~# uci export dropbear
package dropbear
config dropbear'
    option PasswordAuth 'on'
    option RootPasswordAuth 'on'
    option Port '22'
    option GatewayPorts '0'
    option IdleTimeout '30'
    option MaxLoginAttempts '3'
```

5.13 Certs and private keys

Certificates are used to prove ownership of a public key. They contain information about the key, its owner's ID, and the digital signature of an individual that has verified the content of the certificate.

In asymmetric cryptography, public keys are announced to the public, and a different private key is kept by the receiver. The public key is used to encrypt the message, and the private key is used to decrypt it.

To access certs and private keys, in the top menu, click **System -> Administration**. The Administration page appears. Scroll down to the Certs & Private Keys section.

Certificates & Private Keys

Certificates and private keys used for various services could be uploaded here

IPsec Certificates and Keys

Choose file No file chosen

Upload a *.tar.gz file containing certificates and/or private keys. All the ipsec certs previously uploaded will be deleted when new ones uploaded. Archive structure should match this of /etc/ipsec.d folder. Every file should be in one of 8 subfolders according to it's purpose:

- private (private keys) certs (entity certs)
- crls (revocation lists)
- cacerts (CA certs)
- ocspcerts (OCSP signer certs)
- aacerts (Authorization Authority certs)
- acerts (attribute certs)
- reqs (PKCS#10 cert requests)

[More info](#)

OpenVPN Certificates and Keys

Choose file No file chosen

Upload a *.tar.gz file containing certificates and/or private keys. All the openvpn certs previously uploaded will be deleted when new ones uploaded. OpenVPN requires no special folder structure, hence files will be installed into the openvpn folder as they are in archive

VA Certificates and Keys

Choose file No file chosen

Upload a *.tar.gz file containing certificates and/or private keys. All the va certs previously uploaded will be deleted when new ones uploaded. Archive structure should match this of /etc/certs folder which is similar to /etc/ipsec.d folder.

Save & Apply **Save** **Reset**

Figure 10: The certificates & private keys section

This section allows you to upload any certificates and keys that you may have stored. There is support for IPSec, OpenVPN and custom certificates and keys.

If you have generated your own SSH public keys, you can input them in the SSH Keys section, for SSH public key authentication.

Figure 11: The SSH-keys box

5.14 Configuring a router's web server

The router's web server is configured in package uhttpd. This file defines the behaviour of the server and default values for certificates generated for SSL operation. uhttpd supports multiple instances, that is, multiple listen ports, each with its own document root and other features, as well as cgi and lua. There are two sections defined:

Main: this uHTTPD section contains general server settings.

Cert: this section defines the default values for SSL certificates.

5.14.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
uhttpd	main
	cert

To configure the router's HTTP server parameters, in the top menu, select **Services -> HTTP Server**. The HTTP Server page has two sections.

Main Settings	Server configurations
Certificate Settings	SSL certificates.

5.14.2 Main settings

The screenshot shows the 'HTTP Server' configuration page. At the top, there are navigation links: Status, System, Services, Network, and Logout. Below the title 'HTTP Server' and a brief description, there's a section titled 'Main Settings' with the subtitle 'Basic configuration of the Http Server.' It includes fields for Listen Address and Port (0.0.0.0:80), Secure Listen Address and Port (0.0.0.0:443), Home path (/www), Cert file (/etc/uhttpd.crt), Key file (/etc/uhttpd.key), CGI prefix (/cgi-bin), Script timeout (60 seconds), Network timeout (30 seconds), and an rfc1918 filter checkbox.

Figure 12: HTTP server settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Listen Address and Port UCI: uhttpd.main.listen_http Opt: list listen_http	Specifies the ports and addresses to listen on for plain HTTP access. If only a port number is given, the server will attempt to serve both IPv4 and IPv6 requests.	
	0.0.0.0:80	Bind at port 80 only on IPv4 interfaces.
	[::]:80	Bind at port 80 only on IPv6 interfaces
	Range	IP address and/or port
Web: Secure Listen Address and Port UCI: uhttpd.main.listen_https Opt: list listen_https	Specifies the ports and address to listen on for encrypted HTTPS access. The format is the same as listen_http.	
	0.0.0.0:443	Bind at port 443 only
	[::]:443	
	Range	IP address and/or port
Web: Home path UCI: uhttpd.main.home Opt: home	Defines the server document root.	
	/www	
	Range	
Web: Cert file UCI: uhttpd.main.cert Opt: cert	ASN.1/DER certificate used to serve HTTPS connections. If no listen_https options are given the key options are ignored.	
	/etc/uhttpd.crt	
	Range	
Web: Key file UCI: uhttpd.main.key Opt: key	ASN.1/DER private key used to serve HTTPS connections. If no listen_https options are given the key options are ignored.	
	/etc/uhttpd.key	
	Range	

Web: CGI profile UCI: uhttpd.main.cgi_prefix Opt: cgi_prefix	Defines the prefix for CGI scripts, relative to the document root. CGI support is disabled if this option is missing. <table border="1"> <tr><td>/cgi-bin</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/cgi-bin		Range	
/cgi-bin					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.lua_prefix Opt: lua_prefix	Defines the prefix for dispatching requests to the embedded lua interpreter, relative to the document root. Lua support is disabled if this option is missing. <table border="1"> <tr><td>/luci</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/luci		Range	
/luci					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.lua_handler Opt: lua_handler	Specifies the lua handler script used to initialise the lua runtime on server start. <table border="1"> <tr><td>/usr/lib/lua/luci/cgi/uhttpd.lua</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/usr/lib/lua/luci/cgi/uhttpd.lua		Range	
/usr/lib/lua/luci/cgi/uhttpd.lua					
Range					
Web: Script timeout UCI: uhttpd.main.script_timeout Opt: script_timeout	Sets the maximum wait time for CGI or lua requests in seconds. Requested executables are terminated if no output was generated. <table border="1"> <tr><td>60</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	60		Range	
60					
Range					
Web: Network timeout UCI: uhttpd.main.network_timeout Opt: network_timeout	Maximum wait time for network activity. Requested executables are terminated and connection is shut down if no network activity occurred for the specified number of seconds. <table border="1"> <tr><td>30</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	30		Range	
30					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.realm Opt: realm	Defines basic authentication realm when prompting the client for credentials (HTTP 400). <table border="1"> <tr><td>OpenWrt</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	OpenWrt		Range	
OpenWrt					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.config Opt: config	Config file in Busybox httpd format for additional settings. Currently only used to specify basic auth areas. <table border="1"> <tr><td>/etc/http.conf</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/etc/http.conf		Range	
/etc/http.conf					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.index_page Opt: index_page	Index file to use for directories, for example, add index.php when using php. <table border="1"> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			Range	
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: httpd.main.error_page Opt: error_page	Virtual URL of file of CGI script to handle 404 requests. Must begin with '/' (forward slash). <table border="1"> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			Range	
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.no_symlinks Opt: no_symlinks	Does not follow symbolic links if enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.no_dirlists Opt: no_symlinks	Does not generate directory listings if enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Web: rfc 1918 filter UCI: uhttpd.main.rfc1918_filter=1 Opt: rfc1918_filter	Enables option to reject requests from RFC1918 IPs to public server IPs (DNS rebinding counter measure).				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 7: Information table for http server basic settings

5.14.3 HTTP server using UCI

Multiple sections of the type uhttpd may exist. The init script will launch one webserver instance per section.

A standard uhttpd configuration is shown below.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show uhttpd
uhttpd.main=uhttpd
uhttpd.main.listen_http=0.0.0.0:80
uhttpd.main.listen_https=0.0.0.0:443
uhttpd.main.home=/www
uhttpd.main.rfc1918_filter=1
uhttpd.main.cert=/etc/uhttpd.crt
uhttpd.main.key=/etc/uhttpd.key
uhttpd.main.cgi_prefix=/cgi-bin
uhttpd.main.script_timeout=60
uhttpd.main.network_timeout=30
uhttpd.main.config=/etc/http.conf
HTTP server using package options
root@GW_router:~# uci export dropbear
config uhttpd 'main'
    list listen_http '0.0.0.0:80'
    list listen_https '0.0.0.0:443'
    option home '/www'
    option rfc1918_filter '1'
    option cert '/etc/uhttpd.crt'
    option key '/etc/uhttpd.key'
    option cgi_prefix '/cgi-bin'
    option script_timeout '60'
    option network_timeout '30'
    option config '/etc/http.conf'
```

5.14.4 HTTPs server certificate settings

To configure HTTPs server certificate settings, in the top menu, select **Services -> HTTP Server**. Scroll down to the Certificate Settings section.

The screenshot shows a 'Certificate Settings' page with the following fields:

- Days:** 3650 (Validity time of the generated certificates in days)
- Bits:** 1024 (Size of the generated RSA key in bits)
- country:** IE (ISO country code of the certificate issuer)
- state:** Dublin (State of the certificate issuer)
- location:** Dublin (Location/city of the certificate issuer)
- commonname:** GW (Common name covered by the certificate)

At the bottom are three buttons: 'Save & Apply', 'Save', and 'Reset'.

Figure 13: HTTP server certificate settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Days UCI: uhttpd.px5g.days Opt: days	Validity time of the generated certificates in days. 730 Range
Web: Bits UCI: uhttpd.px5g.bits Opt: bits	Size of the generated RSA key in bits. 1024 Range
Web: Country UCI: uhttpd.px5g.country Opt: country	ISO code of the certificate issuer.
Web: State UCI: uhttpd.px5g.state Opt: state	State of the certificate issuer.
Web: Location UCI: uhttpd.px5g.location Opt: location	Location or city of the certificate user.
Web: Commonname UCI: uhttpd.commonname Opt: commonname	Common name covered by the certificate. For the purposes of secure Activation, this must be set to the serial number (Eth0 MAC address) of the device.

Table 8: Information table for HTTP server certificate settings

5.14.5 HTTPS server using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show uhttpd.px5g
uhttpd.px5g=cert
uhttpd.px5g.days=3650
uhttpd.px5g.bits=1024
uhttpd.px5g.country=IE
uhttpd.px5g.state=Dublin
uhttpd.px5g.location=Dublin
uhttpd.px5g.commonname=00E0C8000000
HTTPS server using package options
root@GW_router:~# uci export uhttpd
package uhttpdconfig 'cert' 'px5g'
    option 'days' '3650'
    option 'bits' '1024'
    option 'state' 'Dublin'

    option 'location' 'Dublin'
    option 'commonname' '00E0C8000000'
```

5.15 Basic authentication (httpd conf)

For backward compatibility reasons, uhttpd uses the file /etc/httpd.conf to define authentication areas and the associated usernames and passwords. This configuration file is not in UCI format.

Authentication realms are defined in the format prefix:username:password with one entry and a line break.

Prefix is the URL part covered by the realm, for example, cgi-bin to request basic auth for any CGI program.

Username specifies the username a client has to login with.

Password defines the secret password required to authenticate.

The password can be either in plain text format, MD5 encoded or in the form \$p\$user where the user refers to an account in /etc/shadow or /etc/passwd.

If you use \$p\$... format, uhttpd will compare the client provided password against the one stored in the shadow or passwd database.

5.16 Securing uhttpd

By default, uhttpd binds to 0.0.0.0 which also includes the WAN port of your router. To bind uhttpd to the LAN port only you have to change the listen_http and listen_https options to your LAN IP address.

To get your current LAN IP address, enter:

```
uci get network.lan.ipaddr
```

Then modify the configuration appropriately:

```
uci set uhttpd.main.listen_http='192.168.1.1:80'
uci set uhttpd.main.listen_https='192.168.1.1:443'

config 'uhttpd' 'main'
    list listen_http      192.168.1.1:80
    list listen_https     192.168.1.1:443
```

5.17 Displaying custom information via login screen

The login screen, by default, shows the hostname of the router in addition to the username and password prompt. However, the router can be configured to show some other basic information if required using a UDS script.

Note: this can only be configured via the command line.

5.17.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
luci	main
uds	script

5.17.2 Configuring login screen custom information

The luci package option `login_page_info_template` is configured with the path to a UDS script that would render the required information on the right side of the login page.

The following example shows how to display serial number and mobile signal strength.

Note: this can only be configured via the command line.



Figure 14: Example login screen displaying serial and signal strength

5.17.2.1 Login screen custom information using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show luci
luci.main=core
luci.main.login_page_info_template=/tmp/uds/sysauth_template

root@GW_router:~# uci show uds
uds.sysauth_template=script
uds.sysauth_template.enabled=1
uds.sysauth_template.exec_type=none
uds.sysauth_template.fname=sysauth_template.htm
uds.sysauth_template.type=none
uds.sysauth_template.text=Serial: <%=pcdata(luci.version.serial)%><br/> <%
local sig = luci.dispatcher.uci.cursor_state():get("mobile", "3g_1_1",
"sig_dbm") or -113 sig = tonumber(sig) local hue = (sig + 113) * 2 local
hue = math.min(math.max(hue, 0), 120) %> Signal strength: <h3
style="color:hsl(<%=hue%>, 90%, 50%); display:inline;"><%=sig%></h3> dBm
```

5.17.2.2 Login screen custom information using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export luci
package luci
config core 'main'
    option login_page_info_template '/tmp/uds/sysauth_template'
root@GW_router:~# uci export uds
package uds
config script 'sysauth_template'
    option enabled '1'
    option exec_type 'none'
    option fname 'sysauth_template.htm'
    option type 'none'
    list text 'Serial: <%=pcdata(luci.version.serial)%><br/>'
    list text '<% local sig =
luci.dispatcher.uci.cursor_state():get("mobile", "3g_1_1", "sig_dbm") or -
113'
    list text 'sig = tonumber(sig)'
    list text 'local hue = (sig + 113) * 2'
    list text 'local hue = math.min(math.max(hue, 0), 120) %>'
    list text 'Signal strength: <h3 style="color:hsl(<%=hue%>, 90%, 50%); display:inline;"><%=sig%></h3> dBm'
```

You can configure your router using either the router's web interface or via the command

6 Configuring Dynamic DNS

6.1 Overview

Dynamic DNS (DDNS) functionality on a SATEL router will dynamically perform DDNS updates to a server so it can associate an IP address with a correctly associated DNS name. Users can then contact a machine, router, device and so on with a DNS name rather than a dynamic IP address.

An account is required with the provider, and one or more domain names are associated with that account. A dynamic DNS client on the router monitors the public IP address associated with an interface and whenever the IP address changes, the client notifies the DNS provider to update the corresponding domain name.

When the DNS provider responds to queries for the domain name, it sets a low lifetime, typically a minute or two at most, on the response so that it is not cached. Updates to the domain name are thus visible throughout the whole Internet with little delay.

Note: most providers impose restrictions on how updates are handled: updating when no change of address occurred is considered abusive and may result in an account being blocked. Sometimes, addresses must be refreshed periodically, for example, once a month, to show that they are still in active use.

6.2 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
ddns	service

6.3 Configuring Dynamic DNS using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Services -> Dynamic DNS**. The Dynamic DNS Configuration page appears.

Figure 15: The Dynamic DNS configuration page

Enter a text name that will be used for the dynamic DNS section in the configuration. Select **Add**. The Dynamic DNS configuration options appear.

6.3.1 Dynamic DNS settings

Dynamic DNS

Dynamic DNS allows that your router can be reached with a fixed hostname while having a dynamically changing IP address.

DDNS1

Enable	<input type="checkbox"/>
Service	-- custom --
Custom update-URL	<input type="text"/>
Hostname	<input type="text"/>
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="password"/>
Source of IP address	network
Network	lan
Check for changed IP every	10
Check-time unit	min
Force update every	72
Force-time unit	h
Listen on	<input type="radio"/> dialin:

Figure 16: The dynamic DNS main settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enable UCI: ddns.<name>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables a Dynamic DNS entry on the router. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled				
Web: Service UCI: ddns.<name>.service_name Opt: service_name	Defines the Dynamic DNS provider				
Web: Customer update-URL UCI: ddns.<name>.update_url Opt: update_url	Defines the customer DNS provider. Displayed when the service is set to custom in the web UI.				
Web: Hostname UCI: ddns.<name>.domain Opt: domain	Defines the fully qualified domain name associated with this entry. This is the name to update with the new IP address as needed.				
Web: Username UCI: ddns.<name>.username Opt: username	Defines the user name to use for authenticating domain updates with the selected provider.				
Web: Password UCI: ddns.<name>.password Opt: password	Defines the password to use for authenticating domain name updates with the selected provider.				

Web: Source of IP address UCI: ddns.<name>.ip_source Opt: ip_source	Defines the type of interface whose IP needs to be updated.	
	network	IP is associated with a network configuration.
	interface	IP is associated with an interface.
Web: Network UCI: ddns.<name>.ip_network Opt: ip_network	Defines the network whose IP needs to be updated. Displayed when the Source of IP address option is set to network. All the configured network interfaces will be shown.	
Web: Interface UCI: ddns.<name>.ip_interface Opt: ip_interface	Defines the interface whose IP needs to be updated. Displayed when the Source of IP address option is set to interface. All the configured interfaces will be shown.	
Web: URL UCI: ddns.<name>.ip_url Opt: ip_url	Defines the URL where the IP downloaded from. Displayed when the Source of IP address option is set to URL.	
Web: Check for changed IP every UCI: ddns.<name>.check_interval Opt: check_interval	Defines how often to check for an IP change. Used in conjunction with check_unit.	
	10	.
	Range	
Web: Check-time unit UCI: ddns.<name>.check_unit Opt: check_unit	Defines the time unit to use for check for an IP change. Used in conjunction with check_interval.	
	minutes	
	hours	
Web: Force update every UCI: ddns.<name>.force_interval Opt: force_interval	Defines how often to force an IP update to the provider. Used in conjunction with force_unit.	
	72	Disabled.
	Range	Enabled
Web: Force-time unit UCI: ddns.<name>.force_unit Opt: force_unit	Defines the time unit to use for check for an IP change. Used in conjunction with force_interval.	
	minutes	
	hours	
Web: Listen on UCI: ddns.<name>.interface Opt: interface	Defines the interface for ddns monitoring. Typically this will be the same as the interface whose IP is being updated – as defined ip_network or ip_interface.	
	All configured interfaces will be displayed.	

Table 9: Information table for dynamic DNS settings

6.4 Dynamic DNS using UCI

Dynamic DNS uses the ddns package **/etc/config/ddns**

6.4.1 UCI commands for DDNS

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show ddns
ddns.ddns1=service
ddns.ddns1.enabled=1
ddns.ddns1.service_name=dyndns.org
ddns.ddns1.domain=fqdn_of_interface
ddns.ddns1.username=testusername
ddns.ddns1.password=testpassword
```

```
ddns.ddns1.ip_source=network
ddns.ddns1.ip_network=dsl0
ddns.ddns1.check_interval=10
ddns.ddns1.check_unit=minutes
ddns.ddns1.force_interval=72
ddns.ddns1.force_unit=hours
ddns.ddns1.interface=dsl0
Package options for DDNS
root@GW_router:~# uci export ddns
package ddns

config service 'ddns1'
    option enabled '1'
    option service_name 'dyndns.org'
    option domain 'fqdn_of_interface'
    option username 'test'
    option password 'test'
    option ip_source 'network'
    option ip_network 'dsl0'
    option check_interval '10'
    option check_unit 'minutes'
    option force_interval '72'
    option force_unit 'hours'
    option interface 'dsl0'
```

7 System settings

The system section contains settings that apply to the most basic operation of the system, such as the host name, time zone, logging details, NTP server, language and style.

The host name appears in the top left hand corner of the interface menu. It also appears when you open a Telnet or SSH session.

Note: this document shows no host name in screen grabs. Throughout the document we use the host name 'GW_router'.

The system configuration contains a logging section for the configuration of a Syslog client.

7.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
system	main
	timeserver

7.2 Configuring system properties

To set your system properties, in the top menu, click **System**. There are four sections in the System page.

Section	Description
General settings	Configure host name, local time and time zone.
Logging	Configure a router to log to a server. You can configure a Syslog client in this section.
Language and Style	Configure the router's web language and style.
Time synchronization	Configure the NTP server in this section.

7.2.1 General settings

Figure 17: General settings in system properties

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Local Time UCI: system.main.hostname Opt: hostname	Sets the local time and syncs with browser. You can manually configure on CLI, using: date -s YYYY.MM.DD-hh:mm:ss
Web: hostname UCI: system.main.timezone Opt: timezone	Specifies the hostname for this system.
Web: Timezone UCI: system.main.timezone Opt: timezone	Specifies the time zone that the date and time should be rendered in by default.
Web: n/a UCI: system.main.timezone Opt: time_save_interval_min	Defines the interval in minutes to store the local time for use on next reboot. <input type="text" value="10m"/>

Table 10: Information table for general settings section

7.2.2 Logging

The screenshot shows the 'System Properties' dialog box with the 'Logging' tab selected. The tabs at the top are 'General Settings', 'Logging' (which is active and highlighted in blue), and 'Language and Style'. The 'Logging' tab contains the following configuration options:

- System log buffer size: A text input field containing '16' followed by a unit indicator 'kiB'.
- External system log server: A text input field containing '0.0.0.0'.
- External system log server port: A text input field containing '514'.
- Log output level: A dropdown menu currently set to 'Debug'.
- Cron Log Level: A dropdown menu currently set to 'Warning'.

Figure 18: The logging section in system properties

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: System log buffer size UCI: system.main.log_size Opt: log_size	Log buffer size in KB. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>16</td> <td>16 KB</td> </tr> </table>	Range		16	16 KB
Range					
16	16 KB				
Web: External system log server UCI: system.main.log_ip Opt: log_ip	External syslog server IP address. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0.0.0.0</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Range		0.0.0.0	
Range					
0.0.0.0					
Web: External system log server port UCI: system.main.log_port Opt: log_port	External syslog server port number. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>514</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Range		514	
Range					
514					

Web: Log output level UCI: system.main.conloglevel Opt: conloglevel	Sets the maximum log output level severity for system events. System events are written to the system log. Messages with a lower level or level equal to the configured level are displayed in the console using the logread command, or alternatively written to flash, if configured to do so.																											
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Web value</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Debug</td><td>Information useful to developers for debugging the application.</td><td>8</td></tr> <tr> <td>Info</td><td>Normal operational messages that require no action.</td><td>7</td></tr> <tr> <td>Notice</td><td>Events that are unusual, but not error conditions.</td><td>6</td></tr> <tr> <td>Warning</td><td>May indicate that an error will occur if action is not taken.</td><td>5</td></tr> <tr> <td>Error</td><td>Error conditions</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr> <td>Critical</td><td>Critical conditions</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr> <td>Alert</td><td>Should be addressed immediately</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr> <td>Emergency</td><td>System is unusable</td><td>1</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Web value	Description	UCI	Debug	Information useful to developers for debugging the application.	8	Info	Normal operational messages that require no action.	7	Notice	Events that are unusual, but not error conditions.	6	Warning	May indicate that an error will occur if action is not taken.	5	Error	Error conditions	4	Critical	Critical conditions	3	Alert	Should be addressed immediately	2	Emergency	System is unusable	1
Web value	Description	UCI																										
Debug	Information useful to developers for debugging the application.	8																										
Info	Normal operational messages that require no action.	7																										
Notice	Events that are unusual, but not error conditions.	6																										
Warning	May indicate that an error will occur if action is not taken.	5																										
Error	Error conditions	4																										
Critical	Critical conditions	3																										
Alert	Should be addressed immediately	2																										
Emergency	System is unusable	1																										
Web: Cron Log Level UCI: system.main.cronloglevel Opt: cronloglevel	Sets the maximum log level for kernel messages to be logged to the console. Only messages with a level lower, or level equal to the configured level will be printed to the console.																											
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Web value</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Normal</td><td>Normal operation messages</td><td>8</td></tr> <tr> <td>Warning</td><td>Error messages</td><td>9</td></tr> <tr> <td>Debug</td><td>Debug messages</td><td>5</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Web value	Description	UCI	Normal	Normal operation messages	8	Warning	Error messages	9	Debug	Debug messages	5															
Web value	Description	UCI																										
Normal	Normal operation messages	8																										
Warning	Error messages	9																										
Debug	Debug messages	5																										
Web: n/a UCI: system.main.log_file Opt: log_file	Since logread is only small in size it can be beneficial to write system events to flash. This option defines the file path to write the events. Set to 'root/syslog.messages'																											
Web: n/a UCI: system.main.log_type Opt: log_type	Defines whether to write the system events to a file rather than logread. Set to 'file' to write to the file configured under log_file option.																											
Web: n/a UCI: system.main.log_file_count Opt: log_file_count	Defines the number of archive syslog files to store in flash. When configured above to write to /root/syslog.messages files will be stored at /root/syslog.messages,x (where x starts at 0). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Stores 1 archive log file in flash</td></tr> </table>	Range		1	Stores 1 archive log file in flash																							
Range																												
1	Stores 1 archive log file in flash																											

Table 11: Information table for the logging section

7.2.3 Language and style

The screenshot shows the 'Language and Style' tab selected in the 'System Properties' interface. It includes dropdown menus for 'Language' (set to 'auto') and 'Design' (set to 'Bootstrap'). Below these, a section titled 'Time Synchronization' contains a note: 'Time Synchronization is not configured yet.' and a 'Setup Time Synchronization' button.

Figure 19: The language and style section in system properties

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Language	Sets the language to 'auto' or 'English'. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>Auto</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>English</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Auto		English	
Auto					
English					
Design	Sets the router's style.				

Table 12: Information table for the language and style page

7.2.4 Time synchronization

The router time must be synchronised using NTP. The router can act as both an NTP client and an NTP server. It is enabled as an NTP client by default and individual interfaces can be configured to respond to NTP requests.

The screenshot shows the 'Time Synchronization' tab in the 'System Properties' interface. It includes dropdown menus for 'NTP update interval' (set to 'auto'), 'NTP Server Interface' (set to 'lan'), and a list for 'NTP server candidates' containing three entries: '0.openwrt.pool.ntp.org', '1.openwrt.pool.ntp.org', and '3.openwrt.pool.ntp.org'. There is also a field for 'NTP Server Stratum'.

Figure 20: The time synchronization section in system properties

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: NTP update interval UCI: system.ntp.interval_hours Opt: interval_hours	Specifies interval of NTP requests in hours. Default value set to auto. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>auto</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td>auto; 1-23</td> </tr> </table>	auto		Range	auto; 1-23
auto					
Range	auto; 1-23				

Web: NTP server candidates UCI: system.ntp.server Opt: list server	Defines the list of NTP servers to poll the time from. If the list is empty, the built in NTP daemon is not started. Multiple servers can be configured and are separated by a space if using UCI. By default all fields are set to 0.0.0.0.				
Web: NTP Server Interface UCI: system.ntp.listen Opt: listen	Defines a list of interfaces that respond to NTP requests. Interfaces should be delimited using space. Example: option listen 'LAN1 LAN2' <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>blank</td> <td>Do not respond to NTP requests</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	blank	Do not respond to NTP requests	Range	
blank	Do not respond to NTP requests				
Range					
Web: NTP Server Stratum UCI: system.ntp.stratum Opt: stratum	Defines how far this NTP Server is from the reference clock. For example, an NTP server getting time directly from the reference clock will have a stratum of 1. In general, this should be left blank, which means that the router NTP Server will derive the stratum from the NTP dialogue. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>blank</td> <td>NTP server will derive stratum</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	blank	NTP server will derive stratum	Range	
blank	NTP server will derive stratum				
Range					

Table 13: Information table for time synchronization section

7.2.5 System reboot

The router can be configured to reboot immediately, or scheduled to reboot a configured time in the future.

In the top menu, select **System -> Reboot**. The System page appears.

Ensure you have saved all your configuration changes before you reboot.

Figure 21: The reboot page

Check the **Reboot now** check box and then click **Reboot**.

7.3 System settings using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show system
system.main=system
system.main.hostname=GW_router
system.main.timezone=UTC
```

```

system.main.log_ip=1.1.1.1
system.main.log_port=514
system.main.conloglevel=8
system.main.cronloglevel=8
system.ntp.interval_hours=auto
system.ntp.server=0.GW_router.pool.ntp.org 10.10.10.10
System settings using package options
root@GW_router:~# uci export system
package 'system'

config 'system' 'main'
    option 'hostname' "GW_router"
    option 'timezone' "UTC"
    option 'log_ip' "1.1.1.1"
    option 'log_port' "514"
    option time_save_interval_min "10"
    option conloglevel '8'
    option cronloglevel '8'

config 'timeserver' 'ntp'
    option interval_hours 'auto'
    list server "0.GW_router.pool.ntp.org"
    list server '10.10.10.10'
    option listen 'LAN1 LAN2'

```

7.4 System diagnostics

7.4.1 System events

Events in the system have a class, sub class and severity. All events are written to the system log.

7.4.1.1 Logread

To view the system log, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# logread
```

Shows the log.

```
root@GW_router:~# logread |tail
```

Shows end of the log.

```
root@GW_router:~# logread | more
```

Shows the log page by page.

```
root@GW_router:~# logread -f
```

Shows the log on an ongoing basis. To stop this option, press **ctrl-c**.

```
root@GW_router:~# logread -f &
```

Shows the log on an ongoing basis while in the background. This allows you to run other commands while still tracing the event logs. To stop this option, type **fg** to view the current jobs, then press **ctrl-c** to kill those jobs.

7.4.2 System events in flash

Since logread is only small in size it can be beneficial to write system events to flash. To do this you need to modify the system config under the system package. Set the options 'log_file', 'log_size' and 'log_type' as below:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export system
package system
config system 'main'
    option hostname 'GW_router'
    option zonename 'UTC'
    option timezone 'GMT0'
    option conloglevel '8'
    option cronloglevel '8'
    option time_save_interval_hour '10'
    option log_hostname '%serial'
    option log_ip '1.1.1.1'
    option log_port '514'
    option log_file '/root/syslog.messages'
    option log_size '400'
    option log_type 'file'
```

The above commands will take effect after a reboot.

```
root@GW_router:~# cat /root/syslog.messages
```

Shows all the system events stored in flash.

```
root@GW_router:~# tail /root/syslog.messages
```

Shows end of the events stored flash.

```
root@GW_router:~# tail -f /root/syslog.messages &
```

Shows the log on an ongoing basis. To stop this option, press **ctrl-c**.

8 Upgrading router firmware

This chapter describes how to upgrade router firmware. The upgrade process is as follows:

- Firmware is transferred to the device.
- Firmware is checked to ensure there are no corruptions.
- Firmware is saved to persistent storage.
- Data in persistent storage is validated.

To avoid any unrecoverable errors during the process, you must follow several safety steps described in this chapter.

On successful completion of the process, you can restart the device running the new firmware.

8.1 Software versions

If you have software versions prior to 72.002, to upgrade firmware using the web interface, go to section 9.1.2.

If you have software version 72.002 or above, to upgrade firmware using the web interface go to section 9.1.3.

To upgrade firmware using CLI, for any software version, go to section 9.1.4.

8.1.1 Identify your software version

To check which software version your router is running, in the top menu, browse to **Status -> Overview**.

Status	
System	
Router Name	GW0000
Router Model	GW0031W-AA0179E
Firmware Version	VIE-16.00.55
Current Image/Config	image2 / config2
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Fri Aug 5 11:43:52 2016
Uptime	0h 10m 8s
Load Average	0.27, 0.35, 0.31

Figure 22: The status page showing a software version prior to 72.002

Status	
System	
Router Name	dmvpn
Router Model	GW
Firmware Version	LIS-15.00.72.002rc4
Current Image/Config	image1 / config1
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Thu Jan 26 14:46:03 2017
Uptime	0h 39m 37s
Load Average	1.02, 0.53, 0.48

Figure 23: The status page showing software version 72.002

In the Firmware Version row, the first two digits of the firmware version identify the hardware platform, for example LIS-15; while the remaining digits: .00.72.002, show the software version.

8.1.2 Upgrading router firmware for software versions pre- 72.002

Copy the new firmware issued by SATEL to a PC connected to the router.

In the top menu, select **System tab -> Backup/Flash Firmware**. The Flash operations page appears.

Figure 24: The flash operations page

Under Flash new firmware image, click **Choose File** or **Browse**.

Note: the button will vary depending on the browser you are using.

Select the appropriate image and then click **Flash Image**. The Flash Firmware – Verify page appears.

Flash Firmware - Verify

The flash image was uploaded. Below is the checksum and file size listed, compare them with the original file to ensure data integrity. Click "Proceed" below to start the flash procedure.

- Checksum: 4f5aa18ebb3ec575ce16dcc9e18273af
- Size: 7.63 MB (14.00 MB available)

Proceed

Figure 25: The flash firmware - verify page

Click **Proceed**. The System – Flashing... page appears.

System - Flashing...

The system is flashing now.
DO NOT POWER OFF THE DEVICE!
Wait a few minutes until you try to reconnect. It might be necessary to renew the address of your computer to reach the device again, depending on your settings.

Waiting for router...

Figure 26: The system – flashing...page

When the 'waiting for router' icon disappears, the upgrade is complete, and the login homepage appears.

To verify that the router has been upgraded successfully, click **Status** in the top menu. The Firmware Version shows in the system list.

Status

System

Router Name	GW0000
Router Model	GW0031W-AA0179E
Firmware Version	VIE-16.00.55
Current Image/Config	image2 / config2
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Fri Aug 5 11:43:52 2016
Uptime	0h 10m 8s
Load Average	0.27, 0.35, 0.31

Figure 27: The system status list

8.1.3 Upgrading router firmware for software version 72.002 and above

Copy the new firmware issued by SATEL to a PC connected to the router.

In the top menu, select **System tab > Flash operations**. The Flash operations page appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Flash Operations' page with the following details:

Contents	Current Operational Status	After Reboot	Operations
Image 1 LIS-15.00.72.002rc1	active	will be active	
Image 2 LIS-15.00.72.002rc1		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	<input type="button" value="Flash image..."/>
Config 1 Configuration (19013 bytes)	active	will be active	
Config 2 Configuration (19037 bytes)		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	<input type="button" value="Upload new..."/>
Factory Config Configuration (12203 bytes)		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	

Below the table:

- Reboot using Active Configuration**: Reboot the device. The image and config that will be used are shown in green above.
- Factory Reset**: Here you can reset the router to factory configuration.
On reboot, the factory defaults will be running and you will be able to make changes to the configuration.
A choice of config 1 or config 2 is given in case you have a preference for which config to use (and which to preserve). If you have no preference then either can be used.

Figure 28: The flash operations page

Under Flash Operations, click **Flash Image**. Only the inactive image is available to flash.

Select the appropriate image and then wait until image has loaded.

Note: this process may take a while depending on the available connection speed.

When the image has loaded, the Update Firmware page appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Update Firmware' page with the following details:

The flash image was uploaded.
Click one of the "Flash Image" buttons below to start the flash procedure.

- MD5 Checksum: 47b323412e2e26403dc1f832fc9bb011
- Size: 6.68 MB (14.00 MB available)

LIS-15.00.72.002rc1

Figure 29: The flash firmware - verify page

Click either: **Flash image and do not reboot**, or **Flash image and reboot using new image immediately**. The 'Firmware update is being applied' message appears.

When the firmware update is complete, the Update Firmware page appears. There are various messages, depending on which option you selected, or if any corruptions have occurred.

8.1.4 Flash image and do not reboot option

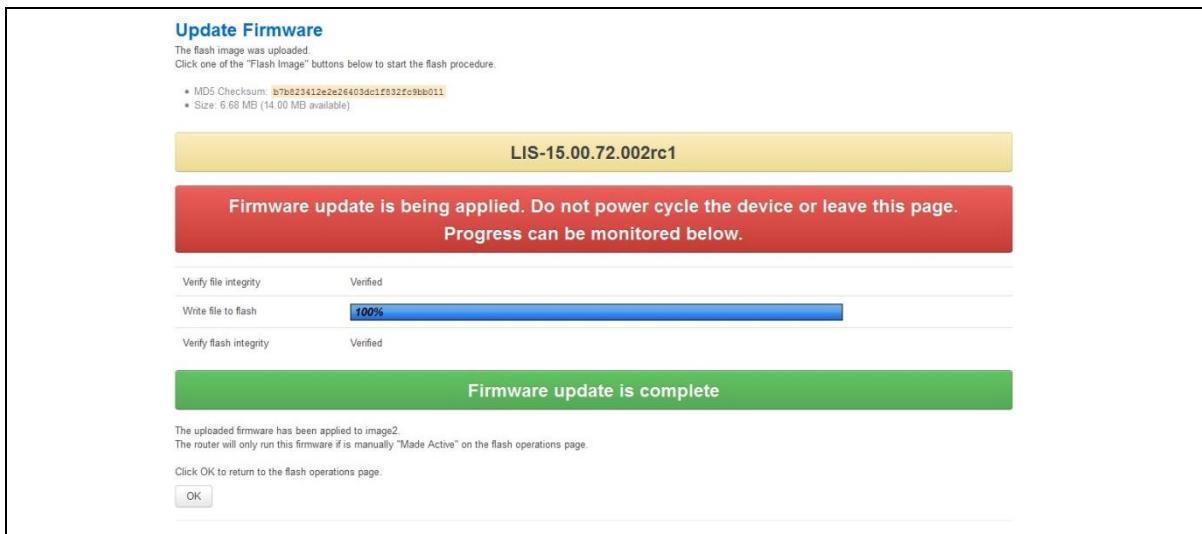


Figure 30: The firmware update page after ‘...do not reboot’ option selected

If you select ‘Flash image and do not reboot’, the router will only run the firmware if you click **OK** to return to the Flash Operations page. There you can manually select **Made Active (after reboot)**. Then click **Reboot Now** in the ‘Reboot using Active Configuration’ section.

8.1.5 Update flash image and reboot using new image immediately option

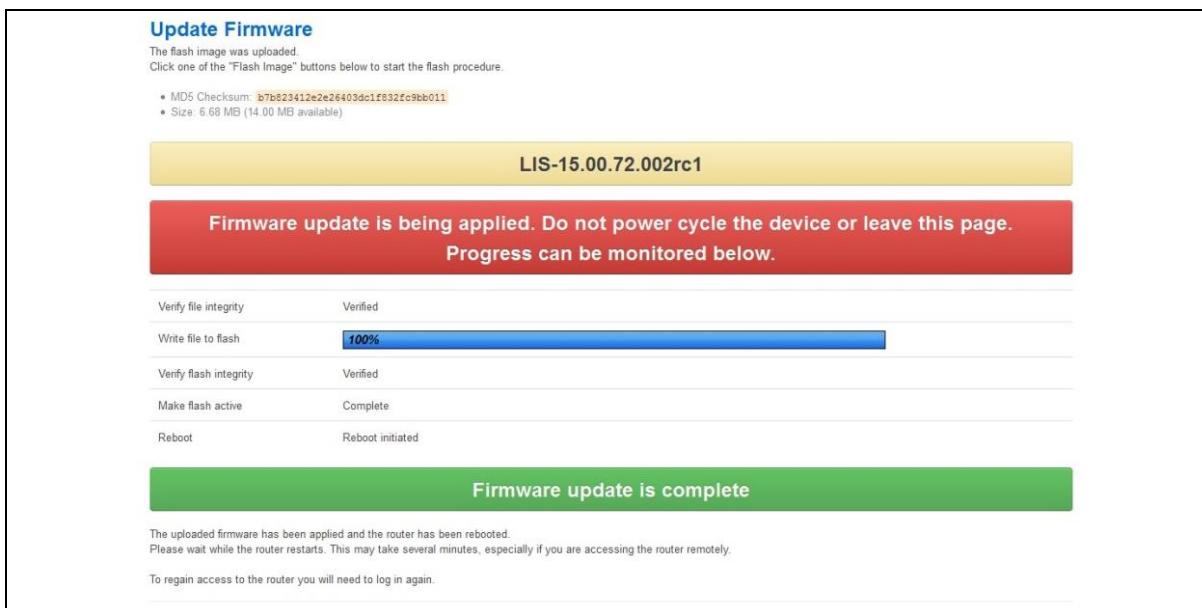


Figure 31: The firmware update page after ‘update flash image and reboot...’ option selected

If you select ‘Update flash image and reboot using new image immediately’ and the overall validation and flashing process has succeeded, the router will reboot immediately. To regain access to the router you must login again. If any part of the processes encounters an error the reboot does **not** occur and a report is given.

8.1.6 Possible file corruption

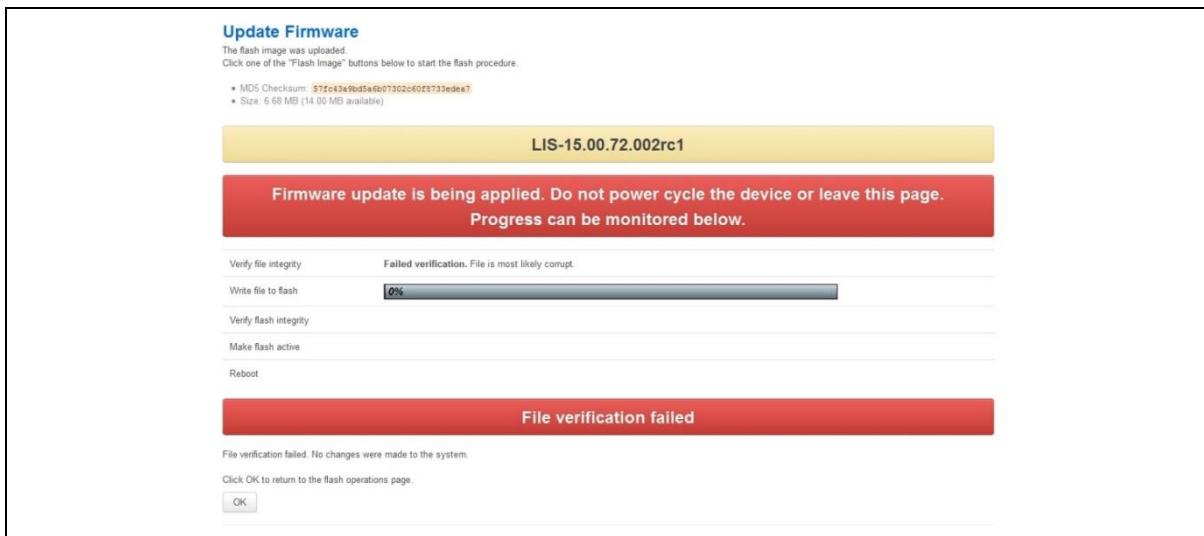


Figure 32: The firmware update failure page

In the unfortunate event that the firmware upgrade fails, the 'Failed verification File is most likely corrupt' or similar message will appear in the Verify file integrity row. No changes will be made to the system and the general message **File verification failed** appears.

8.1.7 Verify the firmware has been upgraded successfully

To check the firmware version, in the top menu, browse to **System -> Flash Operations**, or after router reboots, in the top menu, click **Status**. The Firmware Version shows in the system list and also in the right top corner of the menu bar.

Status	
System	
Router Name	GW0000
Router Model	GW0031W-AA0179E
Firmware Version	VIE-16.00.55
Current Image/Config	image2 / config2
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Fri Aug 5 11:43:52 2016
Uptime	0h 10m 8s
Load Average	0.27, 0.35, 0.31

Figure 33: The system status list showing current firmware version

8.2 Upgrading firmware using CLI

8.2.1 Transfer file to router

To upgrade firmware using CLI, you will need a TFTP server on a connected PC or SCP available.

Open up an SSH or Telnet session to the router.

Enter in the relevant username and password.

To access the temp folder, enter **cd /tmp**

Depending on the router's software version the following TFTP clients are available:

- atftp
- curl

To determine which is available on your router, enter:

```
which curl || which atftp
```

The output shows the available application:

```
/usr/bin/curl
```

ATFTP

Inline command usage:

```
atftp -g -r LIS-15.00.72.002.image -l /tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image x.x.x.x
```

where x.x.x.x is the IP address of your PC, **-g** is get operation and **-l / -r** are local and remote file name to store.

CURL

Inline command usage:

```
curl tftp://x.x.x.x/LIS-15.00.72.002.image -o /tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image
```

where x.x.x.x is the IP of your PC, **-o** is local file name to store.

SCP

Secure Copy (SCP) is a part of Secure Shell (SSH) and enables file transfers to the router using authentication and encryption. It is different to TFTP, which uses UDP, while SCP uses a TCP connection. On Unix machines, SCP is a standard part of the system; on Windows it requires an additional application.

The usage example below is for a Unix machine and therefore assumes the image file is in the current folder.

```
scp LIS-15.00.72.002.image root@x.x.x.x:/tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image
```

Where the first argument ‘LIS-15.00.72.002.image’ in SCP is the source and the second argument ‘tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image’ is the destination path, “root” is the username used to connect to x.x.x.x IP address.

After you execute the above command you will be asked to provide a root password.

At this stage the output shows the process of copying the software file into destination directory.

```
root@192.168.100.1's password:  
LIS-15.00.72.000.image          100%   6812KB    2.2MB/s    00:03
```

Image verification before flashing

To verify the integrity of the image, firmware version xx.yy.72.002 and later uses an image-check application.

Note: it is the user’s responsibility to verify the image before starting to write image to flash process.

To use the image-check on downloaded image, enter:

```
image-check /tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image
```

In the case of any image corruption, appropriate error message will be displayed:

```
Error: no SquashFS filesystem after CRC'd section - data length 3  
Error: read failed, expected at least 3 more bytes  
or other.
```

Note: image is valid only if none of error message appears. This process is done automatically during Web UI firmware update.

Flashing

When downloaded firmware verification succeeds, the new image can be written to flash.

To write the image into the alternative image, enter:

```
mtd write LIS-15.00.72.002.image altimage
```

Note: this is an example, substitute the correct file name.

Flash verification after flashing

After the write process has finished, you must complete post verification of the firmware.

To verify the checksum of downloaded firmware, enter:

```
va_image_csum.sh /tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image
```

The checksum of the downloaded binary is shown:

```
08761cd03e33c569873bcc24cf2b7389 7006920 LIS-15.00.72.002 This MD5
```

To verify the checksum of written firmware, enter:

```
va_image_csum.sh alt
```

After a while the checksum will be calculated:

```
Calculating checksum.....
```

```
08761cd03e33c569873bcc24cf2b7389 7006920 LIS-15.00.72.002 This MD5
```

Verify and compare the checksum with the MD5 sum of the downloaded image.

If the checksum of the written firmware in altimage matches the one from the downloaded image in /tmp, then the new firmware has been programmed successfully.

Setup an alternative image

Provided the programming has succeeded, you can set it as the next image to use after reboot, enter:

```
vacmd set next image altimage
```

To reboot using the new firmware, enter:

```
reboot
```

9 Router file structure

This section describes the file structure and location of essential directories and files on SATEL routers.

Throughout this document, we use information tables to show the different ways to configure the router using the router's web interface and command line interface (CLI).

When showing examples of the command line interface we use the host name 'GW_router' to indicate the system prompt. For example, the table below displays what the user should see when entering the command to show the current configuration in use on the router:

```
root@GW_router:~# va_config.sh
```

9.1 System information

General information about software and configuration used by the router is displayed on the Status page. To view the running configuration file status on the web interface, in the top menu, select **Status -> Overview**. This page also appears immediately after you have logged in.

Status	
System	
Router Name	GW0000
Router Model	GW0031W-AA0179E
Firmware Version	VIE-16.00.55
Current Image/Config	image2 / config2
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Fri Aug 5 11:43:52 2016
Uptime	0h 10m 8s
Load Average	0.27, 0.35, 0.31

Figure 34: The status page

System information is also available from the CLI if you enter the following command:

```
root@GW_router:~# va_vars.sh
```

The example below shows the output from the above command.

VA_SERIAL:	00E0C8121215
VA_MODEL:	GW0000
VA_ACTIVEIMAGE:	image2

VA_ACTIVECONFIG:	config1
VA_IMAGE1VER:	VIE-16.00.44
VA_IMAGE2VER:	VIE-16.00.44

9.2 Identify your software version

To check which software version your router is running, in the top menu, browse to **Status -> Overview**.

Status	
System	
Router Name	GW0000
Router Model	GW0031W-AA0179E
Firmware Version	VIE-16.00.55
Current Image/Config	image2 / config2
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Fri Aug 5 11:43:52 2016
Uptime	0h 10m 8s
Load Average	0.27, 0.35, 0.31

Figure 35: The status page showing a software version prior to 72.002

Status	
System	
Router Name	dmvpn
Router Model	GW
Firmware Version	LIS-15.00.72.002rc4
Current Image/Config	image1 / config1
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Thu Jan 26 14:46:03 2017
Uptime	0h 39m 37s
Load Average	1.02, 0.53, 0.48

Figure 36: The status page showing software version 72.002

In the Firmware Version row, the first two digits of the firmware version identify the hardware platform, for example LIS-15; while the remaining digits: .00.72.002, show the software version.

9.3 Image files

The system allows for two firmware image files:

- image1, and
- image2

Two firmware images are supported to enable the system to rollback to a previous firmware version if the upgrade of one image fails.

The image names (image1, image2) themselves are symbols that point to different partitions in the overall file system. A special image name "altimage" exists which always points to the image that is not running.

The firmware upgrade system always downloads firmware to "altimage".

9.4 Directory locations for UCI configuration files

Router configurations files are stored in folders on:

- /etc/factconf,
- /etc/config1, and
- /etc/config2

Multiple configuration files exist in each folder. Each configuration file contains configuration parameters for different areas of functionality in the system.

A symbolic link exists at /etc/config, which always points to one of factconf, config1 or config2 is the active configuration file.

Files that appear to be in /etc/config are actually in /etc/factconf|config1|config2 depending on which configuration is active.

If /etc/config is missing on start-up, for example on first boot, the links and directories are created with configuration files copied from /rom/etc/config/.

At any given time, only one of the configurations is the active configuration. The UCI system tool (Unified Configuration Interface) only acts upon the currently active configuration.

9.5 Viewing and changing current configuration

To show the configuration currently running, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# va_config.sh
```

To show the configuration to run after the next reboot, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# va_config.sh next
```

To set the configuration to run after the next reboot, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# va_config.sh -s [factconf|config1|config2|altconfig]
```

9.6 Configuration file syntax

The configuration files consist of sections – or packages - that contain one or more config statements. These optional statements define actual values.

Below is an example of a simple configuration file.

```
package 'example'

config 'example' 'test'
    option  'string'      'some value'
    option  'boolean'     '1'
    list    'collection'  'first item'
    list    'collection'  'second item'
```

The config 'example' 'test' statement defines the start of a section with the type example and the name test.

Command	Target	Description
export	[<config>]	Exports the configuration in a machine readable format. It is used internally to evaluate configuration files as shell scripts.
import	[<config>]	Imports configuration files in UCI syntax.
add	<config> <section-type>	Adds an anonymous section of type-section type to the given configuration.
add_list	<config>.<section>.<option>=<string>	Adds the given string to an existing list option.
show	[<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]]	Shows the given option, section or configuration in compressed notation.
get	<config>.<section>[.<option>]	Gets the value of the given option or the type of the given section.
Set	<config>.<section>[.<option>]=<value>	Sets the value of the given option, or adds a new section with the type set to the given value.
delete	<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]	Deletes the given section or option.

Table 1: Common commands, target and their descriptions

9.7 Managing configurations

9.7.1 Managing sets of configuration files using directory manipulation

Configurations can also be managed using directory manipulation.

To remove the contents of the current folder, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/etc/config1# rm -f *
```

Warning: the above command makes irreversible changes.

To remove the contents of a specific folder regardless of the current folder (config2), enter:

```
root@GW_router:/ # rm -f /etc/config1/*
```

Warning: the above command makes irreversible changes.

To copy the contents of one folder into another (config2 into config1), enter:

```
root@GW_router:/etc/config1# cp /etc/config2/* /etc/config1
```

9.8 Exporting a configuration file

If you have software versions prior to 72.002, to export a configuration file using the web interface, go to section 7.8.1.

If you have software version 72.002 or above, export a configuration file using the web interface go to section 7.8.2.

To export a configuration file using CLI, for any software version, go to section 7.8.3.

9.8.1 Exporting a configuration file using the web interface for software versions pre- 72.002

The current running configuration file may be exported using the web interface.

In the top menu, select **System > Backup/Flash Firmware**. The Flash operations page appears.

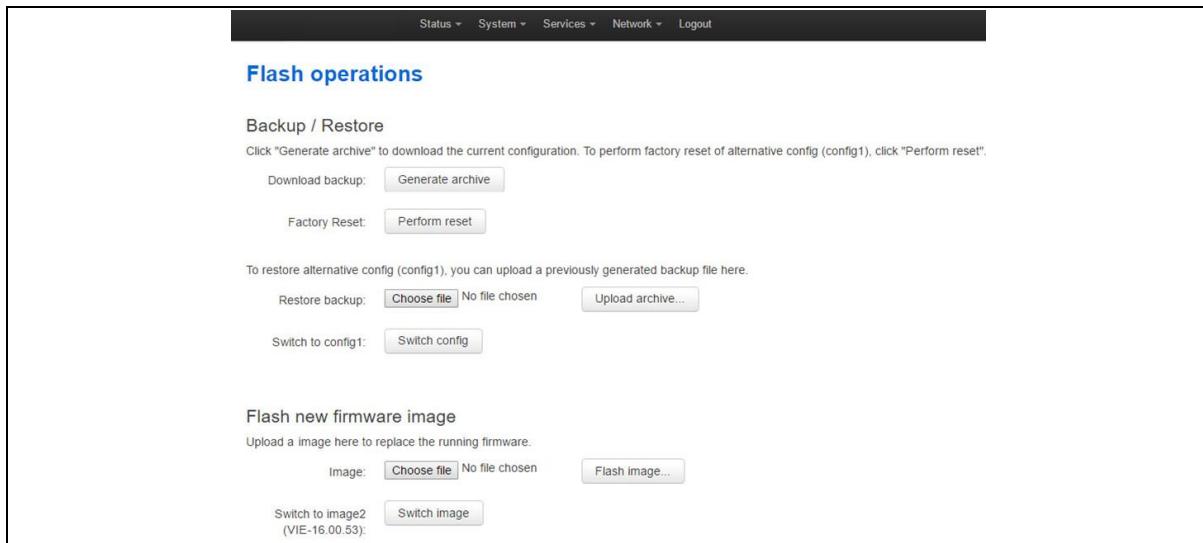


Figure 37: The flash operations page

In the Backup/Restore section, select **Generate Archive**.

9.8.2 Exporting a configuration file using the web interface for software version 72.002 and above

The current running configuration file may be exported using the web interface.

In the top menu, select **System > Flash Operations**. The Flash operations page appears.

Flash Operations			
Contents	Current Operational Status	After Reboot	Operations
Image 1 LIS-15.00.72.002rc1	active	will be active	
Image 2 LIS-15.00.72.002rc1		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	<input type="button" value="Flash image"/>
Config 1 Configuration (19013 bytes)	active	will be active	
Config 2 Configuration (19037 bytes)		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	<input type="button" value="Upload new..."/>
Factory Config Configuration (12203 bytes)		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	

Reboot using Active Configuration
Reboot the device. The image and config that will be used are shown in green above.

Factory Reset
Here you can reset the router to factory configuration.
On reboot, the factory defaults will be running and you will be able to make changes to the configuration.
A choice of config 1 or config 2 is given in case you have a preference for which config to use (and which to preserve). If you have no preference then either can be used.

Figure 38: The flash operations page

In the **Flash Operation** section, click the configuration file in the Contents column to download it.

9.8.3 Exporting a configuration file using UCI

You can view any configuration file segment using UCI.

To export the running configuration file, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export
```

To export the factory configuration file, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci -c /etc/factconf/ export
```

To export config1 or config2 configuration file, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci -c /etc/config1/ export
root@GW_router:~# uci -c /etc/config2/ export
```

9.9 Importing a configuration file

If you have software versions prior to 72.002, to export a configuration file using the web interface, go to section 7.9.1

If you have software version 72.002 or above, export a configuration file using the web interface go to section 7.9.2

To export a configuration file using CLI, for any software version, go to section 7.9.3

9.9.1 Importing a configuration file using the web interface for software versions pre- 72.002

You can import a configuration file to the alternate configuration segment using the web interface. This will automatically reboot the router into this configuration file.

In the top menu, select **System > Backup/Flash Firmware**. The Flash operations page appears.

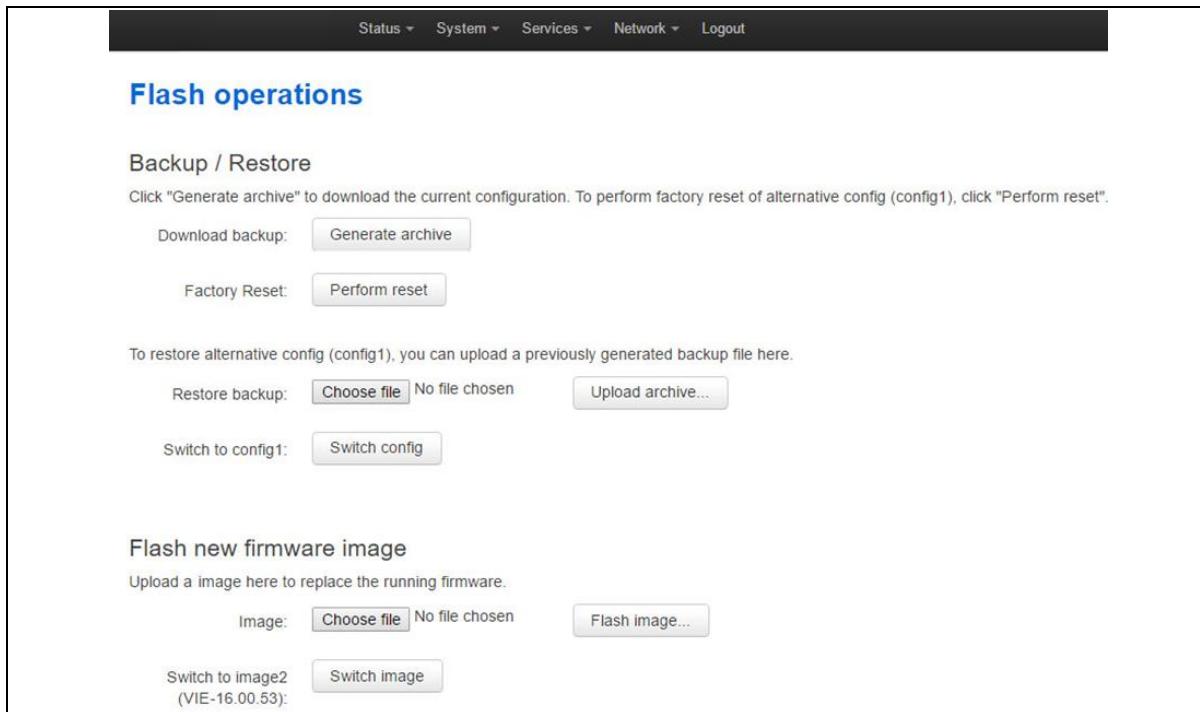


Figure 39: The flash operations page

Under Backup/Restore, choose **Restore Backup: Choose file**. Select the appropriate file and then click **Upload archive**.

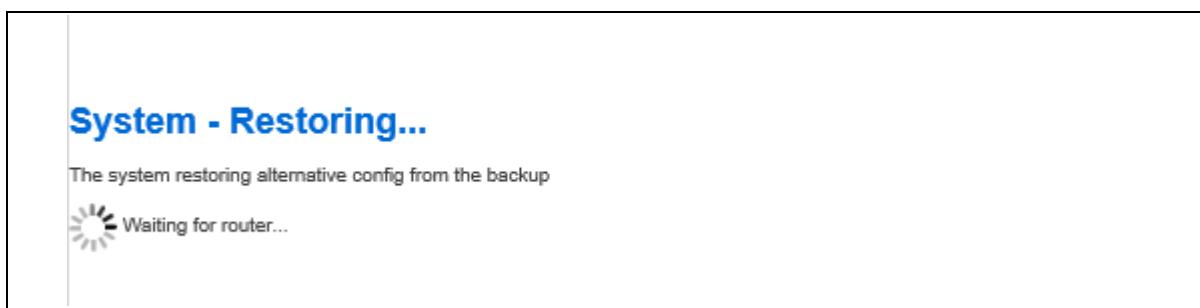


Figure 40: The system – restoring...page

When the 'waiting for router' icon disappears, the upgrade is complete, and the login homepage appears.

9.9.2 Importing a configuration file using the web interface for software version 72.002 and above

You can import a configuration file to the alternate configuration segment using the web interface.

In the top menu, select **System > Flash Operations**. The Flash operations page appears.

Contents	Current Operational Status	After Reboot	Operations
Image 1 LIS-15.00.72.002rc1	active	will be active	
Image 2 LIS-15.00.72.002rc1		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	<input type="button" value="Flash image..."/>
Config 1 Configuration (19013 bytes)	active	will be active	
Config 2 Configuration (19037 bytes)		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	<input type="button" value="Upload new..."/>
Factory Config Configuration (12203 bytes)		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	

Reboot using Active Configuration
Reboot the device. The image and config that will be used are shown in green above.

Factory Reset
Here you can reset the router to factory configuration.
On reboot, the factory defaults will be running and you will be able to make changes to the configuration.
A choice of config 1 or config 2 is given in case you have a preference for which config to use (and which to preserve). If you have no preference then either can be used.

Figure 41: The flash operations page

In the Operations column, click **Upload new**. Select the appropriate file.

Contents	Current Operational Status	After Reboot	Operations
Image 1 LIS-15.00.72.002rc1		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	<input type="button" value="Flash image..."/>
Image 2 LIS-15.00.72.002rc1	active	will be active	
Config 1 Configuration (19013 bytes)	active	will be active	
Config 2 Configuration (19619 bytes)		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	<input type="button" value="Upload new..."/>
Factory Config Configuration (12203 bytes)		<input type="button" value="Make active (after reboot)"/>	

Reboot using Active Configuration
Reboot the device. The image and config that will be used are shown in green above.

Factory Reset
Here you can reset the router to factory configuration.
On reboot, the factory defaults will be running and you will be able to make changes to the configuration.
A choice of config 1 or config 2 is given in case you have a preference for which config to use (and which to preserve). If you have no preference then either can be used.

Figure 42: The flash operations succeed upload configuration page

If you select 'Flash image and do not reboot', the router will only run this configuration if you click **OK** to return to the Flash Operations page. There you can manually select

Made Active (after reboot). Then click **Reboot Now** in the 'Reboot using Active Configuration' section.

9.9.3 Importing a configuration file using UCI

You can import a configuration file to any file segment using UCI.

To import to config1, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci -c /etc/config1/ import
<paste in config file>
<CTRL-D>
```

Note: it is very important that the config file is in the correct format otherwise it will not import correctly.

10 Using the Command Line Interface

This chapter explains how to view SATEL routers' log files and edit configuration files using a Command Line Interface (CLI) and the Unified Configuration Interface (UCI) system.

10.1 Overview of some common commands

SATEL routers' system has an SSH server typically running on port 22.

The factconf default password for the root user is **admin**.

To change the factconf default password, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# uci set system.main.password="*****"
root@GW_router:/# uci commit system
```

To reboot the system, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# reboot
```

The system provides a Unix-like command line. Common Unix commands are available such as ls, cd, cat, top, grep, tail, head, more and less.

Typical pipe and redirect operators are also available, such as: >, >>, <, |

The system log can be viewed using any of the following commands:

```
root@GW_router:/# logread

root@GW_router:/# logread | tail

root@GW_router:/# logread -f
```

These commands will show the full log, end of the log (tail) and continuously (-f). Enter **Ctrl-C** to stop the continuous output from logread -f.

To view and edit configuration files, the system uses the Unified Configuration Interface (UCI) which is described further on in this chapter. This is the preferred method of editing configuration files. However, you can also view and edit these files using some of the standard Unix tools.

For example, to view a text or configuration file in the system, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# cat /etc/passwd
```

The command output information shows the following, or similar output.

```
root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/ash
daemon:*:1:1:daemon:/var:/bin/false
ftp:*:55:55:ftp:/home/ftp:/bin/false
sftp:*:56:56:sftp:/var:/usr/lib/sftp-server
network:*:101:101:network:/var:/bin/false
nobody:*:65534:65534:nobody:/var:/bin/false
```

To view files in the current folder, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# ls

bin      etc      lib      opt      sbin      usr
bkrepos  home    linuxrc  proc     sys       var
dev      init    mnt     root     tmp       www
```

For more details add the -l argument:

```
root@GW_router:/# ls -l

drwxrwxr-x  2 root      root   642 Jul 16  2012 bin
drwxr-xr-x  5 root      root  1020 Jul  4 01:27 dev
drwxrwxr-x  1 root      root   0 Jul  3 18:41 etc
drwxr-xr-x  1 root      root   0 Jul  9 2012 lib
drwxr-xr-x  2 root      root   3 Jul 16  2012 mnt
drwxr-xr-x  7 root      root   0 Jan  1 1970 overlay
dr-xr-xr-x  58 root     root   0 Jan  1 1970 proc
drwxr-xr-x  16 root     root  223 Jul 16  2012 rom
drwxr-xr-x  1 root      root   0 Jul  3 22:53 root
drwxrwxr-x  2 root      root  612 Jul 16  2012 sbin
drwxr-xr-x  11 root     root   0 Jan  1 1970 sys
drwxrwxrwt  10 root     root  300 Jul  4 01:27 tmp
drwxr-xr-x  1 root      root   0 Jul  3 11:37 usr
lrwxrwxrwx  1 root      root   4 Jul 16  2012 var -> /tmp
drwxr-xr-x  4 root      root  67 Jul 16  2012 www
```

To change the current folder, enter **cd** followed by the desired path:

```
root@GW_router:/# cd /etc/config1
root@GW_router:/etc/config1#
```

Note: if the specified directory is actually a link to a directory, the real directory will be shown in the prompt.

To view scheduled jobs, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# crontab -l

0 * * * * slaupload 00FF5FF92752 TFTP 1 172.16.250.100 69
```

To view currently running processes, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# ps

  PID Uid      VmSize Stat Command
    1 root      356 S   init
    2 root      DW   [keventd]
    3 root      RWN [ksoftirqd_CPU0]
    4 root      SW   [kswapd]
    5 root      SW   [bdflush]
    6 root      SW   [kupdated]
    8 root      SW   [mtdblockd]
   89 root      344 S   logger -s -p 6 -t
   92 root      356 S   init
   93 root      348 S   syslogd -C 16
   94 root      300 S   klogd
  424 root      320 S   wifi up
  549 root      364 S   httpd -p 80 -h /www -r GW_router
  563 root      336 S   crond -c /etc/crontabs
 6712 root      392 S   /usr/sbin/dropbear
 6824 root      588 S   /usr/sbin/dropbear
 7296 root      444 S   -ash
 374 root      344 R   ps ax
 375 root      400 S   /bin/sh /sbin/hotplug button
 384 root      396 R   /bin/sh /sbin/hotplug button
 385 root      RW   [keventd]
```

To search for a process, enter: pgrep -fl '<process name or part of name>':

```
root@GW_router:/# pgrep -fl 'wifi'
424 root      320 S    wifi up
```

To kill a process, enter the PID:

```
root@GW_router:~# kill 424
```

10.2 Using Unified Configuration Interface (UCI)

The system uses Unified Configuration Interface (UCI) for central configuration management. Most common and useful configuration settings can be accessed and configured using the UCI system.

UCI consists of a Command Line Utility (CLI), the files containing the actual configuration data, and scripts that take the configuration data and apply it to the proper parts of the system, such as the networking interfaces. Entering the command 'uci' on its own will display the list of valid arguments for the command and their format.

```
root@GW_router:/lib/config# uci
```

Usage: uci [<options>] <command> [<arguments>]

Commands:

```
export      [<config>]
import     [<config>]
changes    [<config>]
commit     [<config>]
add        <config> <section-type>
add_list   <config>.<section>.<option>=<string>
show       [<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]]
get        <config>.<section>[.<option>]
set        <config>.<section>[.<option>]=<value>
delete    <config>[.<section>[.<option>]]
rename    <config>.<section>[.<option>]=<name>
revert    <config>[.<section>[.<option>]]
Options:
-c <path>  set the search path for config files (default: /etc/config)
-d <str>    set the delimiter for list values in uci show
-f <file>   use <file> as input instead of stdin
```

```

-m      when importing, merge data into an existing package
-n      name unnamed sections on export (default)
-N      don't name unnamed sections
-p <path> add a search path for config change files
-P <path> add a search path for config change files and use as default
-q      quiet mode (don't print error messages)
-s      force strict mode (stop on parser errors, default)

-S      disable strict mode
-X      do not use extended syntax on 'show'

```

The table below describes commands for the UCI command line and some further examples of how to use this utility.

Command	Target	Description
commit	[<config>]	Writes changes of the given configuration file, or if none is given, all configuration files, to the filesystem. All "uci set", "uci add", "uci rename" and "uci delete" commands are staged into a temporary location and written to flash at once with "uci commit". This is not needed after editing configuration files with a text editor, but for scripts, GUIs and other programs working directly with UCI files.
export	[<config>]	Exports the configuration in a UCI syntax and does validation.
import	[<config>]	Imports configuration files in UCI syntax.
changes	[<config>]	Lists staged changes to the given configuration file or if none given, all configuration files.
add	<config> <section-type>	Adds an anonymous section of type section-type to the given configuration.
add_list	<config>.<section>.<option>=<string>	Adds the given string to an existing list option.
show	[<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]]	Shows the given option, section or configuration in compressed notation.
get	<config>.<section>[.<option>]	Gets the value of the given option or the type of the given section.
set	<config>.<section>[.<option>]=<value>	Sets the value of the given option, or add a new section with the type set to the given value.
delete	<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]	Deletes the given section or option.
rename	<config>.<section>[.<option>]=<name>	Renames the given option or section to the given name.
revert	<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]	Deletes staged changes to the given option, section or configuration file.

Table 14: Common commands, target and their descriptions

Note: all operations do not act directly on the configuration files. A commit command is required after you have finished your configuration.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci commit
```

10.2.1 Using uci commit to avoid router reboot

After changing the port, uhttpd listens on from 80 to 8080 in the file /etc/config/uhttpd; save it, then enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci commit uhttpd
```

Then enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# /etc/init.d/uhttpd restart
```

For this example, the router does not need to reboot as the changes take effect when the specified process is restarted.

10.2.2 Export a configuration

Using the uci export command it is possible to view the entire configuration of the router or a specific package. Using this method to view configurations does not show comments that are present in the configuration file:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export httpd

package 'httpd'
config 'httpd'
option 'port' '80'
option 'home' '/www'
```

10.2.3 Show a configuration tree

The configuration tree format displays the full path to each option. This path can then be used to edit a specific option using the `uci set` command.

To show the configuration ‘tree’ for a given config, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# uci show network

network.loopback=interface
network.loopback.ifname=lo
network.loopback.proto=static
network.loopback.ipaddr=127.0.0.1
network.loopback.netmask=255.0.0.0
```

```

network.lan=interface
network.lan.ifname=eth0
network.lan.proto=dhcp
network.wan=interface
network.wan.username=foo
network.wan.password=bar
network.wan.proto=3g
network.wan.device=/dev/ttyACM0
network.wan.service=umts
network.wan.auto=0
network.wan.apn=arkessa.com
network.@va_switch[0]=va_switch
network.@va_switch[0].eth0=A B C
network.@va_switch[0].eth1=D

```

It is also possible to display a limited subset of a configuration:

```

root@GW_router:/# uci show network.wan
network.wan=interface
network.wan.username=foo
network.wan.password=bar
network.wan.proto=3g
network.wan.device=/dev/ttyACM0
network.wan.service=umts
network.wan.auto=0
network.wan.apn=hs.vodafone.ie

```

10.2.4 Display just the value of an option

To display a specific value of an individual option within a package, enter:

```

root@GW_router:~# uci get httpd.@httpd[0].port
80
root@GW_router:~#

```

10.2.5 High level image commands

To show the image running currently, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# vacmd show current image
```

To set the image to run on next reboot, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# vacmd set next image [image1|image2|altimage]
root@GW_router:~# reboot
```

10.2.6 Format of multiple rules

When there are multiple rules next to each other, UCI uses array-like references for them. For example, if there are 8 NTP servers, UCI will let you reference their sections as `timeserver.@timeserver[0]` for the first section; or `timeserver.@timeserver[7]` for the last section.

You can also use negative indexes, such as `timeserver.@timeserver[-1]` '-1' means the last one, and '-2' means the second-to-last one. This is useful when appending new rules to the end of a list.

```
root@GW_router:/# uci show va_eventd
va_eventd.main=va_eventd
va_eventd.main.enabled=yes
va_eventd.main.event_queue_file=/tmp/event_buffer
va_eventd.main.event_queue_size=128K
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0]=conn_tester
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].name=Pinger
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].type=ping
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_dest_addr=192.168.250.100
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_success_duration_sec=5
va_eventd.@target[0]=target
va_eventd.@target[0].name=MonitorSyslog
va_eventd.@target[0].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@target[0].type=syslog
va_eventd.@target[0].target_addr=192.168.250.100
va_eventd.@target[0].conn_tester=Pinger
va_eventd.@target[0].suppress_duplicate_forwardings=no
va_eventd.@forwarding[0]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].className=etherenet
```

```

va_eventd.@forwarding[0].target=MonitorSyslog
va_eventd.@forwarding[1]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[1].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[1].className=auth
va_eventd.@forwarding[1].target=MonitorSyslog
va_eventd.@forwarding[2]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[2].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[2].className=adsl
va_eventd.@forwarding[2].target=MonitorSyslog
va_eventd.@forwarding[3]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].className=ppp
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].target=MonitorSyslog

```

10.3 Configuration files

The table below lists common package configuration files that can be edited using uci commands. Other configuration files may also be present depending on the specific options available on the SATEL router.

File	Description
Management	
/etc/config/autoload	Boot up Activation behaviour (typically used in factconf)
/etc/config/httpclient	Activator addresses and urls
/etc/config/monitor	Monitor details
Basic	
/etc/config/dropbear	SSH server options
/etc/config/dhcp	Dnsmasq configuration and DHCP settings
/etc/config/firewall	NAT, packet filter, port forwarding, etc.
/etc/config/network	Switch, interface, L2TP and route configuration
/etc/config/system	Misc. system settings including syslog
Other	
/etc/config/snmpd	SNMPd settings
/etc/config/uhttpd	Web server options (uHTTPd)
/etc/config/strongswan	IPSec settings

10.4 Configuration file syntax

The configuration files usually consist of one or more config statements, so-called sections with one or more option statements defining the actual values.

Below is an example of a simple configuration file.

```
package 'example'

config 'example' 'test'
    option  'string'      'some value'
    option  'boolean'     '1'
    list    'collection'  'first item'
    list    'collection'  'second item'
```

The config 'example' 'test' statement defines the start of a section with the type example and the name test. There can also be so-called anonymous sections with only a type, but no name identifier. The type is important for the processing programs to decide how to treat the enclosed options.

The option 'string' 'some value' and option 'boolean' '1' lines define simple values within the section.

Note: there are no syntactical differences between text and boolean options. Per convention, boolean options may have one of the values '0', 'no', 'off' or 'false' to specify a false value or '1', 'yes', 'on' or 'true' to specify a true value.

In the lines starting with a list keyword, an option with multiple values is defined. All list statements that share the same name collection in our example will be combined into a single list of values with the same order as in the configuration file.

The indentation of the option and list statements is a convention to improve the readability of the configuration file but it is not syntactically required.

Usually you do not need to enclose identifiers or values in quotes. Quotes are only required if the enclosed value contains spaces or tabs. Also it is legal to use double-quotes instead of single-quotes when typing configuration options.

All of the examples below are valid syntax.

```
option example value
option 'example' value
option example "value"
option "example"   'value'
option   'example' "value"
```

In contrast, the following examples are not valid syntax.

```
option 'example" "value'
```

Quotes are unbalanced.

```
option example some value with space
```

Missing quotes around the value.

It is important to note that identifiers and config file names may only contain the characters a-z, A-Z, 0-9 and _. However, option values may contain any character, as long they are properly quoted.

11 Management configuration settings

This chapter contains the configuration sections and parameters required to manage and monitor your device using Activator and Monitor.

11.1 Activator

Activator is a SATEL proprietary provisioning system, where specific router configurations and firmware can be stored to allow central management and provisioning. Activator has two distinct roles in provisioning firmware and configuration files to a router.

- Autoload activation of firmware and configuration files on router boot up:
 - Autoload is generally used for router installation. In this scenario the router will initiate the request for firmware and configuration files when it boots up. The router is installed with a factory config that will allow it to contact Activator. The autoload feature controls the behaviour of the router in requesting firmware and configuration files; this includes when to start the Activation process and the specific files requested. The HTTP Client (uhttpd) contains information about the Activator server and the protocol used for activation.
- Deployment of firmware to routers after installation:
 - In this scenario, Activator initiates the process. This process, known as Active Updates, allows for central automatic deployment of firmware and configuration files. It is used when configuration or firmware changes need to be pushed to live routers.

11.2 Monitor

Monitor is a SATEL proprietary tool, based on SNMP protocol, to monitor wide networks of deployed routers. The router will be configured to send information to Monitor, which is then stored and viewed centrally via the Monitor application. This includes features such as traffic light availability status, syslog and SLA monitoring.

11.3 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
autoload	main
httpclient	default
management_users	user

11.4 Autoload: boot up activation

Autoload configurations specify how the device should behave with respect to activation when it boots up. Autoload entries contain information about the specific files to be

downloaded and the destination for the downloaded file. Standard autoload entry configurations to download are:

- A firmware file (##.img)
- A configuration file (##.ini)
- A .vas file (##.vas). This file signals the end of the autolaod sequence to Activator

Activator identifies the device using the serial number of the router. ## syntax is used to denote the serial number of the router when requesting a file. The requested files are written to the alternate image or config segment.

You can change the settings either directly in the configuration file or via appropriate UCI set commands. It is normal procedure for autoload to be enabled in the router's factory settings and disabled in running configurations (config 1 and 2).

Autoload may already have been set at factory config level. If you wish to enable autoload services, proceed through the following steps.

11.5 Autoload packages

Package	Sections
autoload	main

11.5.1 Create a configuration file

In the top menu, select **Services ->Autoload**. The Autoload page has two sections: Basic Settings and Entries. Click **Add** to access configuration settings for each section.

Autoload
Configuration of the VA Autoload Service.

Basic Settings
Basic settings should be checked according to your network.

Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Start Timer	10	
Retry Timer	30	
Boot Using Config	altconfig	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Boot Using Image	altimage	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

Entries

Configured	Segment Name	Remote Filename	
<i>Download destination</i> Use \$\$ for the serial number.			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	altconfig	\$\$.ini	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	altimage	\$\$ img	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	config1	\$\$ vas	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

Figure 43: The autoload settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Basic settings					
Web: Enabled UCI: autoload.main.enabled Opt: Enabled	Enables activation at system boot. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Start Timer UCI: autoload.main.StartTimer Opt: StartTimer	Defines how long to wait after the boot up completes before starting activation. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>10</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-300 secs</td></tr> </table>	10		Range	0-300 secs
10					
Range	0-300 secs				
Web: Retry Timer UCI: autoload.main.RetryTimer Opt: RetryTimer	Defines how many seconds to wait between retries if a download of a particular autoload entry fails. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>30</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-300 secs</td></tr> </table>	30		Range	0-300 secs
30					
Range	0-300 secs				
Web: N/A UCI: autoload.main.NumberOfRetries Opt: Numberofretries	Defines how many retries to attempt before failing the overall activation sequence, backing off and trying the whole activation sequence again. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>5</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	5		Range	
5					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: autoload.main.BackoffTimer Opt: Backofftimer	Defines how many minutes to back off for if a download and all retries fail. After the backoff period, the entire autoload sequence will start again. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>15</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	15		Range	
15					
Range					

Web: Boot Using Config UCI: autoload.main.BootUsingConfig Opt: BootUsingConfig	Specifies which configuration to boot up with after the activation sequence. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Altconfig</td><td>Alternative configuration</td></tr> <tr><td>Config1</td><td>Configuration 1</td></tr> <tr><td>Config2</td><td>Configuration 2</td></tr> <tr><td>Factconf</td><td>Factory configuration</td></tr> </table>	Altconfig	Alternative configuration	Config1	Configuration 1	Config2	Configuration 2	Factconf	Factory configuration
Altconfig	Alternative configuration								
Config1	Configuration 1								
Config2	Configuration 2								
Factconf	Factory configuration								
Web: Boot Using Image UCI: autoload.main.BootUsingImage Opt: BootUsingImage	Specifies which image to boot up with after the activation sequence completes successfully. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Altimage</td><td>Alternative image</td></tr> <tr><td>Image 1</td><td>image 1</td></tr> <tr><td>Image 2</td><td>image 2</td></tr> </table>	Altimage	Alternative image	Image 1	image 1	Image 2	image 2		
Altimage	Alternative image								
Image 1	image 1								
Image 2	image 2								
Entries									
Web: Configured UCI: autoload.@entry[x].Configured Opt: Configured	Enables the autoload sequence to process this entry. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.								
0	Disabled.								
Web: Segment Name UCI: autoload.@entry[x].SegmentName Opt: SegmentName	Defines where the downloaded file should be stored: (config1 config2 altconfig image1 image2 altimage). Typically only altconfig and altimage are used.								
Web: RemoteFilename UCI: autoload.@entry[x].RemoteFilename Opt: RemoteFilename	Defines the name of the file to be downloaded from Activator. <table border="1"> <tr><td>\$.vas</td><td>Notifies activator sequence is complete.</td></tr> <tr><td>\$.ini</td><td>Request configuration</td></tr> <tr><td>\$.img</td><td>Request firmware</td></tr> </table> <p>Note: \$.vas should always be requested last.</p>	\$.vas	Notifies activator sequence is complete.	\$.ini	Request configuration	\$.img	Request firmware		
\$.vas	Notifies activator sequence is complete.								
\$.ini	Request configuration								
\$.img	Request firmware								

Table 15: Information table for autoload

11.6 Autoload using UCI

```

root@GW_router:/# uci show autoload
autoload.main=core
autoload.main.Enabled=yes
autoload.main.StartTimer=10
autoload.main.RetryTimer=30
autoload.main.NumberOfRetries=5
autoload.main.BackoffTimer=15
autoload.main.BootUsingConfig=altconfig
autoload.main.BootUsingImage=altimage
autoload.@entry[0]=entry
autoload.@entry[0].Configured=yes
autoload.@entry[0].SegmentName=altconfig
autoload.@entry[0].RemoteFilename=$$.ini
autoload.@entry[1]=entry
autoload.@entry[1].Configured=yes
autoload.@entry[1].SegmentName=altimage
autoload.@entry[1].RemoteFilename=$$.img
autoload.@entry[2]=entry
autoload.@entry[2].Configured=yes
autoload.@entry[2].SegmentName=config1
autoload.@entry[2].RemoteFilename=$$.vas
Autoload using package options
root@GW_router:/# uci export autoload
package 'autoload'

config 'core' 'main'
    option 'Enabled' "yes"
    option 'StartTimer' "10"
    option 'RetryTimer' "30"
    option 'NumberOfRetries' "5"
    option 'BackoffTimer' "15"
    option 'BootUsingConfig' "altconfig"
    option 'BootUsingImage' "altimage"

config 'entry'

```

```

option 'Configured' "yes"
option 'SegmentName' "altconfig"
option 'RemoteFilename' "\$\$.ini"

config 'entry'
    option 'Configured' "yes"
    option 'SegmentName' "altimage"
    option 'RemoteFilename' "\$\$.img"

config 'entry'
    option 'Configured' "yes"
    option 'SegmentName' "config1"
    option 'RemoteFilename' "\$\$.vas"

```

11.7 HTTP Client: configuring activation using the web interface

This section contains the settings for the HTTP Client used during activation and active updates of the device.

The httpclient core section configures the basic functionality of the module used for retrieving files from Activator during the activation process.

11.7.1 HTTP Client configuraton packages

Package	Sections
Httpclient	default

11.7.2 Web configuration

To configure HTTP Client for Activator, in the top menu, click **Services -> HTTP Client**. The HTTP Client page has two sections: Basic Settings and Advanced Settings.

Figure 44: The HTTP client page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Basic settings					
Web: Enabled UCI: httpclient.default.enabled Opt: Enabled	Enables the HTTP client. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Server IP Address UCI: httpclient.default.Fileserver Opt: list Fileservers	Specifies the address of Activator that uses http port 80. This can be an IP address or FQDN. The syntax should be x.x.x.x:80 or FQDN:80. Multiple servers should be separated by a space using UCI.				
Web: Secure Server IP Address UCI: httpclient.default.SecureFileServer Opt: list SecureFileServer	Specifies the address of Secure Activator that uses port 443. This can be an IP address or FQDN. The syntax should be x.x.x.x:443 or FQDN:443. Multiple servers should be separated by a space using UCI.				
Web: Secure Download UCI: httpclient.default.SecureDownload Opt: SecureDownload	Enables Secure Download (port 443). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Advanced settings					
Web: ActivatorDownloadPath UCI: httpclient.default.ActivatorDownloadPath Opt: ActivatorDownloadPath	Specifies the URL on Activator to which the client should send requests. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>/Activator/Sessionless/Httpserver.asp</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/Activator/Sessionless/Httpserver.asp		Range	
/Activator/Sessionless/Httpserver.asp					
Range					

Web: Check Server Certificate UCI: httpclient.default.ValidateServerCertificate Enabled Opt: ValidateServerCertificateEnabled	Checks for the certificates presence and validity. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr></table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Present Client Certificate to Server UCI: httpclient.default. PresentCertificateEnabled Opt: PresentCertificateEnabled	Specifies if the client presents its certificate to the server to identify itself. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr></table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: CertificateFile Format UCI: httpclient.default.CertificateFormat Opt: CertificateFormat	Specifies the value the client expects to see in the specified field in the server certificate. <table border="1"><tr><td>PEM</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>DER</td><td></td></tr></table>	PEM		DER	
PEM					
DER					
Web: Certificate File Path UCI: httpclient.default.CertificateFile Opt: CertificateFile	Defines the directory/location of the certificate. <table border="1"><tr><td>/etc/httpclient.crt</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	/etc/httpclient.crt		Range	
/etc/httpclient.crt					
Range					
Web: Certificate Key File Path UCI: httpclient.default.CertificateKey Opt: CertificateKey	Specifies the directory/location of the certificate key. <table border="1"><tr><td>/etc/httpclient.key</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	/etc/httpclient.key		Range	
/etc/httpclient.key					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: ValidateServerCertificateFieldEnabled Opt: ValidateServerCertificate	Defines the field in the server certificate that the client should check. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr></table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: N/A UCI: httpclient.default.ActivatorChunkyDownloadPath Opt: ActivatorChunkyDownloadPath	Enables partial download activations and active updates. The default value is httpclient.default.ActivatorChunkyDownloadPath=/activator/partial/download The url (on activator) to which the client should send requests for chunky image download.				
Web: N/A UCI: httpclient.default.ChunkSize Opt: ChunkSize	Specifies the size of each packet payload <table border="1"><tr><td>100k</td><td>100K Bytes</td></tr><tr><td>1-infinite</td><td>Available values</td></tr></table>	100k	100K Bytes	1-infinite	Available values
100k	100K Bytes				
1-infinite	Available values				
Web: N/A UCI: httpclient.default.RateLimit Opt: RateLimit	Throttle activation/active updates traffic received by device to specified limit <table border="1"><tr><td>None</td><td>By default there is no limit</td></tr><tr><td>1-infinite</td><td>Available values in kbps</td></tr></table>	None	By default there is no limit	1-infinite	Available values in kbps
None	By default there is no limit				
1-infinite	Available values in kbps				
Web: N/A UCI: httpclient.default.CAFile Opt: CAFile	Defines path to the certificate authority file stored on the router				
Web: N/A UCI: httpclient.default.IgnoreServerCertificateStatus Opt: IgnoreServerCertificateStatus	Defines whether to skip the status check on the server certificate. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr></table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				

Table 16: Information table for HTTP client

11.8 Httpclient: Activator configuration using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show httpclient
httpclient.default=core
httpclient.default.Enabled=yes
httpclient.default.FileServer=10.1.83.36:80 10.1.83.37:80
```

```

httpClient.default.SecureFileServer=10.1.83.36:443 10.1.83.37:443
httpClient.default.ActivatorDownloadPath=/Activator/Sessionless/Httpserver.
asp
httpClient.default.SecureDownload=no
httpClient.default.PresentCertificateEnabled=no
httpClient.default.ValidateServerCertificateEnabled=no
httpClient.default.CertificateFile=/etc/httpclient.crt
httpClient.default.CertificateFormat=PEM
httpClient.default.CertificateKey=/etc/httpclient.key
httpClient.default.ActivatorChunkyDownloadPath=/activator/partial/download
httpClient.default.ChunkSize=100k
httpClient.default.RateLimit=2
httpClient.default.CAFile='\''
httpClient.default.IgnoreServerCertificateStatus=0

```

11.9 Httpclient: Activator configuration using package options

```

root@GW_router:~# uci export httpclient
package httpclient

config core 'default'
    option Enabled 'yes'
    list FileServer '1.1.1.1:80'
    list FileServer '1.1.1.2:80'
    listSecureFileServer '1.1.1.1:443'
    list SecureFileServer '1.1.1.2:443'
    option ActivatorDownloadPath '/Activator/Sessionless/Httpserver.asp'
    option SecureDownload 'no'
    option PresentCertificateEnabled 'no'
    option ValidateServerCertificateEnabled 'no'
    option CertificateFile '/etc/httpclient.crt'
    option CertificateFormat 'PEM'
    option CertificateKey '/etc/httpclient.key'
    option ActivatorChunkyDownloadPath '/activator/partial/download'
    option ChunkSize '100k'
    option RateLimit '2'
    option CAFile '\''

```

```
option IgnoreServerCertificateStatus '0'
```

11.10 User management using UCI

User management is not currently available using the web interface. You can configure the feature using UCI or Activator.

11.10.1 User management packages

Package	Sections
management_users	Users

11.10.2 Configuring user management

You can create different users on the system by defining them in the user management configuration file. This gives users access to different services.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
General settings					
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].enabled Opt: enable	Enables/creates the user. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].username Opt: username	Specifies the user's username.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].password Opt: password	Specifies the user's password. When entering the user password enter in plain text using the password option. After reboot the password is displayed encrypted via the CLI using the hashpassword option. UCI: management_users.@user[x].hashpassword Opt: hashpassword. Note: a SRP user password will be displayed using the srphash option				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].webuser Opt: webuser	Specifies web access permissions for the user. Note: webuser will only work if linuxuser is set to Enabled. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].chapuser Opt: chapuser	Specifies CHAP access permissions for the PPP connection. Note: chapuser will only work if linux user is set to Enabled. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].papuser Opt: papuser	Specifies PAP access permissions for the PPP connection. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].srpuser Opt: srpuser	Specifies SRP access permissions for the PPP connection. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].smsuser Opt: smsuser	Specifies SMS access permissions for the user. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Web: n/a UCI: linuxuser Opt: linuxuser	Specifies linuxuser access permissions for the user. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: List allowed_pages Opt: list allowed_pages	Specifies which pages the user can view. Multiple pages should be entered using a space to separate if using UCI.				

Table 17: Information table for config user commands**Note:**

- webuser will only work if linuxuser is set to **yes**
- chapuser will only work if linuxuser is set to **no**

When a new user is created on the system and given web access, you will no longer be able to login to the router web interface with the default root user details. The user must use their new user login details.

11.11 Configuring the management user password using UCI

The user password is displayed encrypted via the CLI using the hashpassword option.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show management_users
management_users.@user[0].username=test
management_users.@user[0].hashpassword=$1$XVzDHHPQ$SKK4geFonctihuffMjS4U0
```

If you are changing the password via the UCI, enter the new password in plain text using the password option.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci set management_users.@user[0].username=newpassword
root@GW_router:~# uci commit
```

The new password will take effect after reboot and will now be displayed in encrypted format through the hashpassword option.

11.12 Configuring management user password using package options

The root password is displayed encrypted via CLI using the hashpassword option.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export management_users
package management_users

config user
    option hashpassword '$1$wRYYiJOz$EeHN.GQcxXhRgNPVbqxVw'
```

If you are changing the password using UCI, enter the new password in plain text using the password option.

```
package management_users

config user
    option hashpassword '$1$wRYYiJOz$EeHN.GQcxXhRgNPVbqxVw'
    option password 'newpassword'
```

The new password will take effect after reboot and will now be displayed in encrypted format via the hashpassword option.

11.13 User management using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show management_users
management_users.@user[0]=user
management_users.@user[0].enabled=1
management_users.@user[0].username=test
management_users.@user[0].hashpassword=$1$XVzDHHPQ$SKK4geFonctihuffMjS4U0
management_users.@user[0].webuser=1
management_users.@user[0].linuxuser=1
management_users.@user[0].papuser=0
management_users.@user[0].chapuser=0
management_users.@user[0].srpuser=0
management_users.@user[0].smsuser=0
```

11.14 User management using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export management_users

package management_users
config user
    option enabled '1'
    option username 'test'
    option hashpassword '$1$XVzDHHPQ$SKK4geFonctihuffMjS4U0'
    option webuser '1'
    option linuxuser '1'
    option papuser '0'
    option chapuser '0'
    option srpuser '0'
    option smsuser '0'
```

11.15 Configuring user access to specific web pages

To specify particular pages a user can view, add the list allowed_pages. Examples are:

```
listallowed_pages '/admin/status'
```

The user can view admin status page only.

```
listallowed_pages 'admin/system/flashops'
```

The user can view flash operation page only.

To specify monitor widgets only, enter:

```
listallowed_pages 'monitor/<widgetname>'
```

Example widget names are: dhcp, arp, 3gstats, interfaces, memory, multiwan, network, openvpn, routes, system, ipsec, dmvpn, tservd.

12 Configuring an Ethernet interface

This section describes how to configure an Ethernet interface including configuring the interface as a DHCP server, adding the interface to a firewall zone, mapping the physical switch ports and defining loopback interface.

12.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
network	interface
	route
	va_switch
	alias
	zone
firewall	
dhcp	dhcp

12.2 Configuring an Ethernet interface using the web interface

To create and edit interfaces via the web interface, in the top menu, click **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces overview page appears.

Figure 45: The interfaces overview page

There are three sections in the Interfaces page.

Section	Description
Interface Overview	Shows existing interfaces and their status. You can create new, and edit existing interfaces here.
Port Map	In this section you can map device ports to Ethernet interfaces. Ports are marked with capital letters starting with 'A'. Type in space-separated port character in the port map fields.
ATM Bridges	ATM bridges expose encapsulated Ethernet in AAL5 connections as virtual Linux network interfaces, which can be used in conjunction with DHCP or PPP to dial into the provider network.

12.2.1 Interface overview: editing an existing interface

To edit an existing interface, from the interface tabs at the top of the page, select the interface you wish to configure. Alternatively, click **Edit** in the interface's row.

12.2.2 Interface overview: creating a new interface

To create a new interface, in the Interface Overview section, click **Add new interface**. The Create Interface page appears.

Figure 46: The create interface page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description																										
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network.<if name> Opt: config interface	Assigns a logical name to the interface. The network interface section will assign this name (<if name>). Type the name of the new interface. Allowed characters are A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _																										
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.<if name>.proto Opt: proto	Specifies what protocol the interface will operate on. Select Static . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr><td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr><td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr><td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td></tr> <tr><td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td></tr> <tr><td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol</td></tr> <tr><td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol</td></tr> <tr><td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol</td></tr> <tr><td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td></tr> <tr><td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td></tr> <tr><td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	PPP	Point to Point Protocol	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																										
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol																										
PPP	Point to Point Protocol																										
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet																										
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.<if name>.type Opt: type	If you select this option, then the new logical interface created will act as a bridging interface between the chosen existing physical interfaces. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Empty</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Bridge</td><td>Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.</td></tr> </table>	Empty		Bridge	Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.																						
Empty																											
Bridge	Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.																										
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.<if name>.ifname Opt: ifname	Physical interface name to assign to this logical interface. If creating a bridge over multiple interfaces select two interfaces to bridge. When using uci the interface names should be separated by a space e.g. option ifname 'eth2 eth3'																										

Table 18: Information table for the create new interface page

Click **Submit**. The Interface configuration page appears. There are three sections:

Section	Description
Common Configuration	Configure the interface settings such as protocol, IP address, gateway, netmask, custom DNS servers, MTU and firewall configuration.
IP-Aliases	Assigning multiple IP addresses to the interface
DHCP Server	Configuring DHCP server settings for this interface

12.2.3 Interface overview: common configuration

The common configuration section has four sub sections:

Section	Description
General Setup	Configure the basic interface settings such as protocol, IP address, gateway, netmask, custom DNS servers.
Advanced Settings	'Bring up on boot', 'Monitor interface state', Override MAC address, Override MTU and 'Use gateway metric'
Physical Settings	Bridge interfaces, VLAN PCP to SKB priority mapping,
Firewall settings	Assign a firewall zone to the interface

12.2.3.1 Common configuration – general setup

Common Configuration

- [General Setup](#)
- [Advanced Settings](#)
- [Physical Settings](#)
- [Firewall Settings](#)

Status	 eth3	MAC Address: 00:E0:C8:D3:18:20 RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)
Protocol	Static address	
IPv4 address	<input type="text"/>	
IPv4 netmask	<input type="text"/>	
IPv4 gateway	<input type="text"/>	
IPv4 broadcast	<input type="text"/>	
Use custom DNS servers	<input type="text"/> 	
Accept router advertisements	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Send router solicitations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
IPv6 address	<input type="text"/>	
IPv6 gateway	<input type="text"/>	

Figure 47: The Ethernet connection common configuration settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
General Setup	
Web: Status	Shows the current status of the interface.

Web: Protocol UCI: network.<if name>.proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. The interface protocol may be one of the options shown below. The protocol selected in the previous step will be displayed as default but can be changed if required.																										
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point-to-Point protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.	PPP	Point-to-Point protocol	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																										
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.																										
PPP	Point-to-Point protocol																										
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet																										
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: IPv4 address UCI: network.<if name>.ipaddr Opt: ipaddr	The IPv4 address of the interface. This is optional if an IPv6 address is provided.																										
Web: IPv4 netmask UCI: network.<if name>.netmask Opt: netmask	Subnet mask to be applied to the IP address of this interface.																										
Web: IPv4 gateway UCI: network.<if name>.gateway Opt: gateway	IPv4 default gateway to assign to this interface (optional).																										
Web: IPv4 broadcast UCI: network.<if name>.broadcast Opt: broadcast	Broadcast address. This is automatically generated if no broadcast address is specified.																										
Web: Use custom DNS servers UCI: network.<if name>.dns Opt: list dns	List of DNS server IP addresses (optional). Multiple DNS Servers are separated by a space if using UCI.																										
Web: Accept router advertisements UCI: network.<if name>.accept_ra Opt: accept_ra	Specifies whether to accept IPv6 Router Advertisements on this interface (optional). Note: default is 1 if protocol is set to DHCP, otherwise defaults to 0.																										
Web: Send router solicitations UCI: network.<if name>.send_rs Opt: send_rs	Specifies whether to send Router Solicitations on this interface (optional). Note: defaults to 1 for Static protocol, otherwise defaults to 0.																										
Web: IPv6 address UCI: network.<if name>.ip6addr Opt: ip6addr	The IPv6 IP address of the interface. Optional if an IPv4 address is provided. CIDR notation for the IPv6 address is required.																										
Web: IPv6 gateway UCI: network.<if name>.ip6gw Opt: ip6gw	Assign given IPv6 default gateway to this interface (optional).																										

Table 19: Information table for LAN interface common configuration settings

12.2.3.2 Common configuration: advanced settings

Common Configuration

- [General Setup](#)
- [Advanced Settings](#) **Physical Settings**
- [Firewall Settings](#)

Bring up on boot

Monitor interface state This interface state would be reported to VA Monitor via keep-alive

Use broadcast flag Required for certain ISPs, e.g. Charter with DOCSIS 3

Use default gateway If unchecked, no default route is configured

Use DNS servers advertised by peer If unchecked, the advertised DNS server addresses are ignored

Use gateway metric

Client ID to send when requesting DHCP

Vendor Class to send when requesting DHCP

Override MAC address

Override MTU

Figure 48: The Ethernet connection advanced settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Bring up on boot UCI: network.<if name>.auto Opt: auto	Enables the interface to connect automatically on boot up. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Monitor interface state UCI: network.<if name>.monitored Opt: monitored	Enabled if status of interface is presented on Monitoring platform. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Override MAC address UCI: network.<if name>.macaddr Opt: macaddr	Override the MAC address assigned to this interface. Must be in the form: hh:hh:hh:hh:hh:hh, where h is a hexadecimal number.				
Web: Override MTU UCI: network.<if name>.mtu Opt: mtu	Defines the value to override the default MTU on this interface. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>1500</td><td>1500 bytes</td></tr> </table>	1500	1500 bytes		
1500	1500 bytes				
Web: Use gateway metric UCI: network.<if name>.metric Opt: metric	Specifies the default route metric to use for this interface (optional). <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					

Web: Dependant Interfaces UCI: network.[..x..].dependants Opt: dependants	<p>Lists interfaces that are dependent on this parent interface. Dependant interfaces will go down when parent interface is down and will start or restart when parent interface starts. Separate multiple interfaces by a space when using UCI. Example: option dependants 'PPPADSL MOBILE' This replaces the following previous options in child interfaces.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>gre</td><td>option local_interface</td></tr> <tr><td>lt2p</td><td>option src_ipaddr</td></tr> <tr><td>iot</td><td>option wan1 wan2</td></tr> <tr><td>6in4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> <tr><td>6to4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> </table>	gre	option local_interface	lt2p	option src_ipaddr	iot	option wan1 wan2	6in4	option ipaddr	6to4	option ipaddr
gre	option local_interface										
lt2p	option src_ipaddr										
iot	option wan1 wan2										
6in4	option ipaddr										
6to4	option ipaddr										
Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network.[..x..].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	<p>Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface, that can be polled via the SNMP interface index (<i>snmp_alias_ifindex+1000</i>). See <i>Configuring SNMP</i> section for more information</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Blank</td><td>No SNMP interface alias index</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 4294966295</td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias index	Range	0 - 4294966295						
Blank	No SNMP interface alias index										
Range	0 - 4294966295										

Table 20: Information table for common configuration advanced settings**12.2.3.3 Common configuration: physical settings**

The screenshot shows the 'Common Configuration' page with the 'Physical Settings' tab selected. The interface list on the right includes:

- Ethernet Adapter: "3G" (3G)
- Ethernet Adapter: "ADSL" (ADSL)
- Ethernet Adapter: "eth0"
- Ethernet Adapter: "eth1" (lan1)
- Ethernet Adapter: "eth2"
- Ethernet Adapter: "eth3"
- Ethernet Adapter: "lo" (loopback)
- Ethernet Adapter: "teq10"
- Ethernet Adapter: "tun10"
- Ethernet Adapter: "usb0"
- Wireless Network: Master "GW6630W_VA" (lan)
- Custom Interface: [empty input field]

Figure 49: The Common configuration physical settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Bridge interfaces UCI: network.<if name>.type Opt: type	Sets the interface to bridge over a specified interface(s). The physical interfaces can be selected from the list and are defined in network.<if name>.ifname.	
	Empty	
	Bridge	Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.
Web: Enable STP UCI: network.<if name>.stp Opt: stp	Enable Spanning Tree Protocol. This option is only available when the Bridge Interfaces option is selected.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: VLAN PCP to skb>priority mapping UCI: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_ingress Opt: list vlan_qos_map_ingress	VLAN priority code point to socket buffer mapping. Multiple priority mappings are entered with a space between them when using UCI. Example: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_ingress =1:2 2:1	
Web: skb priority to >VLAN PCP mapping UCI: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_egress Opt: list vlan_qos_map_egress	Socket buffer to VLAN priority code point mapping. Multiple priority mappings are entered with a space between them when using UCI. Example: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_egress =1:2 2:1	
Web: Interface UCI: network.<if name>.ifname Opt: ifname	Physical interface to assign the logical interface to. If mapping multiple interfaces for bridging the interface names are separated by a space when using UCI and package options. Example: option ifname 'eth2 eth3' or network.<if name>.ifname=eth2 eth 3	

Table 21: Information table for physical settings page

12.2.3.4 Loopback interfaces

Loopback interfaces are defined in exactly the same way as ethernet interfaces. Please see section above.

Note: There is no software limitation as to how many loopback interfaces can exist on the router.

12.2.3.5 Common configuration: firewall settings

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface.

Select **unspecified** to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Common Configuration

General Setup Advanced Settings Physical Settings Firewall Settings

Create / Assign firewall-zone

- lan: **lan:**
- wan: **ADSL:** **3G:**
- unspecified -or- create:

Choose the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface. Select unspecified to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

IP-Aliases

This section contains no values yet

Add

Back to Overview Save & Apply Save

Figure 50: GRE firewall settings

12.2.4 Interface overview: IP-aliases

IP aliasing is associating more than one IP address to a network interface. You can assign multiple aliases.

12.2.4.1 IP-alias packages

Package	Sections
Network	alias

12.2.4.2 IP-alias using the web

To use IP-Aliases, enter a name for the alias and click **Add**. This name will be assigned to the alias section for this IP-alias. In this example the name ethalias1 is used.

IP-Aliases

This section contains no values yet

ethalias Add

Back to Overview Save & Apply Save Reset

Figure 51: The IP-Aliases section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
UCI: network.<alias name>=ifname Opt: config interface 'aliasname'	Assigns the alias name.
UCI: network.<alias name>.interface Opt: interface	This maps the IP-Alias to the interface.

UCI: network.<alias name>.proto Opt: proto	This maps the interface protocol to the alias.
---	--

Table 22: Information table for IP-Aliases name assignment

The IP Aliases configuration options page appears. The IP-Alias is divided into two sub sections: general setup and advanced.

12.2.4.3 IP-aliases: general setup

The screenshot shows the 'IP-Aliases' configuration page. Under the 'ETHALIAS1' section, the 'General Setup' tab is selected. It contains three input fields: 'IPv4-Address', 'IPv4-Netmask' (with a dropdown menu), and 'IPv4-Gateway'. Below these fields are 'Delete' and 'Add' buttons.

Figure 52: The IP-aliases general setup section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: IPv4-Address UCI: network.<alias name>.ipaddr Opt: ipaddr	Defines the IP address for the IP alias.
Web: IPv4-Netmask UCI: network.<alias name>.netmask Opt: netmask	Defines the netmask for the IP alias.
Web: IPv4-Gateway UCI: network.<alias name>.gateway Opt: gateway	Defines the gateway for the IP alias.

Table 23: Information table for IP-alias general setup page

12.2.4.4 IP-aliases: advanced settings

The screenshot shows the 'IP-Aliases' configuration page. Under the 'ETHALIAS1' section, the 'Advanced Settings' tab is selected. It contains two input fields: 'IPv4-Broadcast' and 'DNS-Server'. Below these fields are 'Delete' and 'Add' buttons.

Figure 53: The IP-Aliases advanced settings section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: IPv4-Broadcast UCI: network.<alias name>.bcast Opt: bcast	Defines the IP broadcast address for the IP alias.
Web: DNS-Server UCI: network.<alias name>.dns Opt: dns	Defines the DNS server for the IP alias.

Table 24: Information table for IP-Alias advanced settings page

12.2.5 Interface overview: DHCP server

Note: this option is only available for interfaces with a static IP address.

12.2.5.1 DHCP server: packages

Package	Sections
dhcp	dhcp

To assign a DHCP Server to the interface, click **Setup DHCP Server**.

**Figure 54: The DHCP Server settings section**

The DHCP Server configuration options will appear. The DHCP Server is divided into two sub sections – general setup and advanced.

12.2.5.2 DHCP server: general setup

Ignore interface	<input type="checkbox"/> Disable DHCP for this interface.	
Start	100	Lowest leased address as offset from the network address.
Limit	150	Maximum number of leased addresses.
Leasetime	12h	Expiry time of leased addresses, minimum is 2 Minutes (2m).

Figure 55: The DHCP server general setup section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description					
Web: Ignore interface UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].ignore Opt: ignore	Defines whether the DHCP pool should be enabled for this interface. If not specified for the DHCP pool then default is disabled i.e. dhcp pool enabled.	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.					
1	Enabled.					

Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].start Opt: start	Defines the offset from the network address for the start of the DHCP pool. It may be greater than 255 to span subnets. <table border="1"><tr><td>100</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td></tr></table>	100	Range		
100					
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].limit Opt: limit	Defines the offset from the network address for the end of the DHCP pool. <table border="1"><tr><td>150</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0 – 255</td></tr></table>	150	Range	0 – 255	
150					
Range	0 – 255				
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].leasetime Opt: leasetime	Defines the lease time of addresses handed out to clients, for example 12h or 30m. <table border="1"><tr><td>12h</td><td>12 hours</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	12h	12 hours	Range	
12h	12 hours				
Range					

Table 25: Information table for DHCP server general setup page

12.2.5.3 DHCP server: advanced settings

DHCP Server

General Setup Advanced Settings

Dynamic DHCP Dynamically allocate DHCP addresses for clients. If disabled, only clients having static leases will be served.

Force Force DHCP on this network even if another server is detected.

IPv4-Netmask Override the netmask sent to clients. Normally it is calculated from the subnet that is served.

DHCP-Options Define additional DHCP options, for example "6,192.168.2.1,192.168.2.2" which advertises different DNS servers to clients.

Figure 56: The DHCP server advanced settings section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Dynamic DHCP UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].dynamicdhcp Opt: dynamicdhcp	Defines whether to allocate DHCP leases. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>Dynamically allocate leases.</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Use /etc/ethers file for serving DHCP leases.</td></tr></table>	1	Dynamically allocate leases.	0	Use /etc/ethers file for serving DHCP leases.
1	Dynamically allocate leases.				
0	Use /etc/ethers file for serving DHCP leases.				
Web: Force UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].force Opt: force	Forces DHCP serving on the specified interface even if another DHCP server is detected on the same network segment. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: DHCP-Options UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].dhcp_option Opt: list dhcp_option	Defines additional options to be added for this dhcp pool. For example with 'list dhcp_option 26,1470' or 'list dhcp_option mtu, 1470' you can assign a specific MTU per DHCP pool. Your client must accept the MTU option for this to work. Options that contain multiple values should be separated by a space. Example: list dhcp_option 6,192.168.2.1 192.168.2.2 <table border="1"><tr><td>No options defined.</td></tr><tr><td>Syntax</td><td>Option_number, option_value</td></tr></table>	No options defined.	Syntax	Option_number, option_value	
No options defined.					
Syntax	Option_number, option_value				
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].networkid Opt: networked	Assigns a network-id to all clients that obtain an IP address from this pool.				

Table 26: Information table for DHCP advanced settings page

For more advanced configuration on the DHCP server, read 'DHCP server and DNS configuration section.'

12.3 Interface configuration using UCI

The configuration files are stored on **/etc/config/network**, **/etc/config/firewall** and **/etc/config/dhcp**

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show network
.....
network.newinterface=interface
network.newinterface.proto=static
network.newinterface.ifname=eth0
network.newinterface.monitored=0
network.newinterface.ipaddr=2.2.2.2
network.newinterface.netmask=255.255.255.0
network.newinterface.gateway=2.2.2.10
network.newinterface.broadcast=2.2.2.255
network.newinterface.vlan_qos_map_ingress=1:2 2:1
network.ethalias1=alias
network.ethalias1.proto=static
network.ethalias1.interface=newinterface
network.ethalias1.ipaddr=10.10.10.1
network.ethalias1.netmask=255.255.255.0
network.ethalias1.gateway=10.10.10.10
network.ethalias1.bcast=10.10.10.255
network.ethalias1.dns=8.8.8.8

root@GW_router:~# uci show firewall
.....firewall.@zone[0]=zone
firewall.@zone[0].name=lan
firewall.@zone[0].input=ACCEPT
firewall.@zone[0].output=ACCEPT
firewall.@zone[0].forward=ACCEPT
firewall.@zone[0].network=lan newinterface

root@GW_router:~# uci show dhcp
...
dhcp.@dhcp[0]=dhcp
dhcp.@dhcp[0].start=100
root@GW_router:~# uci show firewall
```

```

dhcp.@dhcp[0].leasetime=12h
dhcp.@dhcp[0].limit=150
dhcp.@dhcp[0].interface=newinterface

```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

12.3.1 Interface common configuration using package options

The configuration files are stored on **/etc/config/network**, **/etc/config/firewall** and **/etc/config/dhcp**

```

root@GW_router:~# uci export network
package network

.....
config interface 'newinterface'
    option proto 'static'
    option ifname 'eth0'
    option monitored '0'
    option ipaddr '2.2.2.2'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
    option gateway '2.2.2.10'
    option broadcast '2.2.2.255'
    list vlan_qos_map_ingress '1:2'
    list vlan_qos_map_ingress '2:1'

config alias 'ethalias1'
    option proto 'static'
    option interface 'newinterface'
    option ipaddr '10.10.10.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
    option gateway '10.10.10.10'
    option bcast '10.10.10.255'
    option dns '8.8.8.8'

root@GW_router:~# uci export firewall
package firewall

config zone
    option name 'lan'
    option input 'ACCEPT'

```

```

option output 'ACCEPT'
option forward 'ACCEPT'
option network 'lan newinterface'

root@GW_router:~# uci export dhcp
package dhcp
.....
config dhcp
    option start '100'
    option leasetime '12h'
    option limit '150'
    option interface 'newinterface'
```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

12.3.2 Loopback interfaces

Loopback interfaces are defined in exactly the same way as Ethernet interfaces. Read the section above.

Note: There is no software limitation as to how many loopback interfaces can exist on the router.

An example showing a partial `uci export` of a loopback interface configuration is shown below.

```

root@GW_router:~# uci export network
.....
config interface 'loopback'
    option proto 'static'
    option ifname 'lo'
    option ipaddr '127.0.0.1'
    option netmask '255.0.0.0'
```

12.4 Configuring port maps

12.5 Port map packages

Package	Sections
Network	va_switch

12.5.1 Configuring port map using the web interface

The new logical Ethernet interface needs to be mapped to a physical switch port. To configure the Ethernet switch physical port to logical interface mappings, go to the Port Map section at **Network->Interfaces**.

Port	Switch Port
eth0	A
eth1	B
eth2	C
eth3	D

Figure 57: The Interface port map section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description								
Web: eth0 UCI: network.@va_switch[0].eth0 Opt: eth0	Defines eth0 physical switch port mapping. Must be entered in upper case. <table border="1"> <tr><td>A</td><td>Eth0 assigned to switch port A</td></tr> <tr><td>B</td><td>Eth0 assigned to switch port B</td></tr> <tr><td>C</td><td>Eth0 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> <tr><td>D</td><td>Eth0 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> </table>	A	Eth0 assigned to switch port A	B	Eth0 assigned to switch port B	C	Eth0 assigned to switch port C	D	Eth0 assigned to switch port C
A	Eth0 assigned to switch port A								
B	Eth0 assigned to switch port B								
C	Eth0 assigned to switch port C								
D	Eth0 assigned to switch port C								
Web: eth1 UCI: network.@va_switch[0].eth1 Opt: eth1	Defines eth1 physical switch port mapping. Must be entered in upper case. <table border="1"> <tr><td>A</td><td>Eth1 assigned to switch port A</td></tr> <tr><td>B</td><td>Eth1 assigned to switch port B</td></tr> <tr><td>C</td><td>Eth1 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> <tr><td>D</td><td>Eth1 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> </table>	A	Eth1 assigned to switch port A	B	Eth1 assigned to switch port B	C	Eth1 assigned to switch port C	D	Eth1 assigned to switch port C
A	Eth1 assigned to switch port A								
B	Eth1 assigned to switch port B								
C	Eth1 assigned to switch port C								
D	Eth1 assigned to switch port C								
Web: eth2 UCI: network.@va_switch[0].eth2 Opt: eth2	Defines eth2 physical switch port mapping. Must be entered in upper case. <table border="1"> <tr><td>A</td><td>Eth2 assigned to switch port A</td></tr> <tr><td>B</td><td>Eth2 assigned to switch port B</td></tr> <tr><td>C</td><td>Eth2 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> <tr><td>D</td><td>Eth2 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> </table>	A	Eth2 assigned to switch port A	B	Eth2 assigned to switch port B	C	Eth2 assigned to switch port C	D	Eth2 assigned to switch port C
A	Eth2 assigned to switch port A								
B	Eth2 assigned to switch port B								
C	Eth2 assigned to switch port C								
D	Eth2 assigned to switch port C								
Web: eth3 UCI: network.@va_switch[0].eth3 Opt: eth3	Defines eth3 physical switch port mapping. Must be entered in upper case. <table border="1"> <tr><td>A</td><td>Eth3 assigned to switch port A</td></tr> <tr><td>B</td><td>Eth3 assigned to switch port B</td></tr> <tr><td>C</td><td>Eth3 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> <tr><td>D</td><td>Eth3 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> </table>	A	Eth3 assigned to switch port A	B	Eth3 assigned to switch port B	C	Eth3 assigned to switch port C	D	Eth3 assigned to switch port C
A	Eth3 assigned to switch port A								
B	Eth3 assigned to switch port B								
C	Eth3 assigned to switch port C								
D	Eth3 assigned to switch port C								

Table 27: Information table for interface port map page

12.5.2 Configuring port maps using UCI

The configuration files are stored on **/etc/config/network**

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show network
.....
network.@va_switch[0]=va_switch
network.@va_switch[0].eth0=A
network.@va_switch[0].eth1=B
network.@va_switch[0].eth2=C
network.@va_switch[0].eth3=D
```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

12.5.3 Configuring port map using package options

The configuration files are stored on **/etc/config/network**

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export network
.....
config va_switch
    option eth0 'A'
    option eth1 'B'
    option eth2 'C'
    option eth3 'D'
```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

12.5.4 ATM bridges

The ATM bridges section is not used when configuring an Ethernet interface.

12.6 Interface diagnostics

12.6.1 Interfaces status

To show the current running interfaces, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# ifconfig
3g-CDMA    Link encap:Point-to-Point Protocol
            inet addr:10.33.152.100  P-t-P:178.72.0.237  Mask:255.255.255.255
                      UP POINTOPOINT RUNNING NOARP MULTICAST  MTU:1400  Metric:1
                      RX packets:6 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
                      TX packets:23 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
```

```

    collisions:0 txqueuelen:3
    RX bytes:428 (428.0 B) TX bytes:2986 (2.9 KiB)

eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:E0:C8:12:12:15
          inet addr:192.168.100.1 Bcast:192.168.100.255
Mask:255.255.255.0
          inet6 addr: fe80::2e0:c8ff:fe12:1215/64 Scope:Link
          UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
          RX packets:6645 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:523 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
          RX bytes:569453 (556.1 KiB) TX bytes:77306 (75.4 KiB)

lo       Link encap:Local Loopback
          inet addr:127.0.0.1 Mask:255.0.0.0
          inet6 addr: ::1/128 Scope:Host
          UP LOOPBACK RUNNING MTU:16436 Metric:1
          RX packets:385585 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:385585 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
          RX bytes:43205140 (41.2 MiB) TX bytes:43205140 (41.2 MiB)

```

To display a specific interface, enter:

```

root@GW_router:~# ifconfig eth0
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:E0:C8:12:12:15
          inet addr:192.168.100.1 Bcast:192.168.100.255
Mask:255.255.255.0
          inet6 addr: fe80::2e0:c8ff:fe12:1215/64 Scope:Link
          UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
          RX packets:7710 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:535 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
          RX bytes:647933 (632.7 KiB) TX bytes:80978 (79.0 KiB)

```

12.6.2 ARP table status

To show the current ARP table of the router, enter:

```
root@GW7314:~# arp
? (10.67.253.141) at 30:30:41:30:43:36 [ether]  on eth8
? (10.47.48.1) at 0a:44:b2:06 [ether]  on gre-gre1
```

12.6.3 Route status

To show the current routing status, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# route -n
Kernel IP routing table
Destination      Gateway          Genmask         Flags Metric Ref  Use
Iface
192.168.100.0    *        255.255.255.0   U        0      0      0
eth0
```

Note: a route will only be displayed in the routing table when the interface is up.

13 Configuring DHCP server and DNS (Dnsmasq)

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server is responsible for assigning IP addresses to hosts. IP addresses can be given out on different interfaces and different subnets. You can manually configure lease time as well as setting static IP to host mappings.

Domain Name Server (DNS) is responsible for resolution of IP addresses to domain names on the internet.

Dnsmasq is the application which controls DHCP and DNS services. Dnsmasq has two sections; one to specify general DHCP and DNS settings and one or more DHCP pools to define DHCP operation on the desired network interface.

13.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
dhcp	dnsmasq
	dhcp
	host

13.2 Configuring DHCP and DNS using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> DHCP and DNS**. The DHCP and DNS page appears. There are three sections: Server Settings, Active Leases, and Static Leases.

DHCP and DNS

Dnsmasq is a combined DHCP-Server and DNS-Forwarder for NAT firewalls

Server Settings

- General Settings
- Resolv and Hosts Files**
- TFTP Settings
- Advanced Settings

Domain required [Don't forward DNS-Requests without DNS-Name](#)

Authoritative [This is the only DHCP in the local network](#)

Interfaces [lan](#)
 [lan2](#)
 [loopback](#)
 [wan](#)
 [wan1](#)

[Select interfaces to be served by dnsmasq. If none selected dnsmasq will serve on all interfaces](#)

Local server [Local domain specification. Names matching this domain are never forwarded and resolved from DHCP or hosts files only](#)

Local domain [Local domain suffix appended to DHCP names and hosts file entries](#)

Log queries [Write received DNS requests to syslog](#)

DNS forwardings
[List of DNS servers to forward requests to. To forward only specific domain requests use // syntax](#)

Rebind protection [Discard upstream RFC1918 responses](#)

Allow localhost [Allow upstream responses in the 127.0.0.0/8 range, e.g. for RBL services](#)

Domain whitelist
[List of domains to allow RFC1918 responses for](#)

Active Leases

Hostname	IPv4-Address	MAC-Address	Leasetime remaining
<i>There are no active leases.</i>			

Static Leases

Static leases are used to assign fixed IP addresses and symbolic hostnames to DHCP clients. They are also required for non-dynamic interface configurations where only hosts with a corresponding lease are served.
 Use the Add Button to add a new lease entry. The MAC-Address identifies the host, the IPv4-Address specifies the fixed address to use and the Hostname is assigned as symbolic name to the requesting host.

Hostname	MAC-Address	IPv4-Address
<i>This section contains no values yet</i>		

[Add](#)

[Save & Apply](#) [Save](#) [Reset](#)

Figure 58: The DHCP and DNS page

13.2.1 Dnsmasq: general settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description					
Web: Domain required UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].domainneeded Opt: domainneeded	Defines whether to forward DNS requests without a DNS name. Dnsmasq will never forward queries for plain names, without dots or domain parts, to upstream nameservers. If the name is not known from /etc/hosts or DHCP then a "not found" answer is returned.					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>		1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.					
0	Disabled.					
Web: Authoritative UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].authoritative Opt: authoritative	Forces authoritative mode, this speeds up DHCP leasing. Used if this is the only server in the network.					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>		1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.					
0	Disabled.					
Web: Interfaces UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].interface Opt: list interface	Defines the list of interfaces to be served by dnsmasq. If you do not select a specific interface, dnsmasq will serve on all interfaces. Configured interfaces are shown via the web GUI.					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Lan</td><td>Serve only on LAN interface</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>		Lan	Serve only on LAN interface	Range	
Lan	Serve only on LAN interface					
Range						
Web: Local Server UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].local Opt: local	Specifies the local domain. Names matching this domain are never forwarded and are resolved from DHCP or host files only.					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>/lan/</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>		/lan/		Range	
/lan/						
Range						
Web: Local Domain UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].domain Opt: domain	Specifies local domain suffix appended to DHCP names and hosts file entries.					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>lan</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>		lan		Range	
lan						
Range						
Web: Log Queries UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].logqueries Opt: logqueries	Writes received DNS requests to syslog.					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>		0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.					
1	Enabled.					
Web: DNS Forwardings UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].server Opt: list server	List of DNS server to forward requests to. To forward specific domain requests only, use // syntax. When using UCI, enter multiple servers with a space between them.					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td><td>No DNS server configured.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			No DNS server configured.	Range	
	No DNS server configured.					
Range						
Web: Rebind Protection UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind_protection Opt: rebind_protection	Enables DNS rebinding attack protection by discarding upstream RFC1918 responses.					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>		0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.					
1	Enabled.					
Web: Allow Localhost UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind_localhost Opt: rebind_localhost	Defines whether to allow upstream responses in the 127.0.0.0/8 range. This is required for DNS based blacklist services. Only takes effect if rebinding protection is enabled.					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>		0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.					
1	Enabled.					
Web: Domain Whitelist UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind_domain Opt: list rebind_domain	Defines the list of domains to allow RFC1918 responses to. Only takes effect if rebinding protection is enabled. When using UCI multiple servers should be entered with a space between them.					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td><td>No list configured.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			No list configured.	Range	
	No list configured.					
Range						

Table 28: Information table for general server settings

13.2.2 Dnsmasq: resolv and host files

The screenshot shows the 'DHCP and DNS' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'General Settings', 'Resolv and Hosts Files' (which is selected), 'TFTP Settings', and 'Advanced Settings'. Below these tabs, there are several configuration options:

- Use /etc/ethers:** A checkbox labeled 'Read /etc/ethers to configure the DHCP-Server'.
- Leasefile:** A dropdown menu set to '/tmp/dhcp leases'.
- Ignore resolve file:** A checkbox.
- Resolve file:** A dropdown menu set to '/tmp/resolv.conf.auto'.
- Ignore Hosts files:** A checkbox.
- Additional Hosts files:** An input field containing a list of hosts.

Figure 59: The resolv and host files section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Use /etc/ethers UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].readethers Opt: readethers	Defines whether static lease entries are read from /etc/ethers. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Leasefile UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].leasefile Opt: leasefile	Defines the file where given DHCP leases will be stored. The DHCP lease file allows leases to be picked up again if dnsmasq is restarted. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>/tmp/dhcp.leases</td><td>Store DHCP leases in this file.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/tmp/dhcp.leases	Store DHCP leases in this file.	Range	
/tmp/dhcp.leases	Store DHCP leases in this file.				
Range					
Web: Ignore resolve file UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].noresolv Opt: noresolv	Defines whether to use the local DNS file for resolving DNS. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Use local DNS file.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Ignore local DNS file.</td></tr> </table>	0	Use local DNS file.	1	Ignore local DNS file.
0	Use local DNS file.				
1	Ignore local DNS file.				
Web: Resolve file UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].resolvfile Opt: resolvfile	Defines the local DNS file. Default is /tmp/resolv.conf.auto				
Web: Ignore Hosts files UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].nohosts Opt: nohosts	Defines whether to use local host's files for resolving DNS. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Use local hosts file.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Ignore local hosts file.</td></tr> </table>	0	Use local hosts file.	1	Ignore local hosts file.
0	Use local hosts file.				
1	Ignore local hosts file.				
Web: Additional Hosts files UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].addnhosts Opt: list addnhosts	Defines local host's files. When using UCI multiple servers should be entered with a space between them.				

Table 29: Information table for resolv and host files section

13.2.3 Dnsmasq: TFTP settings

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface for Dnsmasq. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for Status, System, Services, Network, and Logout. Below the navigation bar, the title "DHCP and DNS" is displayed, followed by the subtext "Dnsmasq is a combined DHCP-Server and DNS-Forwarder for NAT firewalls". A sub-section titled "Server Settings" is shown, with tabs for General Settings, Resolv and Hosts Files, TFTP Settings (which is selected), and Advanced Settings. Under the TFTP Settings tab, there are three configuration fields: "Enable TFTP server" with a checked checkbox, "TFTP server root" set to a value of "/", and "Network boot image" set to "pxelinux.0". Each field has a corresponding help text below it.

Figure 60: The TFTP settings section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enable TFTP Server UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].enable_tftp Opt: enable_tftp	Enables the TFTP server. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Enable TFTP Server UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].tftp_root Opt: tftp_root	Defines root directory for file served by TFTP.				
Web: Enable TFTP Server UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dhcp_boot Opt: dhcp_boot	Defines the filename of the boot image advertised to clients. This specifies BOOTP options, in most cases just the file name.				

Table 30: Information table for TFTP settings

13.2.4 Dnsmasq: advanced settings

DHCP and DNS

Dnsmasq is a combined DHCP-Server and DNS-Forwarder for NAT firewalls

Server Settings

General Settings Resolv and Hosts Files TFTP Settings Advanced Settings

Filter private Do not forward reverse lookups for local networks

Filter useless Do not forward requests that cannot be answered by public name servers

Localise queries Localse hostname depending on the requesting subnet if multiple IPs are available

Expand hosts Add local domain suffix to names served from hosts files

No negative cache Do not cache negative replies, e.g. for not existing domains

Strict order DNS servers will be queried in the order of the resolvfile

Bogus NX Domain
Override List of hosts that supply bogus NX domain results

DNS server port Listening port for inbound DNS queries

DNS query port Fixed source port for outbound DNS queries

Max. DHCP leases Maximum allowed number of active DHCP leases

Max. EDNS0 packet size Maximum allowed size of EDNS.0 UDP packets

Max. concurrent queries Maximum allowed number of concurrent DNS queries

Figure 61: The advanced settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Filter private UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0]. Opt: boguspriv	Enables disallow option for forwarding reverse lookups for local networks. This rejects reverse lookups to private IP ranges where no corresponding entry exists in /etc/hosts. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Filter useless UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].filterwin2k Opt: filterwin2k	Enables disallow option for forwarding requests that cannot be answered by public name servers. Normally enabled for dial on demand interfaces. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				

Web: Localise queries UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].localise_queries Opt: localise_queries	Defines whether to uses IP address to match the incoming interface if multiple addresses are assigned to a host name in /etc/hosts. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Expand hosts UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].expandhosts Opt: expandhosts	Adds a local domain suffix to names served from host files. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: No negative cache UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].nonegcache Opt: nonegcache	Enable this to stop caching of negative replies. For example, non-existing domains. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Strict order UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].strictorder Opt: strictorder	Enable this to query DNS servers in the order of the resolve file. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Bogus NX Domain override UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].bogusnxdomain Opt: list bogusnxdomain	A list of hosts that supply bogus NX domain results. When using UCI multiple servers should be entered with a space between them. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Empty list</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Empty list		Range	
Empty list					
Range					
Web: DNS server port UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].port Opt: port	Listening port for inbound DNS queries. <table border="1"> <tr><td>53</td><td>Set to 0 to disable DNS functionality.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	53	Set to 0 to disable DNS functionality.	Range	0 - 65535
53	Set to 0 to disable DNS functionality.				
Range	0 - 65535				
Web: DNS query port UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].queryport Opt: queryport	Defines fixed source port for outbound DNS queries. <table border="1"> <tr><td>any</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>any; 0 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	any		Range	any; 0 - 65535
any					
Range	any; 0 - 65535				
Web: Max DHCP leases UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dhcpleasemax Opt: dhcpleasemax	Defines the maximum allowed number of active DHCP leases. <table border="1"> <tr><td>unlimited</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	unlimited		Range	
unlimited					
Range					
Web: Max EDNS0 packet size UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].ednspacket_max Opt: ednspacket_max	Defines the maximum allowed size of EDNS.0 UDP packets in bytes. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1280</td><td>1280 bytes</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	1280	1280 bytes	Range	
1280	1280 bytes				
Range					
Web: Max concurrent queries UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dnsforwardmax Opt: dnsforwardmax	Maximum allowed number of concurrent DNS queries. <table border="1"> <tr><td>150</td><td>1280 bytes</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	150	1280 bytes	Range	
150	1280 bytes				
Range					

Table 31: Information table for advanced settings

13.2.5 Active leases

This section displays all currently active leases.

Active Leases			
Active Leases			
Hostname	IPv4-Address	MAC-Address	Leasetime remaining
There are no active leases.			

Figure 62: The active leases section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Hostname UCI: dhcp.@host[0].name Opt: name	Displays the hostname of the client.
Web: IPv4 Address UCI: dhcp.@host[0].ip Opt: ip	Displays the IP address of the client.
Web: MAC Address UCI: dhcp.@host[0].mac Opt: mac	Displays the MAC address of the client.
Web: Lease time remaining UCI: n/a Opt: n/a	Displays the remaining lease time.

Table 32: Information table for active leases section

13.2.6 Static leases

Use static leases to assign fixed IP addresses and symbolic hostnames to DHCP clients. Static leases are also required for non-dynamic interface configurations where only hosts with a corresponding lease are served. Click **Add** to add a new lease entry.

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface for static leases. At the top, there's a title 'Static Leases'. Below it, a note states: 'Static leases are used to assign fixed IP addresses and symbolic hostnames to DHCP clients. They are also required for non-dynamic interface configurations where only hosts with a corresponding lease are served. Use the Add Button to add a new lease entry. The MAC-Address identifies the host, the IPv4-Address specifies to the fixed address to use and the Hostname is assigned as symbolic name to the requesting host.' The main part of the screen is a table with three columns: 'Hostname', 'MAC-Address', and 'IPv4-Address'. Each column has an input field. To the right of the table are 'Delete', 'Add', and 'Save & Apply' buttons. Below the table are 'Save', 'Save & Apply', and 'Reset' buttons.

Figure 63: The static leases section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Hostname UCI: dhcp.@host[0].name Opt: name	Defines the optional symbolic name to assign to this static DHCP entry. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr></table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: MAC Address UCI: dhcp.@host[0].mac Opt: mac	Defines the hardware address that identifies the host.				
Web: IPv4 Address UCI: dhcp.@host[0].ip Opt: ip	The IPv4 address specifies the fixed address to use for this host..				

Table 33: Information table for static leases

13.3 Configuring DHCP and DNS using UCI

13.3.1 Common options section

Possible section types of the DHCP configuration file are defined below. Not all types may appear in the file and most of them are only needed for special configurations. Common configurations are Common Options, DHCP Pools and Static Leases.

The configuration section type `dnsmasq` determines values and options relevant to the overall operation of `dnsmasq` and the DHCP options on all interfaces served. The following table lists all available options, their default value, as well as the corresponding `dnsmasq` command line option.

These are the default settings for the common options:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show dhcp
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0]=dnsmasq
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].domainneeded=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].boguspriv=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].filterwin2k=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].localise_queries=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].logqueries=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind_protection=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind_localhost=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].local=/lan/
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].domain=lan
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].expandhosts=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].nonegcache=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].authoritative=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].readethers=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].leasefile=/tmp/dhcp.leases
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].noresolve=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].resolvfile=/tmp/resolv.conf.auto
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].nohosts=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].addnhosts=hostfile1 hostfile2
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].interface=lan
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].server=1.1.1.1 2.2.2.2
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind domain=tes.domain
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].enable_tftp=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].tftp_root=/tmp/tftp
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dhcp_boot=boot.image
```

```
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].nonegcache=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].strictorder=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].bogusnxdomain=1.1.1.1 2.2.2.2
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].port=53
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dhcpleasemax=150
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].ednspacket_max=1280
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dnsforwardmax=150
root@GW_router:~# uci show dhcp
config 'dnsmasq'
    option domainneeded '1'
        option rebind_protection '1'
        option rebind_localhost '1'
        option local '/lan/'
        option domain 'lan'
        option authoritative '1'
        option readethers '1'
        option leasefile '/tmp/dhcp.leases'
        list interface 'lan'
        list server '1.2.3.4'
        list server '4.5.6.7'
        list rebind_domain 'test1.domain'
        list rebind_domain 'tes2.domain'
        option logqueries '1'
        option resolvfile '/tmp/resolv1.conf.auto'
        list addnhosts 'hosts1'
        list addnhosts 'hosts2'
        option enable_tftp '1'
        option tftp_root '/tmp/tftp'
        option dhcp_boot 'boot.image'
        option filterwin2k '1'
        option nonegcache '1'
        option strictorder '1'
        list bogusnxdomain '1.1.1.1 '
        list bogusnxdomain '2.2.2.2'
        option port '53'
        option dhcpleasemax '150'
```

```
option ednspacket_max '1280'
option dnsforwardmax '150'
```

Options `local` and `domain` enable dnsmasq to serve entries in `/etc/hosts` as well as the DHCP client's names as if they were entered into the LAN DNS domain.

For options `domainneeded`, `boguspriv`, `localise_queries`, and `expandhosts` make sure that requests for these local host names (and the reverse lookup) never get forwarded to the upstream DNS servers.

13.4 Configuring DHCP pools using UCI

Sections of the type `dhcp` specify per interface lease pools and settings. Typically there is at least one section of this type present in the `/etc/config/dhcp` file to cover the LAN interface.

You can disable a lease pool for a specific interface by specifying the `ignore` option in the corresponding section.

A minimal example of a `dhcp` section is shown below.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show dhcp.lan
dhcp.lan=dhcp
dhcp.lan.interface=lan
dhcp.lan.start=100
dhcp.lan.limit=150
dhcp.lan.leasetime=12h
dhcp.lan.ignore=0
root@GW_router:~# uci export dhcp
config 'dhcp' 'lan'
    option 'interface'    'lan'
    option 'start'        '100'
    option 'limit'         '150'
    option 'leasetime'     '12h'
    option ignore          0
```

UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: n/a UCI: <code>dhcp.<pool_name>.interface</code> Opt: <code>interface</code>	Defines the interface that is served by this DHCP pool. This must be one of the configured interfaces. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>lan</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	lan	Enabled.	Range	
lan	Enabled.				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: <code>dhcp.<pool_name>.start</code> Opt: <code>start</code>	Defines the offset from the network address for the start of the DHCP pool. It may be greater than 255 to span subnets <table border="1"> <tr> <td>100</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	100		Range	
100					
Range					

Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.<pool_name>.limit Opt: limit	Defines the offset from the network address for the end of the DHCP pool <table border="1"><tr><td>150</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 255</td></tr></table>	150	Range	0 - 255	
150					
Range	0 - 255				
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.<pool_name>.leasetime Opt: leasetime	Defines the lease time of addresses handed out to clients, for example 12h or 30m. <table border="1"><tr><td>12h</td><td>12 hours</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	12h	12 hours	Range	
12h	12 hours				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.<pool_name>.ignore Opt: ignore	Defines whether this DHCP pool is enabled. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>DHCP pool enabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>DHCP pool disabled.</td></tr></table>	0	DHCP pool enabled.	1	DHCP pool disabled.
0	DHCP pool enabled.				
1	DHCP pool disabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.<pool_name>.force Opt: force	Forces DHCP serving on the specified interface even if another DHCP server is detected on the same network segment. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.<pool_name>.dhcp_option Opt: list dhcp_option	Defines additional options to be added for this dhcp pool. For example with 'list dhcp_option 26,1470' or 'list dhcp_option mtu, 1470' you can assign a specific MTU per DHCP pool. Your client must accept the MTU option for this to work. <table border="1"><tr><td>No options defined</td></tr><tr><td>Syntax</td><td>Option_number, option_value.</td></tr></table>	No options defined	Syntax	Option_number, option_value.	
No options defined					
Syntax	Option_number, option_value.				
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.<pool_name>.dynamicdhcp Opt: dynamicdhcp	Defines whether to allocate DHCP leases. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>Dynamically allocate leases.</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Use /etc/ethers file for serving DHCP leases.</td></tr></table>	1	Dynamically allocate leases.	0	Use /etc/ethers file for serving DHCP leases.
1	Dynamically allocate leases.				
0	Use /etc/ethers file for serving DHCP leases.				
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.<pool_name>.dynamicdhcp Opt: networkid	Assigns a network-id to all clients that obtain an IP address from this pool.				

Table 34: Information table for DHCP pool UCI and package options

13.5 Configuring static leases using UCI

You can assign fixed IP addresses to hosts on your network, based on their MAC (hardware) address.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show dhcp.mypc
dhcp.mypc=host
root@GW_router:~# uci show dhcp.mypc
dhcp.mypc.ip=192.168.1.2
dhcp.mypc.mac=00:11:22:33:44:55
dhcp.mypc.name=mypc
root@GW_router:~# uci export dhcp
config host 'mypc'
    option ip      '192.168.1.2'
    option mac     '00:11:22:33:44:55'
    option name   'mypc'
```

This adds the fixed IP address 192.168.1.2 and the name "mypc" for a machine with the (Ethernet) hardware address 00:11:22:33:44:55.

14 Configuring VLAN

14.1 Maximum number of VLANs supported

Satel' routers support up to 4095 VLANs.

14.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
Network	

14.3 Configuring VLAN using the web interface

14.3.1 Create a VLAN interface

To configure VLAN using the web interface, in the top menu, select **Network ->Interfaces**.

Click **Add** new interface. The Create Interface page appears.

Figure 64: The create interface page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description																										
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network.vlan1=interface Opt: interface	Type the name of the new interface. For example, VLAN1.																										
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.vlan_test.proto Opt: proto	<p>Protocol type. Select Static.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	PPP	Point to Point Protocol	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																										
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol																										
PPP	Point to Point Protocol																										
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet																										
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.vlan1.type Opt: type	Create a bridge over multiple interfaces.																										
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.vlan1.ifname Opt: ifname	<p>Check the Custom Interface radio button. Enter a name, for example eth0.100. This will assign VLAN 100 to the eth0 interface.</p>																										

Table 35: Information table for the create interface page

Click **Submit**. The Interfaces page for VLAN1 appears.

14.3.2 General setup: VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'Interfaces - VLAN1' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for WAN, VLAN1 (selected), VLAN2, and LAN. Below the tabs, there is a header bar with 'Status', 'System', 'Services', 'Network', and 'Logout'. A green bar at the top right indicates 'UNSAVED CHANGES' and 'AUTO REFRESH ON'. The main section is titled 'Common Configuration' with tabs for 'General Setup' (selected), 'Advanced Settings', 'Physical Settings', and 'Firewall Settings'. Under 'General Setup', there is a 'Status' section for interface eth0.1 showing uptime, MAC address, RX/TX statistics, and IPv4 information. Below this are fields for 'Protocol' (set to 'Static address'), 'IPv4 address' (172.16.100.1), 'IPv4 netmask' (255.255.255.0), 'IPv4 gateway' (empty), 'IPv4 broadcast' (empty), and 'Use custom DNS servers' (empty).

Figure 65: The VLAN 1 interface page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description																										
Web: Protocol UCI: network.VLAN1.proto Opt: proto	<p>Protocol type.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	PPP	Point to Point Protocol	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																										
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol																										
PPP	Point to Point Protocol																										
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet																										
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: IPv4 address UCI: network.VLAN1.ipaddr Opt: ipaddr	The IPv4 address of the interface. This is optional if an IPv6 address is provided.																										
Web: IPv4 netmask UCI: network.VLAN1.netmask Opt: netmask	Subnet mask to be applied to the IP address of this interface.																										

Web: IPv4 gateway UCI: network.VLAN1.gateway Opt: gateway	IPv4 default gateway to assign to this interface (optional).
Web: Use custom DNS servers UCI: network.VLAN1.dns Opt: dns	List of DNS server IP addresses (optional).

Table 36: Information table for VLAN general settings

14.3.3 Firewall settings: VLAN

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to the VLAN interface.

Select **unspecified** to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

The screenshot shows a 'Common Configuration' screen with three tabs: 'General Setup', 'Advanced Settings', and 'Firewall Settings'. The 'Firewall Settings' tab is active. Below the tabs, there is a section titled 'Create / Assign firewall-zone' with a dropdown menu containing 'unspecified -or- create:' followed by an input field. A note below the dropdown says: 'Choose the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface. Select unspecified to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.' At the bottom of the screen, there are buttons for 'Back to Overview', 'Save & Apply' (highlighted in blue), 'Save', and 'Reset'.

Figure 66: Firewall settings page

When you have added all the VLAN interfaces you require, click **Save & Apply**.

14.4 Viewing VLAN interface settings

To view the new VLAN interface settings, in the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces Overview page appears.

The example below shows two VLAN interfaces configured.

15 QoS: VLAN 802.1Q PCP tagging

15.1 Configuring VLAN PCP tagging

SATEL routers have the capability to respect and set PCP priority values inside 802.1Q VLAN tagged frames. The following partial export of network configuration shows how to configure VLAN priorities for specific interfaces (VLANs).

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export network package network

config va_switch

    option eth0 'A E'
    option eth1 'B F'
    option eth2 'C G'
    option eth3 'D'
    option eth4 'H'

config interface 'VLAN_1'

    option type 'bridge'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '10.1.28.99'
    option netmask '255.255.0.0'
    option ifname 'eth0 eth4'

config interface 'VLAN_2'

    option type 'bridge'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '192.168.2.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
    option ifname 'eth1 eth4.2'
    option vlan_qos_map_ingress '1:1'
    option vlan_qos_map_egress '0:1'

config interface 'VLAN_3'

    option ifname 'eth2 eth4.3'
    option type 'bridge'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '192.168.3.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
```

```

        option vlan_qos_map_ingress '3:3'
        option vlan_qos_map_egress '0:3'

config interface 'VLAN_4'
    option ifname 'eth3 eth4.4'
    option type 'bridge'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '192.168.3.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
        option vlan_qos_map_ingress '5:5'
        option vlan_qos_map_egress '0:5'

```

UCI/Package Option	Description
UCI: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_ingress Opt: list vlan_qos_map_ingress	VLAN priority code point to socket buffer mapping. Example: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_ingress =1:1
UCI: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_egress Opt: list vlan_qos_map_egress	Socket buffer to VLAN priority code point mapping. Example: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_egress =0:1

The above sample configuration specifies that any frames on VLAN2, VLAN3 and VLAN4 will be processed or have their PCP value adjusted according to QoS values set.

VLAN1

- VLAN1 is an untagged VLAN so there are no 802.1Q tags on the frames.

VLAN2

- Any frames received on VLAN2 destined to VLAN2 with PCP priority of 1 will be forwarded without altering the priority; it will be still set to 1.
- Any frames received on VLAN2 destined to VLAN2 with a PCP priority set to 0 will have a priority of 1 set as they leave the router on VLAN2.

VLAN3

- Any frames received on VLAN3 destined to VLAN3 with a PCP priority of 3 will be forwarded without altering the priority; it will be still set to 3.
- Any frames received on VLAN3 destined to VLAN2 with PCP priority set to 0 will have a priority of 3 set as they leave the router on VLAN3.

VLAN4

- Any frames received on VLAN4 destined to VLAN2 with PCP priority of 5 will be forwarded without altering the priority; it will be still set to 5.
- Any frames received on VLAN4 destined to VLAN2 with PCP priority set to 0 will have a priority of 5 set as they leave the router on VLAN4.

Four queues are supported and are structured as follows:

- Queue 1: PCP values 0 and 1 - Default
- Queue 2: PCP values 2 and 3 - Normal
- Queue 3: PCP values 4 and 5 - High
- Queue 4: PCP values 6 and 7 - Express

Value 7 is the highest priority and 0 is the lowest. These queues prioritise 802.1Q tagged frames as they are received on the port, these are hardware defined.

When 802.1Q frames are received on the port they are processed according to the above queues on arrival (even if not defined in the configuration). Then if value 'vlan_qos_map_ingress' is configured you can modify the PCP priority for egress if the frame was to be forwarded on another tagged interface.

When frames are received on an untagged VLAN interface configured with 'vlan_qos_map_egress' and are destined to tagged interface, 802.1Q tag will be created with a default priority of 0 and then the priority will be set according to the PCP value specified as the frames leave port.

16 QoS: type of service

SATEL routers are capable of implementing quality of service configurations on a per interface basis, which allows traffic prioritisation based on type of service criteria parameters.

16.1 QoS configuration overview

A minimal QoS configuration usually consists of:

- One interface section
- Some rules allocating packets to at least two buckets
- Configuration of the buckets

16.2 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
qos	interface
	classgroup
	class
	classify

16.3 Configuring QoS using the web interface

Browse to the router's IP address and login.

Select **Network tab -> QoS**. The QoS page appears. From this page you can configure interfaces that QoS is applied to as well as classification rules.

Figure 67: The quality of service page

To configure an interface, enter a relevant interface name and click **Add**. The Quality of Service page for that interface appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Quality of Service' configuration page for a WAN interface. The 'WAN' section contains the following parameters:

- Enable:** Checked
- Classification group:** default
- Calculate overhead:** Checked
- Half-duplex:** Checked
- Download speed (kbit/s):** 8000
- Upload speed (kbit/s):** 1000

At the bottom of the page are two buttons: 'Cancel' and 'Add'.

Figure 68: The quality of service page for WAN interface

The following parameters can be configured for the interface you have chosen. The name of the interfaces should match with the logical name given to the interface in the network configuration.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enabled UCI: qos.[interface].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables QoS interface. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Classification group UCI: qos. [interface].classgroup Opt: classgroup	Creates a mapping before previously created classgroup and interface to which it should be assigned to.				
Web: Calculate overhead UCI: qos. [interface].overhead Opt: overhead	Decreases upload and download ratio to prevent link saturation.				
Web: Half-duplex UCI: qos [interface].halfduplex Opt: halfduplex	Enables or disables half-duplex operation. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Download speed UCI: qos.[interface].download Opt: download	Download speed limit in kbits/sec.				
Web: Upload speed UCI: qos.[interface].upload=2000 Opt: upload	Upload speed limit in kbits/sec.				

Table 37: Information table for QoS page

To add classification rules, click **Add**. The Classification Rules section appears.

Configure each classification rule with the following parameters.

Figure 69: Parameters for classification rules

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description								
Web: Target UCI: Opt:	Creates and configures selected target bucket. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr><td>Normal</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Priority</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Low</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Express</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Normal		Priority		Low		Express	
Normal									
Priority									
Low									
Express									
Web: Source host UCI: Opt:	Source host.								
Web: Destination host UCI: Opt:	Destination host.								
Web: Service UCI: Opt:	Selectable service.								
Web: Protocol UCI: Opt:	Protocol to classify.								
Web: Ports UCI: Opt:	Upload speed kbits/sec.								
Web: Number of bytes UCI: Opt:	Number of bytes for bucket.								

Table 38: Information table for classification rules

16.4 Configuring QoS using UCI

You can also configure QoS using UCI. The configuration file is stored on:

/etc/config/qos

16.4.1 Interface

Defines the interface on which configured QoS settings will take place.

Each interface can have its own buffer. The interface section declares global characteristics of the connection on which the specified interface is communicating. The following options are defined within this section:

```
config interface 'ADSL'
    option classgroup 'Default'
    option enabled '1'
    option overhead '1'
    option halfduplex '0'
    option download '900'
    option upload '245'
```

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enabled UCI: qos.[interface].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables QoS interface. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Classification group UCI: qos. [interface].classgroup Opt: classgroup	Creates a mapping before previously created classgroup and interface to which it should be assigned to.				
Web: Calculate overhead UCI: qos. [interface].overhead Opt: overhead	Decrease upload and download ratio to prevent link saturation.				
Web: Half-duplex UCI: qos [interface].halfduplex Opt: halfduplex	Enables or disables half-duplex operation. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Download speed UCI: qos.[interface].download Opt: download	Download speed limit in kbytes/sec.				
Web: Upload speed UCI: qos.[interface].upload=2000 Opt:upload	Upload speed limit in kbytes/sec.				

16.4.2 Classgroup

As there is more than one interface you can have more than one classgroup.

```
config classgroup 'Default'
    option classes 'Express Normal'
    option default 'Normal'
```

UCI/Package Option	Description
UCI: qos.Default=classgroup Opt: Default	Specifies name of classgroup.
UCI: qos.Default.classes=Express Normal Opt: classes	Specifies the list of names of classes which should be part of classgroup.
qos.Default.default=Normal Opt: default	Defines which class is considered default.

16.4.3 Classes

Each bucket has its own configuration.

```
config class 'Normal'
    option packetsize '1500'
    option avgrate '30'
    option priority '5'

config class 'Express'
    option packetsize '1000'
    option maxsize '800'
    option avgrate '50'
    option priority '10'
    option limitrate '10'
```

UCI/Package Option	Description
UCI: qos.Normal=class Opt: Normal	Specifies class name.
UCI: qos.Normal.packetsize=1500 Opt: packetsize	Specifies packet size for the class in bytes.
UCI: qos.Normal.avgrate=30 Opt: avgrate	Average rate for this class, value in % of bandwidth in %.
UCI: qos.Normal.priority=5 Opt: priority	Specifies priority for the class in %.
UCI: qos.Express=class Opt: Express	Specifies class name.
UCI: qos.Express.packetsize=1000 Opt: packetsize	Specifies packet size for the class in bytes.
UCI: qos.Express.maxsize=800 Opt: maxsize	Specify max packet size in bytes.
UCI: qos.Express.avgrate=50 Opt: avgrate	Average rate for this class, value in % of bandwidth in %.
UCI: qos.Express.priority=10 Opt: priority	Specifies priority for the class in %.
UCI: qos.Express.limitrate=10 Opt: limitrate	Defines to how many % of the available bandwidth this class is capped to.

16.4.4 Classify

Classifiers match the traffic for desired class.

```
config classify
    option target 'Express'
    option proto 'udp'
```

UCI/Package Option	Description
UCI: qos.@classify[0]=classify Opt: classify	Part of classify rule.
UCI: qos.@classify[0].target=Express Opt: target	Specifies target class.
UCI: qos.@classify[0].proto=udp Opt: proto	Specifies protocol.

16.5 Example QoS configurations

```

config interface 'ADSL'
    option classgroup 'Default'
    option enabled '1'
    option overhead '1'
    option download '900'
    option upload '245'

config classgroup 'Default'
    option classes 'Express Normal'
    option default 'Normal'

config class 'Normal'
    option packetsize '1500'
    option avgrate '30'
    option priority '5'

config class 'Express'
    option packetsize '1000'
    option maxsize '800'
    option avgrate '50'
    option priority '10'
    option limitrate '10'

config classify
    option target 'Express'
    option proto 'udp'

```

Figure 70: The interface overview page showing two VLAN interfaces

16.6 Configuring VLAN using the UCI interface

You can configure VLANs through CLI. The VLAN configuration file is stored on:
/etc/config/network

```
# uci export network
package network
config interface 'vlan100'
    option proto 'static'
    option ifname 'eth0.100'
    option monitored '0'
    option ipaddr '192.168.100.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
    option gateway '192.168.100.10'
    option broadcast '192.168.100.255'
    option dns '8.8.8.8'
```

Modify these settings by running `uci set <parameter>` command.

When specifying the ifname ensure that it is written in dotted mode, that is, `eth1.100` where `eth1` is the physical interface assigned to VLAN tag 100.

Note: VLAN1 is, by default the native VLAN and will not be tagged.

17 Configuring static routes

It is possible to define arbitrary IPv4 routes on specific interfaces using route sections. As for aliases, multiple sections can be attached to an interface. These types of routes are most commonly known as static routes.

You can add static routes to the routing table to forward traffic to specific subnets when dynamic routing protocols are not used or they are not configured for such subnets. They can be created based on outgoing interface or next hop IP address.

17.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
network	route

17.2 Configuring static routes using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> Static Routes**. The Routes page appears.

Interface	Target	IPv4-Netmask	IPv4.Gateway	Metric	MTU
Host-IP or Network	<i>if target is a network</i>				

This section contains no values yet

Add

Interface	Target	IPv6-Gateway	Metric	MTU
	<i>IPv6-Address or Network (CIDR)</i>			

This section contains no values yet

Add

Save & Apply Save Reset

Figure 71: The routes page

In the IPv4 Routes section, click **Add**.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Interface UCI: network.@route[0].interface Opt: Interface	Specifies the logical interface name of the parent or master interface this route belongs to. It must refer to one of the defined interface sections.
Web: target UCI: network.@route[0].target Opt: target	Specifies the route network IP address.
Web: netmask UCI: network.@route[0].netmask Opt: netmask	Defines the route netmask. If omitted, 255.255.255.255 is assumed, which makes the target a host address.

Web: Gateway UCI: network.@route[0].gateway Opt: Gateway	Network gateway. If omitted, the gateway from the parent interface is taken. If set to 0.0.0.0 no gateway will be specified for the route.				
Web: Metric UCI: network.@route[0].metric Opt: metric	Specifies the route metric to use. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					
Web: MTU UCI: network.@route[0].mtu Opt:mtu	Defines a specific MTU for this route. If omitted, the MTU from the parent interface will be taken. <table border="1"><tr><td>Empty</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	Empty		Range	
Empty					
Range					

Table 39: Information table for IPv4 static routes section

17.3 Configuring IPv6 routes using the web interface

You can also specify IPv6 routes by defining one or more IPv6 routes. In the IPv6 routes section, click **Add**.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Interface UCI: network.@route[1].interface Opt: interface	Specifies the logical interface name of the parent or master interface this route belongs to. It must refer to one of the defined interface sections.				
Web: target UCI: network.@route[1].target Opt: target	Specifies the route network IP address, or subnet in CIDR notation: Example: 2001:0DB8:100:F00:BA3::1/64				
Web: Gateway UCI: network.@route[1].gateway Opt: Gateway	Network gateway. If omitted, the gateway from the parent interface is taken. If set to 0.0.0.0 no gateway will be specified for the route.				
Web: Metric UCI: network.@route[1].metric Opt: metric	Specifies the route metric to use. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					
Web: MTU UCI: network.@route[1].mtu Opt:mtu	Defines a specific MTU for this route. If omitted the MTU from the parent interface will be taken. <table border="1"><tr><td>Empty</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	Empty		Range	
Empty					
Range					

Table 40: Information table for IPv6 routes

When you have made your changes, click **Save & Apply**.

17.4 Configuring routes using command line

By default all routes are named 'route', it is identified by @route then the route's position in the package as a number. For example, for the first route in the package using UCI:

```
network.@route[0]=route
network.@route[0].interface=lan
```

Or using package options:

```
config route
    option 'interface' 'lan'
```

However, you can give a route a name if desired. For example, a route named 'myroute' will be network.myroute.

To define a named route using UCI, enter:

```
network.name_your_route=route
network.name_your_route.interface=lan
```

To define a named route using package options, enter:

```
config route 'name_your_route'
    option 'interface' 'lan'
```

17.5 IPv4 routes using UCI

The command line example routes in the subsections below do not have a configured name.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show network
network.@route[0]=route
network.@route[0].interface=lan
network.@route[0].target=3.3.3.10
network.@route[0].netmask=255.255.255.255
network.@route[0].gateway=10.1.1.2
network.@route[0].metric=3
network.@route[0].mtu=1400
```

17.6 IPv4 routes using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export network
package network
...
config route
    option interface 'lan'
    option target '2.2.2.2'
    option netmask '255.255.255.255'
    option gateway '192.168.100.1'
    option metric '1'
    option mtu '1500'
```

17.7 IPv6 routes using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show network
network.@route[1]=route
network.@route[1].interface=lan
network.@route[1].target=2001:0DB8:100:F00:BA3::1/64
network.@route[1].gateway=2001:0DB8:99::1
network.@route[1].metric=1
network.@route[1].mtu=1500
```

17.8 IPv6 routes using packages options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export network
package network
...
config route
    option interface 'lan'
    option target '2001:0DB8:100:F00:BA3::1/64'
    option gateway '2001:0DB8:99::1'
    option metric '1'
    option mtu '1500'
```

17.9 Static routes diagnostics

17.9.1 Route status

To show the current routing status, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# route -n
Kernel IP routing table
Destination      Gateway         Genmask        Flags Metric Ref    Use
Iface
192.168.100.0   *              255.255.255.0  U       0      0          0
eth0
```

Note: a route will only be displayed in the routing table when the interface is up.

18 Configuring BGP (Border Gateway Protocol)

BGP is a protocol for exchanging routing information between gateway hosts, each with its own router, in a network of autonomous systems. BGP is often the protocol used between gateway hosts on the internet. The routing table contains a list of known routers, the addresses they can reach, and a cost metric associated with the path to each router so that the best available route is chosen.

18.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
bgpd	routing
	peer
	routemap

18.2 Configuring BGP using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> BGP**. BGP configuration page appears. The page has three sections: Global Settings, BGP Neighbours and BGP Route Map.

The screenshot shows the BGP configuration interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for Status, System, Services, Network, and Logout. Below the navigation bar, the title "BGP" is displayed in blue. The page is divided into three main sections:

- Global Settings:** Contains an "Add" button.
- BGP Route Map:** Displays a message "This section contains no values yet" and includes an "Add" button.
- BGP Neighbours:** A table with columns for IP Address, Autonomous System Number, Route Map, and Route Map Direction. It displays a message "This section contains no values yet" and includes an "Add" button.

At the bottom right of the page are buttons for Save & Apply, Save, and Reset.

Figure 72: The BGP page

18.2.1 BGP global settings

To configure global BGP settings, click **Add**. The Global Settings page appears.

BGP

Global Settings

BGP Enabled

Router ID

Autonomous System Number

Network

These networks will be announced to neighbors

Figure 73: The BGP global settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description					
Web: BGP Enabled UCI: bgpd.bgpd.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables BGP protocol. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr></table>		1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.					
0	Disabled.					
Web: Router ID UCI: bgpd.bgpd.router_id Opt: router_id	1	Enabled.				
Web: Autonomous System Number UCI: bgpd.bgpd.asn Opt: asn	0	Disabled.				
Web: Network UCI: bgpd.bgpd.network Opt: list network	Sets a Unique Router ID in 4 byte format 0.0.0.0. Defines the ASN for the local router. Type in the ASN. <table border="1"><tr><td>Blank</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>1-4294967295</td></tr></table> Sets the list of networks that will be advertised to neighbours in prefix format 0.0.0.0/0. Separate multiple networks by a space using UCI. Ensure the network prefix matches the one shown in the routing table. See 'Routes' section below.		Blank		Range	1-4294967295
Blank						
Range	1-4294967295					

Table 41: Information table for BGP global settings

18.2.2 Optionally configure a BGP route map

Route maps provide a means to both filter and/or apply actions to a route. This allows a policy to be applied to routes. Route maps are an ordered list of route map entries each with a set of criteria that must be matched before specific attributes of the route are modified.

Scroll down to the BGP Route Map section.

Type in a name for the BGP route map name and then click **Add**. The ROUTEMAP configuration section appears. You can configure multiple route maps.

ROUTEMAP

Order: 10

Policy Type: Permit

Match Type: IP Address

Match Value: 192.168.101.1/32 (Format depends on Match Type. In case of IP Address and BGP Community value is parsed as list of items to match. Use '-' prefix to deny match.)

Set Option: Route Weight

Set Value: 150

Figure 74: The routemap section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Order UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.order Opt: order	Defines the Route Map order number.	
	Blank	
	Range	1-65535
Web: Policy Type UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.permit Opt: permit	Defines the actions taken if the entry is matched.	
	Deny	Denies the route.
	Permit	Permits the route so process the set actions for this entry.
Web: Match Type UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.match_type Opt: match_type	Defines match type. Available options are as follows:	
	IP address	Matches IP address.
	IP Next Hop	Matches next hop IP address.
	AS-Path	Matches AS-path.
	Route Metric	Matches route metric.
	BGP Community	Matches BGP community.
Web: Match value UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.match Opt: match	Defines the value of the match type. Format depends on the Match Type selected. In the case of IP address and BGP Community values, the match value is parsed as a list of items to match.	
Web: Set Option UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.set_type Opt: set_type	Defines the set option to be processed on a match. Available options are shown below.	
	None	
	IP Next Hop	Setting option for IP next hop.
	Local Preference	Setting option for Local Preference.
	Route Weight	Setting option for Route Weight.
	BGP MED	Setting option for BGP multi-exit discriminator (BGP metric).
	AS Path to Prepend	Setting option to prepend AS to AS path.
	BGP Community	Setting option for BGP community.
	IPv6 Next Hop Global	Setting option for IPv6 Next Hop Global.
	IPv6 Next Hop Local	Setting option for IPv6 Next Hop Local.
Web: Value UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.set Opt: set	Defines the set value when a match occurs. Value format depends on the set option you have selected.	

Table 42: Information table for routemap

18.2.3 Configure BGP neighbours

To configure BGP neighbours, in the BGP neighbours section, click **Add**. The BGP Neighbours page appears. Multiple BGP neighbours can be configured.

BGP neighbors			
IP Address	Autonomous System Number	Route Map	Route Map Direction
10.1.10.83	1		In
<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>			

Figure 75: The BGP neighbours section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: IP Address UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].ipaddr Opt: ipaddr	Sets the IP address of the neighbour.				
Web: Autonomous System Number UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].asn Opt: asn	Sets the ASN of the remote peer. <table border="1"><tr><td>Blank</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>1-4294967295</td></tr></table>	Blank		Range	1-4294967295
Blank					
Range	1-4294967295				
Web: Route Map UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].route_map Opt: route_map	Sets route map name to use with this neighbour.				
Web: Route Map Direction UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].route_map_in Opt: route_map_in	Defines the direction the route map should be applied. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>In</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Out</td></tr></table>	1	In	0	Out
1	In				
0	Out				

Table 43: Information table for BGP neighbours

18.3 Configuring BGP using UCI

You can also configure BGP using UCI. The configuration file is stored on **/etc/config/bgpd**

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show bgpd
bgpd.bgpd=routing
bgpd.bgpd.enabled=yes
bgpd.bgpd.router_id=3.3.3.3
bgpd.bgpd.asn=1
bgpd.bgpd.network=11.11.11.0/29 192.168.103.1/32
bgpd.@peer[0]=peer
bgpd.@peer[0].route_map_in=yes
bgpd.@peer[0].ipaddr=11.11.11.1
bgpd.@peer[0].asn=1
bgpd.@peer[0].route_map=ROUTEMAP
bgpd.ROUTEMAP=routemap
```

```

bgpd.ROUTEMAP.order=10
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.permit=yes
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.match_type=ip address
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.match=192.168.101.1/32
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.set_type=ip next-hop
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.set='192.168.101.2/32'

```

To change any of the above values use UCI set command.

18.4 Configuring BGP using packages options

```

root@GW_router:~# uci export bgpd
package bgpd
config routing 'bgpd'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option router_id '3.3.3.3'
    option asn '1'
    list network '11.11.11.0/29'
    list network '192.168.103.1/32'
config peer
    option route_map_in 'yes'
    option ipaddr '11.11.11.1'
    option asn '1'
    option route_map 'ROUTEMAP'

config routemap 'ROUTEMAP'
    option order '10'
    option permit 'yes'
    option match_type 'ip address'
    option match '192.168.101.1/32'
    option set_type 'ip next-hop'
    option set '192.168.101.2/32'

```

18.5 View routes statistics

To view routes statistics, in the top menu click **Status -> Routes**. The routing table appears.

Routes			
The following rules are currently active on this system.			
ARP			
IPv4-Address	MAC-Address	Interface	
192.168.210.100	50:b7:c3:0c:1e:4b	br-lan	
10.1.1.124	d4:ae:52:cd:61:21	eth1	
10.1.10.83	00:13:60:51:39:56	eth1	
Active IPv4-Routes			
Network	Target	IPv4-Gateway	Metric
wan	0.0.0.0/0	10.64.64.64	0
wan	0.0.0.0/0	10.64.64.64	1
LAN2	10.1.0.0/16	0.0.0.0	0
wan	10.64.64.64	0.0.0.0	0
LAN2	192.168.101.1	10.1.10.83	0
lan	192.168.210.0/24	0.0.0.0	0
wan	217.67.129.143	10.64.64.64	0
Active IPv6-Routes			
Network	Target	IPv6-Gateway	Metric
loopback	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	FFFFFF
loopback	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	FFFFFF
loopback	0:0:0:0:0:0:1	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	0000000
LAN2	FF02:0:0:0:0:0:FB	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	0000000
(base0)	FF00:0:0:0:0:0:8	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	00000100
lan	FF00:0:0:0:0:0:8	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	00000100
LAN2	FF00:0:0:0:0:0:8	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	00000100
loopback	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	0:0:0:0:0:0:0/0	FFFFFF

Figure 76: The routing table

To view routes via the command line, enter:

```
root@support:~# route -n
Kernel IP routing table
Destination     Gateway         Genmask        Flags Metric Ref    Use
Iface
10.1.0.0        0.0.0.0        255.255.0.0   U      0      0      0 br-
lan2
```

19 Configuring OSPF (Open Shortest Path First)

19.1 Introduction

OSPF is a standardised Link State routing protocol, designed to scale efficiently to support larger networks. Link State protocols track the status and connection type of each link and produce a calculated metric based on these and other factors, including some set by the network administrator. Link State protocols will take a path which has more hops, but that uses a faster medium over a path using a slower medium with fewer hops.

- OSPF adheres to the following Link State characteristics:
- OSPF employs a hierarchical network design using areas.
- OSPF will form neighbour relationships with adjacent routers in the same area.
- Instead of advertising the distance to connected networks, OSPF advertises the status of directly connected links using Link-State Advertisements (LSAs).
- OSPF sends updates (LSAs) when there is a change to one of its links, and will only send the change in the update. LSAs are additionally refreshed every 30 minutes.
- OSPF traffic is multicast either to address 224.0.0.5 (all OSPF routers) or 224.0.0.6 (all designated routers).
- OSPF uses the Dijkstra Shortest Path First algorithm to determine the shortest path.
- OSPF is a classless protocol, and therefore supports variable Length Subnet Masks (VLSMs).

Other characteristics of OSPF include:

- OSPF supports only IP routing.
- OSPF routes have an administrative distance is 110.
- OSPF uses cost as its metric, which is computed based on the bandwidth of the link. OSPF has no hop-count limit.

The OSPF process builds and maintains three separate tables:

- **A neighbour table** containing a list of all neighbouring routers
- **A topology table** containing a list of all possible routes to all known networks within an area
- **A routing table** containing the best route for each known network

19.1.1 OSPF areas

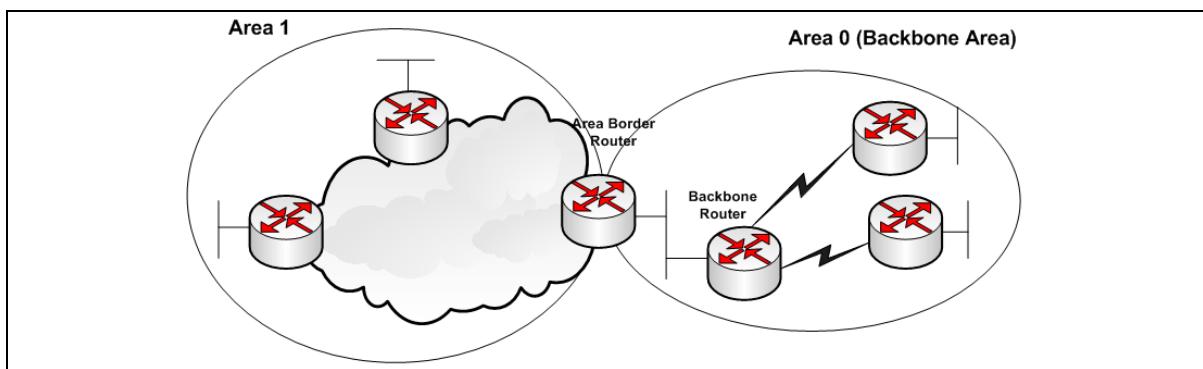


Figure 89: OSPF areas

OSPF has a number of features that allow it to scale well for larger networks. One of these features is OSPF areas. OSPF areas break up the topology so that routers in one area know less topology information about the subnets in the other area, and they do not know anything about the routers in the other area at all. With smaller topology databases, routers consume less memory and take less processing time to run SPF.

The Area Border Router (ABR) is the border between two areas. The ABR does not advertise full topology information about the part of the network in area 0 to routers in area 1. Instead the ABR advertises summary information about the subnets in area 0. Area 1 will just see a number of subnets reachable via area 0.

19.1.2 OSPF neighbours

OSPF forms neighbour relationships, called adjacencies, with other routers in the same Area by exchanging 'Hello' packets to multicast address 224.0.0.5. Only after an adjacency is formed can routers share routing information.

Each OSPF router is identified by a unique router ID. The router ID can be determined in one of three ways:

- The router ID can be manually specified.
- If not manually specified, the highest IP address configured on any Loopback interface on the router will become the router ID.
- If no loopback interface exists, the highest IP address configured on any physical interface will become the router ID.

By default, Hello packets are sent out OSPF-enabled interfaces every 10 seconds for broadcast and point-to-point interfaces, and 30 seconds for non-broadcast and point-to-multipoint interfaces.

OSPF also has a 'Dead Interval', which indicates how long a router will wait without hearing any hellos before announcing a neighbour as 'down'. The default setting for the Dead Interval is 40 seconds for broadcast and point-to-point interfaces, and 120 seconds for non-broadcast and point-to-multipoint interfaces. By default, the Dead Interval timer is four times the Hello interval.

OSPF routers will only become neighbours if the following parameters within a Hello packet are identical on each router:

- Area ID
- Area Type (stub, NSSA, etc.)
- Prefix
- Subnet Mask
- Hello Interval
- Dead Interval
- Network Type (broadcast, point-to-point, etc.)
- Authentication

The Hello packets also serve as keepalives to allow routers to quickly discover if a neighbour is down. Hello packets also contain a neighbour field that lists the router IDs of all neighbours the router is connected to. A neighbour table is constructed from the OSPF Hello packets, which includes the following information:

- The router ID of each neighbouring router
- The current 'state' of each neighbouring router
- The interface directly connecting to each neighbour
- The IP address of the remote interface of each neighbour

19.1.3 OSPF designated routers

In multi-access networks such as Ethernet, there is the possibility of many neighbour relationships on the same physical segment. This leads to a considerable amount of unnecessary Link State Advertisement (LSA) traffic. If a link of a router were to fail, it would flood this information to all neighbours. Each neighbour, in turn, would then flood that same information to all other neighbours. This is a waste of bandwidth and processor load.

To prevent this, OSPF will elect a Designated Router (DR) for each multi-access networks, accessed via multicast address 224.0.0.6. For redundancy purposes, a Backup Designated Router (BDR) is also elected.

OSPF routers will form adjacencies with the DR and BDR. If a change occurs to a link, the update is forwarded only to the DR, which then forwards it to all other routers. This greatly reduces the flooding of LSAs. DR and BDR elections are determined by a router's OSPF priority, which is configured on a per-interface basis (a router can have interfaces in multiple multi-access networks). The router with the highest priority becomes the DR; second highest becomes the BDR. If there is a tie in priority, whichever router has the highest Router ID will become the DR.

19.1.4 OSPF neighbour states

Neighbour adjacencies will progress through several states, described in the table below.

State	Description						
Down	Indicates that no Hellos have been heard from the neighbouring router						
Init	Indicates a Hello packet has been heard from the neighbour, but two-way communication has not yet been initialized.						
2-Way	Indicates that bidirectional communication has been established. Recall that Hello packets contain a neighbour field. Thus, communication is considered 2-Way once a router sees its own Router ID in its neighbour's Hello Packet. Designated and Backup Designated Routers are elected at this stage.						
ExStart	Indicates that the routers are preparing to share link state information. Master/slave relationships are formed between routers to determine who will begin the exchange.						
Exchange	Indicates that the routers are exchanging Database Descriptors (DBDs). DBDs contain a description of the router's Topology Database. A router will examine a neighbour's DBD to determine if it has information to share.						
Loading	Indicates the routers are finally exchanging Link State Advertisements, containing information about all links connected to each router. Essentially, routers are sharing their topology tables with each other.						
Full	Indicates that the routers are fully synchronized. The topology table of all routers in the area should now be identical. Depending on the role of the neighbour, the state may appear as: <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>Full/DR</td> <td>Indicating that the neighbour is a Designated Router (DR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Full/BDR</td> <td>Indicating that the neighbour is a Backup Designated Router (BDR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Full/DROther</td> <td>Indicating that the neighbour is neither the DR nor BDR. On a multi-access network, OSPF routers will only form Full adjacencies with DRs and BDRs. Non-DRs and non-BDRs will still form adjacencies, but will remain in a 2-Way State. This is normal OSPF behaviour.</td> </tr> </table>	Full/DR	Indicating that the neighbour is a Designated Router (DR)	Full/BDR	Indicating that the neighbour is a Backup Designated Router (BDR)	Full/DROther	Indicating that the neighbour is neither the DR nor BDR. On a multi-access network, OSPF routers will only form Full adjacencies with DRs and BDRs. Non-DRs and non-BDRs will still form adjacencies, but will remain in a 2-Way State. This is normal OSPF behaviour.
Full/DR	Indicating that the neighbour is a Designated Router (DR)						
Full/BDR	Indicating that the neighbour is a Backup Designated Router (BDR)						
Full/DROther	Indicating that the neighbour is neither the DR nor BDR. On a multi-access network, OSPF routers will only form Full adjacencies with DRs and BDRs. Non-DRs and non-BDRs will still form adjacencies, but will remain in a 2-Way State. This is normal OSPF behaviour.						

Table 50: Neighbour adjacency states

19.1.5 OSPF network types

OSPF's functionality is different across several different network topology types.

State	Description
Broadcast Multi-Access	Indicates a topology where broadcast occurs. Examples include Ethernet, Token Ring and ATM. OSPF characteristics are: OSPF will elect DRs and BDRs Traffic to DRs and BDRs is multicast to 224.0.0.6. Traffic from DRs and BDRs to other routers is multicast to 224.0.0.5 Neighbours do not need to be manually specified.
Point-to-Point	Indicates a topology where two routers are directly connected. An example would be a point-to-point T1. OSPF characteristics are: OSPF will not elect DRs and BDRs All OSPF traffic is multicast to 224.0.0.5 Neighbours do not need to be manually specified
Point-to-Multipoint	Indicates a topology where one interface can connect to multiple destinations. Each connection between a source and destination is treated as a point-to-point link. An example would be point to Point-to-Multipoint Frame Relay. OSPF characteristics are: OSPF will not elect DRs and BDRs. All OSPF traffic is multicast to 224.0.0.5. Neighbours do not need to be manually specified.

Non-broadcast Multi-access Network (NBMA) Indicates a topology where one interface can connect to multiple destinations; however, broadcasts cannot be sent across a NBMA network. An example would be Frame Relay. OSPF characteristics are: OSPF will elect DRs and BDRs. OSPF neighbours must be manually defined, thus All OSPF traffic is unicast instead of multicast. Note: on non-broadcast networks, neighbours must be manually specified, as multicast Hello's are not allowed

Table 51: OSPF functionality over different topology types

19.1.6 The OSPF hierarchy

OSPF is a hierarchical system that separates an autonomous system into individual areas. OSPF traffic can either be:

- intra-area (within one area),
- inter-area (between separate areas), or
- external (from another AS).

OSPF routers build a topology database of all links within their area, and all routers within an area will have an identical topology database. Routing updates between these routers will only contain information about links local to their area. Limiting the topology database to include only the local area conserves bandwidth and reduces CPU loads.

Area 0 is required for OSPF to function, and is considered the backbone area. As a rule, all other areas must have a connection into area 0, though this rule can be bypassed using virtual links. Area 0 is often referred to as the transit area to connect all other areas.

OSPF routers can belong to multiple areas, and therefore contain separate topology databases for each area. These routers are known as Area Border Routers (ABRs).

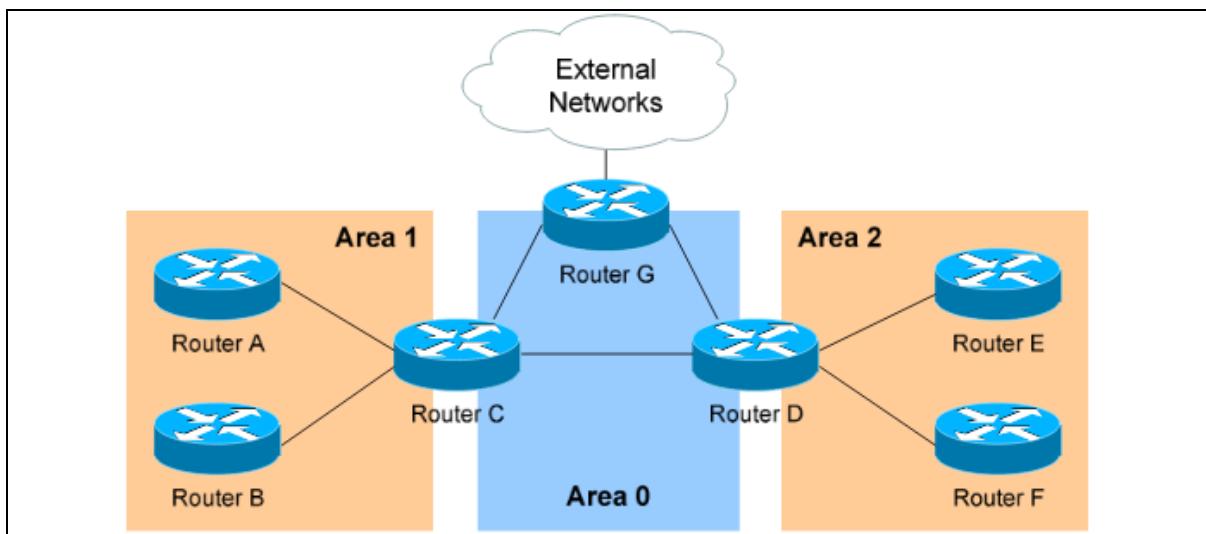


Figure 90: OSPF hierarchy

In the above example three areas exist: Area 0, Area 1, and Area 2.

Area 0 is the backbone area for this autonomous system.

Both Area 1 and Area 2 must directly connect to Area 0. Routers A and B belong fully to Area 1, while Routers E and F belong fully to Area 2. These are known as Internal Routers.

Router C belongs to both Area 0 and Area 1; so it is an ABR. Because it has an interface in Area 0, it can also be considered a Backbone Router (BR). The same can be said for Router D, as it belongs to both Area 0 and Area 2.

Router G also belongs to Area 0 however it also has a connection to the internet, which is outside this autonomous system. This makes Router G an Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR).

A router can become an ASBR in one of two ways:

- By connecting to a separate Autonomous System, such as the internet
- By redistributing another routing protocol into the OSPF process.

ASBRs provide access to external networks. OSPF defines two types of external routes, as shown in the table below.

Type 2 (E2)	Includes only the external cost to the destination network. External cost is the metric being advertised from outside the OSPF domain. This is the default type assigned to external routes.
Type 1 (E1)	Includes both the external cost, and the internal cost to reach the ASBR, to determine the total metric to reach the destination network. Type 1 routes are always preferred over Type 2 routes to the same destination.

Table 52: Types of external routes

19.1.7 OSPF router types

The four separate OSPF router types are shown in the table below.

Route Type	Description
Internal Router	All router interfaces belong to only one area.
Area Border Router (ABR)	Have interfaces in at least two separate areas.
Backbone Router	Have at least one interface in area 0.
Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR)	Have a connection to a separate autonomous system.

19.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
ospfd	routing network interface

19.3 Configuring OSPF using the web interface

Select **Network -> OSPF**. The OSPF page appears.

There are three sections in the OSPF page:

Section	Description
Global Settings	Enables OSPF and configures the OSPF routing section containing global configuration parameters. The web automatically names the routing section ospfd
Topology Configuration	Configures the network sections.
Interfaces Configuration	Configures the interface sections. Defines interface configuration for OSPF and interface specific parameters

19.3.1 Global settings

The Global Settings section configures the ospfd routing section. The web automatically names the routing section 'ospfd'.

OSPF

Global Settings

OSPF Enabled

Router ID IP address format, must be unique, if blank it generates Router ID automatically

Make Default Router

Figure 91: The OSPF global settings configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: OSPF Enabled UCI: ospfd.ospfd.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables OSPF advertisements on router. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Router ID UCI: ospfd.ospfd.router_id Opt: router_id	This sets the Router ID of the OSPF process. The Router ID may be an IP address of the router, but need not be - it can be any arbitrary 32bit number. However it MUST be unique within the entire OSPF domain to the OSPF speaker. If one is not specified, then ospfd will obtain a router-ID automatically from the zebra daemon. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Empty</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Empty		Range	
Empty					
Range					
Web: Make Default Router UCI: ospfd.ospfd.default_info_originate Opt: default_info_originate	Defines whether to originate an AS-External (type-5) LSA describing a default route into all external-routing capable areas, of the specified metric and metric type. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: ospfd.ospfd.vty_enabled Opt: vty_enabled	Enable vty for OSPFd (telnet to localhost:2604)				

Table 53: Information table for OSPF global settings

19.3.2 Topology configuration

The Topology section configures the ospfd network section. This section specifies the OSPF enabled interface(s). The router can provide network information to the other OSPF routers via this interface.

Note: to advertise OSPF on an interface, the network mask prefix length for the topology configuration statement for the desired interface advertisement must be equal or smaller (IE. larger network) than the network mask prefix length for the interface.

For example, the topology configuration statement in the screenshot below does not enable OSPF on an interface with address 12.1.1.1/23, but it would on an interface with address 12.1.1.129/25.

Topology Configuration			
Network	Mask Length	Area	Stub Area
12.1.1.1	24	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Only for non-backbone areas
Add			

Figure 92: The OSPF Topology configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Network UCI: ospfd.@network[0].ip_addr Opt: ip_addr	Specify the IP address for OSPF enabled interface. Format: A.B.C.D				
Web: Mask Length UCI: ospfd.@network[0].mask_length Opt: mask_length	Specify the mask length for OSPF enabled interface. The mask length should be entered in CIDR notation.				
Web: Area UCI: ospfd.@network[0].area Opt: area	Specify the area number for OSPF enabled interface.				
Web: Stub Area UCI: ospfd.@network[0].stub_area Opt: stub_area	Only for non-backbone areas. Configure the area to be a stub area. That is, an area where no router originates routes external to OSPF and hence an area where all external routes are via the ABR(s). ABRs for such an area do not need to pass AS-External LSAs (type-5s) or ASBR-Summary LSAs (type-4) into the area. They need only pass Network-Summary (type-3) LSAs into such an area, along with a default-route summary. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 54: Information table for OSPF topology configuration

19.3.3 Interfaces configuration

The Interfaces section contains settings to configure the ospfd interface. It defines interface configuration for OSPF and interface specific parameters.

OSPFv2 allows packets to be authenticated using either an insecure plain text password, included with the packet, or by a more secure MD5 based HMAC (keyed-Hashing for Message AuthentiCation). Enabling authentication prevents routes being updated by unauthenticated remote routers, but still can allow routes, that is, the entire OSPF routing table, to be queried remotely, potentially by anyone on the internet, via OSPFv1.

This section defines key_chains to be used for MD5 authentication

Interfaces Configuration

Interface <input type="radio"/> PPPoE:  <input type="radio"/> l2tpun:  <input type="radio"/> lan:  <input type="radio"/> lan2:  <input type="radio"/> lan3:  <input type="radio"/> lan4:  <input type="radio"/> lan5:  <input type="radio"/> lan6:  <input type="radio"/> lan7:  <input checked="" type="radio"/> lan8:  <input type="radio"/> loopback:  <input type="radio"/> wlan100:  <input type="radio"/> wan: 
Network Type <input type="text" value="broadcast"/> Leave as default if unknown. Default depends on the type of interface
Passive <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Hello Interval * <input type="text" value="10"/> Defaults: broadcast/point-to-point 10 secs, non-broadcast/point-to-multipoint 30 secs
Dead Interval * <input type="text" value="40"/> Defaults: broadcast/point-to-point 40 secs, non-broadcast/point-to-multipoint 120 secs
Authentication <input type="text" value="text"/>
Text Auth. Key <input type="text" value="secret"/>

Figure 93: The OSPF Interfaces configuration section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description										
Web: Interface UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].ospf_interface Opt: ospf_interface	Defines the interface name										
Web: Network Type UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].network_type Opt: network_type	<p>Defines network type for specified interface.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px; width: 50%;">Default</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">Autodetect – it will be broadcast. If broadcast is not supported on that interface then point-to-point.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">broadcast</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">non-broadcast</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">point-to-point</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">point-to-multipoint</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"></td> </tr> </table>	Default	Autodetect – it will be broadcast. If broadcast is not supported on that interface then point-to-point.	broadcast		non-broadcast		point-to-point		point-to-multipoint	
Default	Autodetect – it will be broadcast. If broadcast is not supported on that interface then point-to-point.										
broadcast											
non-broadcast											
point-to-point											
point-to-multipoint											
Web: Passive UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].passive Opt: passive	<p>Do not send hello packets on the given interface, but do advertise the interface as a stub link in the router-LSA (Link State Advertisement) for this router.</p> <p>This allows you to advertise addresses on such connected interfaces without having to originate AS-External/Type-5 LSAs (which have global flooding scope) as would occur if connected addresses were redistributed into OSPF. This is the only way to advertise non-OSPF links into stub areas.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px; width: 25%;">0</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">1</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										

Web: Hello Interval UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].hello_interval Opt: hello_interval	Defines the number of seconds for the Hello Interval timer value. A Hello packet will be sent every timer value seconds on the specified interface. This value must be the same for all routers attached to a common network. The default is every 10 seconds for broadcast and point-to-point interfaces, and 30 seconds for non-broadcast and point-to-multipoint interfaces.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>10</td><td>10 seconds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>.</td></tr> </table>	10	10 seconds	Range	.		
10	10 seconds						
Range	.						
Web: Dead Interval UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].dead_interval Opt: dead_interval	Defines the number of seconds for the Dead Interval timer value used for Wait Timer and Inactivity Timer. This value must be the same for all routers attached to a common network. The default is 40 seconds for broadcast and point-to-point interfaces, and 120 seconds for non-broadcast and point-to-multipoint interfaces. By default, the Dead Interval timer is four times the Hello interval.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>40</td><td>40 seconds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>.</td></tr> </table>	40	40 seconds	Range	.		
40	40 seconds						
Range	.						
Web: Authentication UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].auth_mode Opt: auth_mode	OSPFv2 (only) allows packets to be authenticated via either an insecure plain text password, included with the packet, or via a more secure MD5 based HMAC (keyed-Hashing for Message AuthentiCation). Enabling authentication prevents routes being updated by unauthenticated remote routers, but still can allow routes (i.e. the entire OSPF routing table) to be queried remotely, potentially by anyone on the internet, via OSPFv1.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>no</td><td>Default value. No authentication.</td></tr> <tr> <td>md5</td><td>Set the interface with OSPF MD5 authentication</td></tr> <tr> <td>text</td><td>Set the interface with OSPF simple password authentication.</td></tr> </table>	no	Default value. No authentication.	md5	Set the interface with OSPF MD5 authentication	text	Set the interface with OSPF simple password authentication.
no	Default value. No authentication.						
md5	Set the interface with OSPF MD5 authentication						
text	Set the interface with OSPF simple password authentication.						
Web: Text Auth. Key UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].text_auth_key Opt: text_auth_key	This command sets authentication string for text authentication. text_auth_key option can have length up to 8 characters. Displayed only when Authentication is set to text.						
Web: Key ID UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].key_id Opt: key_id	Specifies key ID. Must be unique and match at both ends. Displayed only when Authentication is set to MD5.						
Web: MD5 Auth. Key UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].md5_auth_key Opt: md5_auth_key	Specify Keyed MD5 chain. Displayed only when Authentication is set to MD5.						

Table 55: Information table for OSPF Interface commands

19.4 Configuring OSPF using the command line

OSPF is configured under the ospfd package /etc/config/ospfd.

There are three config sections: ospfd, interface and network.

You can configure multiple interface and network sections.

By default, all OSPF interface instances are named interface, instances are identified by @interface then the interface position in the package as a number. For example, for the first interface in the package using UCI:

```
ospfd.@interface[0]=interface
ospfd.@interface[0].ospf_interface=lan
```

Or using package options:

```
config interface
    option ospf_interface 'lan'
```

By default, all OSPF network instances are named network, it is identified by @network then the interface position in the package as a number. For example, for the first network in the package using UCI:

```
ospf.0=network
ospf.0.ip_addr=12.1.1.1
```

Or using package options:

```
config network
    option ip_addr '12.1.1.1'
```

19.5 OSPF using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show ospfd
ospf.ospfd=routing
ospf.ospfd.enabled=yes
ospf.ospfd.default_info_originate=yes
ospf.ospfd.router_id=1.2.3.4
ospf.0=network
ospf.0.ip_addr=12.1.1.1
ospf.0.mask_length=24
ospf.0.area=0
ospf.0.stub_area=yes
ospf.0=interface
ospf.0.ospf_interface=lan8
ospf.0.hello_interval=10
ospf.0.dead_interval=40
ospf.0.network_type=broadcast
ospf.0.passive=yes
ospf.0.auth_mode=text
ospf.0.text_auth_key=secret
ospf.1=interface
ospf.1.ospf_interface=lan7
ospf.1.network_type=point-to-point
ospf.1.passive=no
```

```
ospfd.@interface[1].hello_interval=30
ospfd.@interface[1].dead_interval=120
ospfd.@interface[1].auth_mode=md5
ospfd.@interface[1].key_id=1
ospfd.@interface[1].md5_auth_key=test
```

19.6 OSPF using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export ospfd
package ospfd

config routing 'ospfd'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option default_info_originate 'yes'
    option router_id '1.2.3.4'

config network
    option ip_addr '12.1.1.1'
    option mask_length '24'
    option area '0'
    option stub_area 'yes'

config interface
    option ospf_interface 'lan8'
    option hello_interval '10'
    option dead_interval '40'
    option network_type 'broadcast'
    option passive 'yes'
    option auth_mode 'text'
    option text_auth_key 'secret'

config interface
    option ospf_interface 'lan7'
    option network_type 'point-to-point'
    option passive 'no'
    option hello_interval '30'
    option dead_interval '120'
```

```
option auth_mode 'md5'  
option key_id '1'  
option md5_auth_key 'test'
```

19.7 OSPF diagnostics

19.7.1 Route status

To show the current routing status, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# route -n  
  
Kernel IP routing table  
  
Destination     Gateway         Genmask        Flags Metric Ref Use  
Iface  
  
0.0.0.0         10.206.4.65   0.0.0.0       UG    1      0      0  
usb0  
  
10.1.0.0        0.0.0.0       255.255.0.0   U     0      0      0  
eth1  
  
10.206.4.64     0.0.0.0       255.255.255.252 U     0      0      0  
usb0  
  
11.11.11.0      0.0.0.0       255.255.255.248 U     0      0      0  
gre-GRE  
  
89.101.154.151  10.206.4.65  255.255.255.255 UGH   0      0      0  
usb0  
  
192.168.100.0   0.0.0.0       255.255.255.0   U     0      0      0  
eth0  
  
192.168.101.1   11.11.11.1   255.255.255.255 UGH   11     0      0  
gre-GRE  
192.168.104.1   11.11.11.4   255.255.255.255 UGH   20     0      0  
gre-GRE
```

Note: a route will only be displayed in the routing table when the interface is up.

19.7.2 Tracing OSPF packets

Typically, OSPF uses IP as its transport protocol. The well-known IP protocol type for OSPF traffic is 0x59. To trace OSPF packets on any interface on the router, enter:
tcpdump -i any -n proto ospf &

```
root@GW_router:~# tcpdump -i any -n proto ospf &  
root@GW_router:~# tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for  
full protocol decode
```

```
listening on any, link-type LINUX_SLL (Linux cooked), capture size 65535
bytes
```

To stop tracing enter `fg` to bring tracing task to foreground, and then <**CTRL-C**> to stop the trace.

```
root@GW_router:~# fg
tcpdump -i any -n proto ospf
^C
33 packets captured
33 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

19.8 Quagga/Zebra console

Quagga is the routing protocol suite embedded in the router firmware. Quagga is split into different daemons for implementation of each routing protocol. Zebra is a core daemon for Quagga, providing the communication layer to the underlying Linux kernel, and routing updates to the client daemons.

Quagga has a console interface to Zebra for advanced debugging of the routing protocols.

To access, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# telnet localhost zebra

Entering character mode
Escape character is '^]'.

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.21).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

User Access Verification

Password:
```

To see OSPF routing from Zebra console, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# sh ip route
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
```

```

O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, H - HSLS, o - OLSR,
b - BATMAN, A - Babel,
> - selected route, * - FIB route

K>* 0.0.0.0/0 via 10.206.4.65, usb0
O 10.1.0.0/16 [110/11] via 11.11.11.1, gre-GRE, 02:35:28
C>* 10.1.0.0/16 is directly connected, eth1
C>* 10.206.4.64/30 is directly connected, usb0
O 11.11.11.0/29 [110/10] is directly connected, gre-GRE, 02:35:29
C>* 11.11.11.0/29 is directly connected, gre-GRE
K>* 89.101.154.151/32 via 10.206.4.65, usb0
C>* 127.0.0.0/8 is directly connected, lo
C>* 192.168.100.0/24 is directly connected, eth0
O>* 192.168.101.1/32 [110/11] via 11.11.11.1, gre-GRE, 02:35:28
O>* 192.168.104.1/32 [110/20] via 11.11.11.4, gre-GRE, 02:30:45
O 192.168.105.1/32 [110/10] is directly connected, lo, 02:47:52
C>* 192.168.105.1/32 is directly connected, lo

```

19.8.1 OSPF debug console

When option `tty_enabled` (see Global settings section above) is enabled in the OSPF configuration, OSPF debug console can be accessed for advanced OSPF debugging.

To access OSPF debug console enter: `telnet localhost ospfd` (password zebra)

```

root@GW_router:~# telnet localhost ospfd

Entering character mode
Escape character is '^]'.

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.21).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

User Access Verification

Password:

```

To see OSPF routing from OSPF debug console, enter: `sh ip ospf route`

```

UUT> sh ip ospf route
=====
OSPF network routing table =====
N    10.1.0.0/16          [11] area: 0.0.0.0
                                         via 11.11.11.1, gre-GRE
N    11.11.11.0/29         [10] area: 0.0.0.0
                                         directly attached to gre-GRE
N    192.168.101.1/32      [11] area: 0.0.0.0
                                         via 11.11.11.1, gre-GRE
N    192.168.104.1/32      [20] area: 0.0.0.0
                                         via 11.11.11.4, gre-GRE
N    192.168.105.1/32      [10] area: 0.0.0.0
                                         directly attached to lo

=====
OSPF router routing table =====

=====
OSPF external routing table =====

```

To see OSPF neighbours from OSPF debug console, enter: `sh ip ospf neighbour`

Neighbor ID	Pri	State	Dead Time	Address	Interface
RXmtL RqstL DBsmL					
1.1.1.1	255	Full/DR	33.961s	11.11.11.1	gre-
GRE:11.11.11.5	0	0	0		

To see OSPF interface details from OSPF debug console, enter: `sh ip ospf interface`

```

root@GW_router:~# sh ip ospf interface
base0 is up
  ifindex 8, MTU 1518 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  OSPF not enabled on this interface

eth0 is up
  ifindex 9, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  OSPF not enabled on this interface

eth1 is up

```

```
ifindex 10, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit
<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,PROMISC,MULTICAST>

OSPF not enabled on this interface

eth2 is down

ifindex 11, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>

OSPF not enabled on this interface

eth3 is down

ifindex 12, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>

OSPF not enabled on this interface

eth4 is down

ifindex 13, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>

OSPF not enabled on this interface

eth5 is down

ifindex 14, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>

OSPF not enabled on this interface

eth6 is down

ifindex 15, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>

OSPF not enabled on this interface

eth7 is down

ifindex 16, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>

OSPF not enabled on this interface

gre-GRE is up

ifindex 19, MTU 1472 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,RUNNING,MULTICAST>

Internet Address 11.11.11.5/29, Area 0.0.0.0

MTU mismatch detection:enabled

Router ID 192.168.105.1, Network Type BROADCAST, Cost: 10

Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State Backup, Priority 1

Designated Router (ID) 1.1.1.1, Interface Address 11.11.11.1

Backup Designated Router (ID) 192.168.105.1, Interface Address 11.11.11.5

Multicast group memberships: OSPFAllRouters OSPFDesignatedRouters

Timer intervals configured, Hello 10s, Dead 40s, Wait 40s, Retransmit 5

Hello due in 3.334s

Neighbor Count is 1, Adjacent neighbor count is 1

gre0 is down

ifindex 6, MTU 1476 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <NOARP>

OSPF not enabled on this interface
```

```
ifb0 is down
    ifindex 2, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,NOARP>
    OSPF not enabled on this interface

ifb1 is down
    ifindex 3, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,NOARP>
    OSPF not enabled on this interface

lo is up
    ifindex 1, MTU 16436 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,LOOPBACK,RUNNING>
    Internet Address 192.168.105.1/32, Broadcast 192.168.105.1, Area 0.0.0.0
    MTU mismatch detection:enabled
    Router ID 192.168.105.1, Network Type LOOPBACK, Cost: 10
    Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State Loopback, Priority 1
    No designated router on this network
    No backup designated router on this network
    Multicast group memberships: <None>
    Timer intervals configured, Hello 10s, Dead 40s, Wait 40s, Retransmit 5
        Hello due in inactive
    Neighbor Count is 0, Adjacent neighbor count is 0

sit0 is down
    ifindex 7, MTU 1480 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <NOARP>
    OSPF not enabled on this interface

teql0 is down
    ifindex 4, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <NOARP>
    OSPF not enabled on this interface

tunl0 is down
    ifindex 5, MTU 1480 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <NOARP>
    OSPF not enabled on this interface

usb0 is up
    ifindex 17, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
    OSPF not enabled on this interface
```

To see OSPF database details from OSPF debug console, enter: sh ip ospf database

```
root@GW_router:~# sh ip ospf database

        OSPF Router with ID (192.168.105.1)
```

Router Link States (Area 0.0.0.0)

Link ID	ADV Router	Age	Seq#	CkSum	Link count
1.1.1.1	1.1.1.1	873	0x80006236	0xd591	3
192.168.104.1	192.168.104.1	596	0x8000000a	0x3a2d	2
192.168.105.1	192.168.105.1	879	0x8000000b	0x4919	2

Net Link States (Area 0.0.0.0)

Link ID	ADV Router	Age	Seq#	CkSum
11.11.11.1	1.1.1.1	595	0x80000004	0x5712

20 Configuring a mobile connection

20.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
network	interface

20.2 Configuring a mobile connection using the web interface

Note: if you are creating multiple mobile interfaces, simply repeat the steps in this chapter for each interface. Multiple interfaces are required for dual SIM or multiple radio module scenarios. Configuring static routes and/or Multi-WAN can be used to manage these interfaces.

In the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces Overview page appears.

20.2.1 Create a new mobile interface

To create a new mobile interface, in the Interface Overview section, click **Add new interface**. The Create Interface page appears. In the examples below, 3G has been used for the interface name.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Interface' page with the following fields and options:

- Name of the new interface: (with a note: "The allowed characters are: A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _")
- Protocol of the new interface:
- Create a bridge over multiple interfaces:
- Cover the following interface:
 - Ethernet Adapter: "eth0" (lan)
 - Ethernet Adapter: "eth1" (lan1)
 - Ethernet Adapter: "eth2"
 - Ethernet Adapter: "eth3"
 - Ethernet Adapter: "eth4"
 - Ethernet Adapter: "lo" (loopback)
 - Ethernet Adapter: "teq10"
 - Ethernet Adapter: "tunl0"
 - Custom Interface:
- Note: If you choose an interface here which is part of another network, it will be moved into this network.

At the bottom are 'Back to Overview' and 'Submit' buttons.

Figure 82: The create interface page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description																										
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network.3G=interface Opt: interface	Allowed characters are A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _																										
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.3G.proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td> <td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td> <td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td> <td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td> <td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4		IPv6-over-IPv4		GRE		IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.	PPP		PPPoE		PPPoATM		LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4																											
IPv6-over-IPv4																											
GRE																											
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.																										
PPP																											
PPPoE																											
PPPoATM																											
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.3G.type Opt: type	Enables bridge between two interfaces. Not relevant when configuring a mobile interface. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.																						
0	Disabled.																										
1	Enabled.																										
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.3G.ifname Opt: ifname	Select interfaces for bridge connection. Not relevant when configuring a mobile interface.																										

Table 50: Information table for the create interface page

Click **Submit**. The Common Configuration page appears. There are three sections in the mobile interface common configurations:

Section	Description
General Setup	Configure the basic interface settings such as protocol, service type, APN information, user name and password.
Advanced Settings	Set up more in-depth features such as initialization timeout, LCP echo failure thresholds and inactivity timeouts.
Firewall settings	Assign a firewall zone to the connection.

20.2.1.1 Mobile interface: general setup

Common Configuration

General Setup		Advanced Settings	Firewall Settings
Status	3g-3G	RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)	
Protocol	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO		
Service Type	Auto (LTE/UMTS/GPRS)		
SIM	auto		
Operator PLMN code		<small>(?) Specify this if you want to force connection to particular carrier</small>	
APN			
APN username			
APN password			

Figure 83: The common configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description																							
Web:Status UCI: n/a Opt: n/a	Shows the current status of the interface.																							
Web: Protocol UCI: network.3G.proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td> <td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td> <td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td> <td>Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td> <td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td> <td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	GRE		IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.	PPP		PPPoE		PPPoATM		LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																							
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																							
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																							
Unmanaged	Unspecified																							
GRE																								
IOT																								
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.																							
PPP																								
PPPoE																								
PPPoATM																								
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																							
Web: Service Type UCI: network.3G.service Opt: service	Service type that will be used to connect to the network. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>gprs_only</td> <td>Allows GSM module to only connect to gprs network</td> </tr> <tr> <td>lte_only</td> <td>Allows GSM module to only connect to lte network</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cdma</td> <td>Allows GSM module to only connect to cdma network</td> </tr> <tr> <td>auto</td> <td>GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		gprs_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to gprs network	lte_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to lte network	cdma	Allows GSM module to only connect to cdma network	auto	GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.														
gprs_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to gprs network																							
lte_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to lte network																							
cdma	Allows GSM module to only connect to cdma network																							
auto	GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.																							

Web: Operator PLMN code UCI: network.3G.operator Opt: operator	Specifies an operator PLMN code to force the connection to a particular carrier. The PLMN code is identified as a combination of the MCC and the MNC. Note: the operator option is used in conjunction with the operator format option <code>option opformat</code> which is used to define how the operator string is parsed. If configuring via the web GUI the opformat is automatically set to '2' to indicate it is a PLMN code. See below for alternate options for the operator format option.						
Web: n/a UCI: network.3G.opformat Opt: opformat	Defines the operator format. We recommended you use PLMN code. The operator is case sensitive so if using long or short character format it must match the operator exactly. To see the current operator using SSH enter the command: cat /var/state/mobile or using the web mobile stats page at Status -> Mobile Stats . <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Long character format</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Short character format</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>PLMN code</td> </tr> </table>	0	Long character format	1	Short character format	2	PLMN code
0	Long character format						
1	Short character format						
2	PLMN code						
Web: SIM UCI: network.3G.sim Opt: sim	Defines which SIM is used on this interface. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>SIM 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>SIM 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>any</td> <td>Automatically detect</td> </tr> </table>	1	SIM 1	2	SIM 2	any	Automatically detect
1	SIM 1						
2	SIM 2						
any	Automatically detect						
Web: APN UCI: network.3G.apn Opt: apn	APN name of Mobile Network Operator.						
Web: APN username UCI: network.3G.username Opt: username	Username used to connect to APN.						
Web: APN password UCI: network.3G.password Opt: password	Password used to connect to APN.						
Web: n/a UCI: network.3G.retry_interval_sec Opt: retry_interval_sec	Allows you to specify exact integer or range that will be used to calculate random number to delay PPP connection. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>PPP will connect immediately, without any delay.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1-infinite</td> <td>PPP will attempt to connect again after specified interval.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td>PPP will attempt to connect within specified range. The exact interval is calculated randomly from specified range. <code>retry_interval_sec 60 180</code></td> </tr> </table>	0	PPP will connect immediately, without any delay.	1-infinite	PPP will attempt to connect again after specified interval.	Range	PPP will attempt to connect within specified range. The exact interval is calculated randomly from specified range. <code>retry_interval_sec 60 180</code>
0	PPP will connect immediately, without any delay.						
1-infinite	PPP will attempt to connect again after specified interval.						
Range	PPP will attempt to connect within specified range. The exact interval is calculated randomly from specified range. <code>retry_interval_sec 60 180</code>						

Table 51: Information table for common configuration settings

The Modem Configuration link at the bottom of the page is used for SIM pin code and SMS configuration. For more information, read the chapter 'Configuring mobile manager'.

20.2.1.2 Mobile interface: advanced settings

Common Configuration

General Setup Advanced Settings **Firewall Settings**

Bring up on boot

Monitor interface state This interface state would be reported to VA Monitor via keep-alive

Enable IPv6 negotiation on the PPP link

Modem init timeout Maximum amount of seconds to wait for the modem to become ready

Use default gateway If unchecked, no default route is configured

Use gateway metric

IPv4 Mode

IPv6 Mode

Use DNS servers advertised by peer If unchecked, the advertised DNS server addresses are ignored

LCP echo failure threshold Presume peer to be dead after given amount of LCP echo failures, use 0 to ignore failures

LCP echo interval Send LCP echo requests at the given interval in seconds, only effective in conjunction with failure threshold

Inactivity timeout Close inactive connection after the given amount of seconds, use 0 to persist connection

Dependant interfaces MOBILE1:

Figure 84: The advanced settings tab

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Bring up on boot UCI: network.3G.auto Opt: auto	Enables the interface to connect automatically on boot up or reconnect automatically when disconnected.				
Web: Monitor interface state UCI: network.3G.monitored Opt: monitored	Enabled if status of interface is presented on Monitoring platform. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Do not monitor interface.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Monitor interface.</td></tr> </table>	0	Do not monitor interface.	1	Monitor interface.
0	Do not monitor interface.				
1	Monitor interface.				
Web: Enable IPv6 negotiation on the PPP link UCI: network.3G.ipv6 Opt: ipv6	Enables IPv6 routing on the interface. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Do not enable IPv6.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enable IPv6.</td></tr> </table>	0	Do not enable IPv6.	1	Enable IPv6.
0	Do not enable IPv6.				
1	Enable IPv6.				
Web: Modem int timeout UCI: network.3G.maxwait Opt: maxwait	Maximum amount of seconds to wait for the modem to become ready. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>20</td><td>Seconds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	20	Seconds	Range	
20	Seconds				
Range					
Web: Use default gateway UCI: network.3G.defaultroute Opt: defaultroute	Enables this interface as a default route <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Do not use as a default route.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Use as a default route.</td></tr> </table>	0	Do not use as a default route.	1	Use as a default route.
0	Do not use as a default route.				
1	Use as a default route.				
Web: Use gateway metric UCI: network.3G.metric Opt: metric	Defines the metric for the default route. Lower number metrics are used first when route is up. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					

Web: IPv4 Mode UCI: network.3G.ipv4mode Opt: ipv4mode	Defines the IPv4 address assignment approach for mobile interfaces in Ethernet Mode. Note: by default, mobile interfaces are in Ethernet mode. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>None</td><td>No dynamic assignment</td><td>none</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP</td><td>DHCP address assignment</td><td>dhcp</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	UCI	None	No dynamic assignment	none	DHCP	DHCP address assignment	dhcp						
Option	Description	UCI														
None	No dynamic assignment	none														
DHCP	DHCP address assignment	dhcp														
Web: IPv6 Mode UCI: network.3G.ipv6mode Opt: ipv6mode	Defines the IPv6 address assignment approach for mobile interfaces in Ethernet Mode. (Note, by default, mobile interfaces are in Ethernet mode). <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>None</td><td>No dynamic assignment</td><td>none</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCPv6</td><td>DHCP address assignment</td><td>dhcp</td></tr> <tr> <td>RA</td><td>Router Advertisement (RA) assignment</td><td>ra</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCPv6 after RA</td><td>Wait for RA, then start DHCP</td><td>ra_then_dhcp</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	UCI	None	No dynamic assignment	none	DHCPv6	DHCP address assignment	dhcp	RA	Router Advertisement (RA) assignment	ra	DHCPv6 after RA	Wait for RA, then start DHCP	ra_then_dhcp
Option	Description	UCI														
None	No dynamic assignment	none														
DHCPv6	DHCP address assignment	dhcp														
RA	Router Advertisement (RA) assignment	ra														
DHCPv6 after RA	Wait for RA, then start DHCP	ra_then_dhcp														
Web: Use DNS servers advertised by peer UCI: network.3G.peerdns Opt: peerdns	If unchecked, the advertised DNS server addresses are ignored. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Use static DNS</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Use advertised DNS</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	0	Use static DNS	1	Use advertised DNS											
0	Use static DNS															
1	Use advertised DNS															
Web: Use custom DNS servers UCI: network.3G.dns Opt: dns	Specifies DNS server. Only available if Use DNS servers advertised by peer is unselected. When multiple DNS servers are required separate using space for UCI or option value. Example: <code>uci set network.3G.dns='1.1.1.1 2.2.2.2'</code>															
Web: LCP echo failure threshold UCI: network.3G.keepalive Opt: keepalive	Presumes peer to be dead after a given amount of LCP echo failures, use 0 to ignore failures. This command is used in conjunction with the LCP echo interval. The syntax is as follows: <code>uci network.3G.keepalive=<echo failure threshold> <echo interval></code> Example: <code>uci set network.3G.keepalive=15 10</code>															
Web: LCP echo internal UCI: network.3G.keepalive Opt: keepalive	Send LCP echo requests at the given interval in seconds, only effective in conjunction with failure This command is used in conjunction with the LCP echo failure threshold. The syntax is as follows: <code>uci network.3G.keepalive=<echo failure threshold> <echo interval></code> Example: <code>uci set network.3G.keepalive=15 10</code>															
Web: Inactivity timeout UCI: network.3G.demand Opt: demand	Closes an inactive connection after the given amount of seconds. Use 0 to persist connection. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Do not disconnect on inactivity</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>	0	Do not disconnect on inactivity	Range												
0	Do not disconnect on inactivity															
Range																
Web: Dependant Interfaces UCI: network.3G.dependants Opt: dependants	Lists interfaces that are dependent on this parent interface. Dependant interfaces will go down when the parent interface is down and will start or restart when the parent interface starts. Separate multiple interfaces by a space when using UCI. Example: <code>option dependants 'PPPADSL MOBILE'</code> This replaces the following previous options in child interfaces. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>gre</td><td>option local_interface</td></tr> <tr> <td>lt2p</td><td>option src_ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>iot</td><td>option wan1 wan2</td></tr> <tr> <td>6in4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>6to4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	gre	option local_interface	lt2p	option src_ipaddr	iot	option wan1 wan2	6in4	option ipaddr	6to4	option ipaddr					
gre	option local_interface															
lt2p	option src_ipaddr															
iot	option wan1 wan2															
6in4	option ipaddr															
6to4	option ipaddr															

Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network.[..x..].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface that can be polled via the SNMP interface index. $(snmp_alias_ifindex+1000)$. See Configuring SNMP section for more information.
	Blank
	Range

Table 52: Information table for general set up page

20.2.1.3 Mobile interface: firewall settings

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to the interface.

Select **unspecified** to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Figure 85: Firewall settings page

20.3 Configuring a mobile connection using CLI

20.3.1 UCI

To establish a basic mobile connection, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show network
network.3G=interface
network.3G.proto=3g
network.3G.monitored=0
network.3G.sim=any
network.3G.auto=1
network.3G.defaultroute=1
network.3G.metric=1
network.3G.service=autonetwork.3G.apn=test.apn
network.3G.username=username
network.3G.password=password
network.3G.ipv4mode=dhcp
network.3G.ipv6mode=none
```

20.3.2 Package options

```
root@GW_router:~#
package network

config interface '3G'
    option proto '3g'
    option monitored '0'
    option auto '1'
    option sim 'any'
    option defaultroute '1'
    option metric '1'          option service 'auto'
    option apn 'test.apn'
    option username 'username'
    option password 'password'
    option ipv4mode 'dhcp'
    option ipv6mode 'none'
```

20.4 Diagnositcs

Note: the information presented on screen and data output using UCI depends on the actual mobile hardware being used. Therefore, the interfaces or output you see may differ from the samples shown here.

20.4.1 Mobile status via the web

To view mobile connectivity information, in the top menu, select **Status -> Mobile Information**. The Mobile Information page appears. The information presented depends on the actual mobile hardware used; it might therefore differ from the samples shown here.

WAN	
Basic	Advanced
Cell Information	
SIM In	yes
SIM Slot	1
Operator	vodafone IE
Technology	UMTS
Network Status	Home network
Data Network Status	Home network
Signal (dBm)	-101
IMEI	358743040012737
IMSI	272017113618040

Figure 86: The mobile information page

WAN	
Basic	Advanced
Cell Information	
Network Status	Home network
Data Network Status	Home network
IMEI	358743040012737
IMSI	272017113618040
Operator	vodafone IE
Phone Number	+353874512040
SIM In	yes
SIM Slot	1
SIM1 ICCID	8935301140701270414
Signal (dBm)	-101
Technology	UMTS
Temperature (C)	28
Hardware Revision	R1C08

Figure 87: The advanced information page

WAN	
Basic	Advanced
Cell Information	
Cell ID	2007516
Location Area Code	3023
Mobile Country Code	272
Mobile Network Code	01

Figure 88: The cell information page

20.4.2 Mobile status using UCI

To display information and status of mobile interfaces such as 3G, 4G or CDMA, enter `mobile_status`:

```
root@GW_router:~# mobile_status

Mobile Interface      : WAN
Status                : idle
SIM In                : yes
SIM Slot              : 1
Operator              : vodafone IE
Technology            : UMTS
CS Network Status     : Home network
PS Network Status     : Home network
Signal (dBm)          : -107
IMEI                 : 358743040012737
IMSI                 : 272017113618040
```

For more advanced information, enter `mobile_status -a`:

```
root@ GW_router:~# mobile_status -a

Mobile Interface      : WAN
Status                : idle
```

CS Network Status	:	Home network
PS Network Status	:	Home network
IMEI	:	358743040012737
IMSI	:	272017113618040
Operator	:	vodafone IE
Phone Number	:	+353874512040
SIM In	:	yes
SIM Slot	:	1
SIM1 ICCID	:	8935301140701270414
Signal (dBm)	:	-107
Technology	:	UMTS
Temperature (C)	:	28
Hardware Revision	:	R1C08

21 Configuring mobile manager

The Mobile Manager feature allows you to configure SIM settings.

21.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
mobile	Main
	Callers
	Roaming template

21.2 Configuring mobile manager using the web interface

Select **Services -> Mobile Manager**. The Mobile Manager page appears.

There are four sections in the mobile manager page

Section	Description
Basic settings	Enable SMS, configure SIM pin code, select roaming SIM, collect ICCCIDs and set IMSI.
CDMA*	CDMA configuration
Callers	Configure callers that can use SMS.
Roamin Interface Template	Configure Preferred Roaming List options

*Option available only for Telit CE910-SL module.

21.2.1 Mobile manager: basic settings

MAIN

SMS Enable

Force Mode

Collect ICCIDs ⓘ *Collect ICCIDs on startup*

IMSI

PIN-code for SIM1

PIN-code for SIM2

LTE Bands for SIM1

LTE Bands for SIM2

Temperature Polling Interval (Seconds)

Figure 89: The mobile manager basic page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: SMS Enable UCI: mobile.main.sms Opt: sms	Enables or disables SMS functionality.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Force Mode UCI: mobile.main.force_mode Opt: force_mode	Defines whether to operate mobile modem in TTY or Ethernet mode. The mode will be dependent on the service provided by the mobile provider. In general, this is Ethernet mode (default).	
	Empty	Ethernet mode (option not present).
	tty	Enable TTY mode.
Web: Collect ICCIDs UCI: mobile.main.init_get_iccids Opt: init_get_iccids	Enables or disables integrated circuit card identifier ICCID's collection functionality. If enabled then both SIM 1 and SIM 2 ICCIDs will be collected otherwise it will default to SIM 1. This will be displayed under mobile stats.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: IMSI UCI: mobile.main.imsi Opt: imsi	Allows the IMSI (International Mobile Subscriber Identity) to be changed	
	Default	Programmed in module
	Digits	up to 15 digits
Web: PIN code for SIM1 UCI: mobile.main.sim1pin Opt: sim1pin	Depending on the SIM card specify the pin code for SIM 1.	
	Blank	
	Range	Depends on the SIM provider.
Web: PIN code for SIM2 UCI: mobile.main.sim2pin Opt: sim2pin	Depending on the SIM card specify the pin code for SIM 2.	
	Blank	
	Range	Depends on the SIM provider.
Web: LTE bands for SIM1 UCI: mobile.main.sim1_lte_bands Opt: sim1_lte_bands	Depending on the SIM card specify the LTE bands for SIM 1. Comma delimiter. Example: option sim1_lte_bands '3,20' Limits LTE bands to 3 and 20. Note: currently only supported by Hucom/Wetelcom, SIMCom7100, Cellient MPL200 and Asiatel.	
	Blank	
	Range	LTE bands range from 1 to 70
Web: LTE bands for SIM2 UCI: mobile.main.sim2_lte_bands Opt: sim2_lte_bands	Depending on the SIM card specify the LTE bands for SIM 2. Comma delimiter. Example: option sim2_lte_bands '3,20' Limits LTE bands to 3 and 20. Note: currently only supported by Hucom/Wetelcom, SIMCom7100, Cellient MPL200 and Asiatel.	
	Blank	
	Range	LTE bands range from 1 to 70
Web: Temperature Polling Interval UCI: mobile.main.temp_poll_interval_sec Opt: temp_poll_interval_sec	Defines the time in seconds to poll the mobile module for temperature. Set to 0 to disable.	
	61	61 seconds
	Range	
Web: n/a UCI: mobile.main.disable_time Opt: disable_time	Defines whether to use time obtained from the mobile carrier to update the system clock when NTP is enabled.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.

Table 53: Information table for mobile manager basic settings

21.2.2 Mobile manager: CDMA settings

This configuration page is only supported for the Telit CE910-SL CDMA module.

MAIN

CDMA

HDR Auth User ID	<input type="text"/>	<small>AN-PPP user id. Supported on Cellient modem only</small>
HDR Auth Password	<input type="text"/>	<small>AN-PPP password. Supported on Cellient modem only</small>
Ordered Registration triggers module reboot	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Station Class Mark	<input type="text"/>	
Slot Cycle Index	<input type="text"/>	
Slot Mode	<input type="text"/>	
Mobile Directory Number	<input type="text"/>	
MOB_TERM_HOME registration flag	<input type="checkbox"/>	
MOB_TERM_FOR_SID registration flag	<input type="checkbox"/>	
MOB_TERM_FOR_NID registration flag	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Figure 90: The mobile manager CDMA page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: HDR Auth User ID UCI: mobile.main.hdr_userid Opt: hdr_userid	AN-PPP user ID. Supported on Cellient (CDMA) modem only.	
	Blank	
	Range	Depends on the CDMA provider.
Web: HDR Auth User Password UCI: mobile.main.hdr_password Opt: hdr_password	AN-PPP password. Supported on Cellient (CDMA) modem only.	
	Blank	
	Range	Depends on the CDMA provider.
Web: Ordered Registration triggers module reboot UCI: mobile.main.mobile.main.cdma_ordered_registration_reboot_enabled Opt: cdma_ordered_registration_reboot_enabled	Enables or disables rebooting the module after Order Registration command is received from a network.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Station Class Mark UCI: mobile.main.cdma_station_class_mark Opt: cdma_station_class_mark	Allows the station class mark for the MS to be changed.	
	58	Default
	0-255	Range.

Web: Slot Cycle Index UCI: mobile.main.cdma_slot_cycle_index Opt: cdma_slot_cycle_index	The desired slot cycle index if different from the default <table border="1"><tr><td>2</td><td>Default</td></tr><tr><td>0-7</td><td>Range.</td></tr></table>	2	Default	0-7	Range.
2	Default				
0-7	Range.				
Web: Slot Mode UCI: mobile.main.cdma_slot_mode Opt: cdma_slot_mode	Specifies the slot mode <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Default</td></tr><tr><td>TBA</td><td></td></tr></table>	0	Default	TBA	
0	Default				
TBA					
Web: Mobile Directory Number UCI: mobile.main.cdma_mobile_directory_number Opt: cdma_mobile_directory_number	Allows the mobile directory number (MDN) to be changed <table border="1"><tr><td>Default</td><td>Programmed in module</td></tr><tr><td>Digits</td><td>up to 15 digits</td></tr></table>	Default	Programmed in module	Digits	up to 15 digits
Default	Programmed in module				
Digits	up to 15 digits				
Web: MOB_TERM_HOME registration flag UCI: mobile.main. cdma_mob_term_home_registration_flag Opt: cdma_mob_term_home_registration_flag	The MOB_TERM_HOME registration flag <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: MOB_TERM_FOR_SID registration flag UCI: mobile.main. cdma_mob_term_for_sid_registration_flag Opt: cdma_mob_term_for_sid_registration_flag	The MOB_TERM_FOR_SID registration flag <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: MOB_TERM_FOR_NID registration flag UCI: mobile.main. cdma_mob_term_for_nid_registration_flag Opt: cdma_mob_term_for_nid_registration_flag	The MOB_TERM_FOR_NID registration flag <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Access Overload Control UCI: mobile.main.cdma_access_overload_control Opt: cdma_access_overload_control	Allows the access overload class to be changed <table border="1"><tr><td>Default</td><td>programmed into module as part of IMSI</td></tr><tr><td>0-7</td><td>Range.</td></tr></table>	Default	programmed into module as part of IMSI	0-7	Range.
Default	programmed into module as part of IMSI				
0-7	Range.				
Web: Preferred Serving System UCI: mobile.main.cdma_preferred_serving_system Opt: cdma_preferred_serving_system	The CDMA Preferred Serving System(A/B) Default value is 5.				
Web: Digital Analog Mode Preference UCI: cdma_digital_analog_mode_preference Opt: cdma_digital_analog_mode_preference	Digital/Analog Mode Preference Default: 4				
Web: Primary Channel A UCI: mobile.main.cdma_primary_channel_a Opt: cdma_primary_channel_a	Allows the primary channel (A) to be changed <table border="1"><tr><td>283</td><td>Default</td></tr><tr><td>1-2016</td><td>any band class 5 channel number</td></tr></table>	283	Default	1-2016	any band class 5 channel number
283	Default				
1-2016	any band class 5 channel number				
Web: Primary Channel B UCI: mobile.main.cdma_primary_channel_b Opt: cdma_primary_channel_b	Allows the primary channel (B) to be changed <table border="1"><tr><td>384</td><td>Default</td></tr><tr><td>1-2016</td><td>any band class 5 channel number</td></tr></table>	384	Default	1-2016	any band class 5 channel number
384	Default				
1-2016	any band class 5 channel number				
Web: Secondary Channel A UCI: mobile.main.cdma_secondary_channel_a Opt: cdma_secondary_channel_a	Allows the secondary channel (A) to be changed <table border="1"><tr><td>691</td><td>Default</td></tr><tr><td>1-2016</td><td>any band class 5 channel number</td></tr></table>	691	Default	1-2016	any band class 5 channel number
691	Default				
1-2016	any band class 5 channel number				
Web: Secondary Channel B UCI: mobile.main.cdma_secondary_channel_b Opt: cdma_secondary_channel_b	Allows the secondary channel (B) to be changed <table border="1"><tr><td>777</td><td>Default</td></tr><tr><td>1-2016</td><td>any band class 5 channel number</td></tr></table>	777	Default	1-2016	any band class 5 channel number
777	Default				
1-2016	any band class 5 channel number				
Web: Preferred Forward & Reverse RC UCI: mobile.main.cdma_preferred_forward_and_reverse_rc Opt:cdma_preferred_forward_and_reverse_rc	The Preferred Forward & Reverse RC value, this takes the form "forward_rc,reverse_rc" Format: forward radio channel, reverse radio channel Default: 0,0				

Web: SID-NID pairs UCI: mobile.main.cdma_sid_nid_pairs Opt:cdma_sid_nid_pairs	Allows specification of SID:NID pairs, this takes the form "SID1,NID1,SID2,NID2, ... Format: SID1 (0-65535),NID (0-65535) Default: 0,65535
---	--

Table 54: Information table for mobile manager CDMA settings

21.2.3 Mobile manager: callers

The screenshot shows a configuration page for 'Callers'. It includes fields for 'Name' (set to 'CallerGroup1'), 'Number' (set to '353*'), and checkboxes for 'Enable' and 'Respond'. A note above the fields says 'Configure caller numbers that may use the SMS service.'

Figure 91: The mobile manager CDMA page

Web: Name UCI: mobile.@caller[0].name Opt:name	Name assigned to the caller. <table border="1"><tr><td>Blank</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>No limit</td></tr></table>	Blank		Range	No limit		
Blank							
Range	No limit						
Web: Number UCI: mobile.@caller[0].number Opt:number	Number of the caller allowed to SMS the router. Add in specific caller numbers, or use the * wildcard symbol. <table border="1"><tr><td>Blank</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>No limit</td></tr><tr><td>Characters</td><td>Global value (*) is accepted International value (+) is accepted</td></tr></table>	Blank		Range	No limit	Characters	Global value (*) is accepted International value (+) is accepted
Blank							
Range	No limit						
Characters	Global value (*) is accepted International value (+) is accepted						
Web: Enable UCI: mobile.@caller[0].enabled Opt:enabled	Enables or disables incoming caller ID. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.		
0	Disabled.						
1	Enabled.						
Web: Respond UCI: mobile.@caller[0].respond Opt: respond	If checked, the router will return an SMS. Select Respond if you want the router to reply. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.		
0	Disabled.						
1	Enabled.						

Table 55: Information table for mobile manager callers settings

21.2.4 Mobile manager: roaming interface template

For more information on Roaming Interface Template configuration, read the chapter, 'Automatic Operator Selection'.

21.3 Configuring mobile manager using command line

21.3.1 Mobile manager using UCI

The configuration files for mobile manager are stored on **/etc/config/mobile**

The following example shows how to enable the SMS functionality to receive and respond from certain caller ID numbers.

```
root@SATEL_router:~# uci show mobile
uci set mobile.main=mobile
uci set mobile.main.sim1pin=0000
uci set mobile.main.sim2pin=0000
uci set mobile.main.roaming_sim=none
uci set mobile.main.sms=1
uci set mobile.main.hdr_password=5678
uci set mobile.main.hdr_userid=1234
uci set mobile.main.init_get_iccids=1
uci set mobile.@caller[0]=caller
uci set mobile.@caller[0].name=user1
uci set mobile.@caller[0].number=3538712345678
uci set mobile.@caller[0].enabled=1
uci set mobile.@caller[0].respond=1
uci set mobile.@caller[1]=caller
uci set mobile.@caller[1].name=user2
uci set mobile.@caller[1].number=3538723456789
uci set mobile.@caller[1].enabled=1
uci set mobile.@caller[1].respond=1
```

21.3.2 Mobile manager using package options

```
root@SATEL_router:~# uci export mobile
package mobile
config mobile 'main'
    option sim1pin '0000'
    option sim2pin '0000'
    option roaming_sim 'none'
    option sms '1'
    option hdr_password '5678'
    option hdr_userid '1234'
```

```

option init_get_iccids '1'

config caller
    option name 'support'
    option number '353871234567'
    option enabled '1'
    option respond '1'

config caller
    option name 'support1'
    option number '353872345678'
    option enabled '1'
    option respond '1'

```

21.4 Monitoring SMS

You can monitor inbound SMS messages using the router's web browser or via an SSH session.

To monitor via the web browser, login and select **Status >system log**.

Scroll to the bottom of the log to view the SMS message.

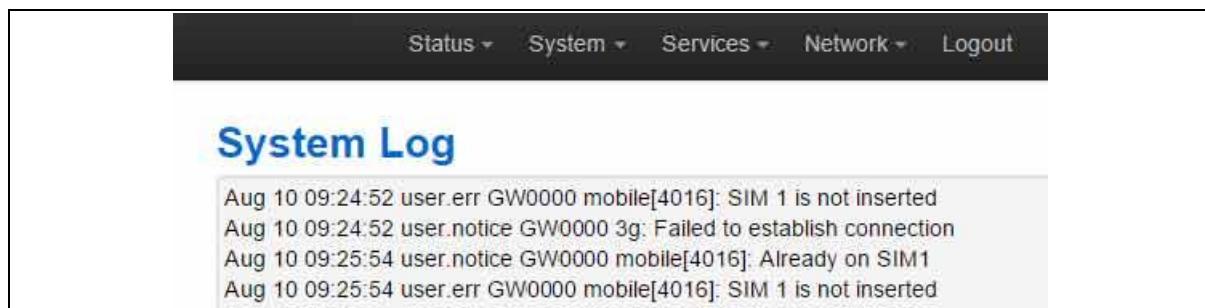


Figure 92: Example of output from system log

To monitor via SSH, login and enter:

```
logread -f &
```

An outgoing SMS message appears.

```
sendsms 353879876543 'hello'

root@SATEL:~# Aug 10 16:29:11 user.notice SATEL
mobile[1737]: Queue sms to 353879876543 "hello"
```

21.5 Sending SMS from the router

You can send an outgoing message via the command line using the following syntax:

```
sendsms 353879876543 'hello'  
root@SATEL:~# Aug 10 16:29:1 user.notice SATEL mobile[1737]: Queue sms to  
353879876543 "hello"
```

21.6 Sending SMS to the router

The router can accept UCI show and set commands via SMS if the caller is enabled.

Note: commands are case sensitive.

An example would be to SMS the SIM card number by typing the following command on the phone and checking the SMS received from the router.

```
uci show mobile.@caller[0].number
```

22 Configuring Multi-WAN

Multi-WAN is used for managing WAN interfaces on the router, for example, 3G interfaces to ensure high-availability. You can customise Multi-WAN for various needs, but its main use is to ensure WAN connectivity and provide a failover system in the event of failure or poor coverage.

Multi-WAN periodically does a health check on the interface. A health check comprises of a configurable combination of the following:

- interface state
- pings to an ICMP target
- signal level checks using signal threshold, RSCP threshold and ECIO threshold option values

A fail for any of the above health checks, results in a fail. After a configurable number of health check failures, Multi-WAN will move to the next highest priority interface. Multi-WAN will optionally stop the failed interface and start the new interface, if required.

In some circumstances, particularly in mobile environments, it is desirable for a primary interface to be used whenever possible. In this instance Multi-WAN will perform a health check on the primary interface after a configurable period. If the health checks pass for the configured number of recovery health checks then the primary will be used.

22.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
multiwan	config wan

22.2 Configuring Multi-WAN using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> Multi-Wan**. The Multi-WAN page appears.

Multi-WAN
Multi-WAN allows for the use of multiple uplinks for load balancing and failover.

Enable

Preempt

Alternate Mode ⓘ It will use alternate interface after reboot

Figure 93: The multi-WAN page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable UCI: multiwan.config.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables Multi-WAN.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Preempt UCI: multiwan.config.preempt Opt: preempt	Enables or disables pre-emption for Multi-WAN. If enabled the router will keep trying to connect to a higher priority interface depending on timer set by ifup_retry_sec	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Alternate Mode UCI: multiwan.config.alt_mode Opt: alt_mode	Enables or disables alternate mode for Multi-WAN. If enabled the router will use an alternate interface after reboot.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.

Table 56: Information table for multi-WAN page

When you have enabled Multi-WAN, you can add the interfaces that will be managed by Multi-WAN, for example 3G interfaces.

The name used for Multi-WAN must be identical, including upper and lowercases, to the actual interface name defined in your network configuration. To check the names and settings are correct, select **Network - > Interfaces** and view the Interfaces Overview page.

In the WAN interfaces section, enter the name of the WAN interface to configure, and then click **Add**. The new section for configuring specific parameters appears.

WAN Interfaces

Health Monitor detects and corrects network changes and failed connections.

WAN

Health Monitor Interval	10 sec.
Health Monitor ICMP Host(s)	DNS Server(s)
Health Monitor Conntrack Test Host(s)	Default
Health Monitor ICMP Timeout	3 sec.
Health Monitor ICMP Interval	1 sec.
Attempts Before WAN Failover	3
Attempts Before WAN Recovery	5
Priority	0 <small>Higher value is higher priority</small>
Exclusive Group	0 <small>Only one interface in group could be up in the same time</small>
Manage Interface State (Up/Down)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Minimum ifup Interval	300 sec. <small>Minimum interval between two successive interface start attempts</small>
Interface Start Timeout	40 sec. <small>Time for interface to startup</small>
Signal Threshold (dBm)	-115 <small>Below is a failure</small>
RSCP Threshold for 3G (dBm)	-115 <small>Below is a failure</small>
ECIO Threshold for 3G (dB)	-115 <small>Below is a failure</small>
Signal Test	<input type="text"/> <small>Free form expression to test signal value</small>

Figure 94: Example interface showing failover traffic destination as the added multi-WAN interface

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description								
Web: Health Monitor Interval UCI: multiwan.wan.health_interval Opt: health_interval	<p>Sets the period to check the health status of the interface. The Health Monitor interval will be used for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> interface state checks Ping interval Signal strength checks 								
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Host(s) UCI: multiwan.wan.icmp_hosts Opt: icmp_hosts	<p>Sends health ICMPs to configured value DNS servers by default. Configure to any address.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Disable</td><td>Disables the option.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DNS servers</td><td>DNS IP addresses will be used.</td></tr> <tr> <td>WAN Gateway</td><td>Gateway IP address will be used.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Custom</td><td>Ability to provide IP address. Multiple pings targets can be entered, comma separated. Pings to both must fail for health check to fail. Example: option icmp_hosts '1.1.1.1,2.2.2.2'</td></tr> </table>	Disable	Disables the option.	DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.	WAN Gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.	Custom	Ability to provide IP address. Multiple pings targets can be entered, comma separated. Pings to both must fail for health check to fail. Example: option icmp_hosts '1.1.1.1,2.2.2.2'
Disable	Disables the option.								
DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.								
WAN Gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.								
Custom	Ability to provide IP address. Multiple pings targets can be entered, comma separated. Pings to both must fail for health check to fail. Example: option icmp_hosts '1.1.1.1,2.2.2.2'								
Web: Health Monitor Conntrack Test Host(s) UCI: multiwan.wan.conntrack_hosts Opt: conntrack_hosts	<p>Conntrack is the feature used to track if there is any traffic to and from an IP destination within the health interval.</p> <p>The Conntrack_hosts option defines the IP for conntrack to track, usually the icmp_host IP is used.</p> <p>If traffic to the conntrack_hosts IP is detected then multiwan does not send a ping health check to the icmp_host; otherwise a ping is sent as normal to the icmp_host.</p> <p>By default the conntrack_hosts is checked if the health interval is greater than 5 minutes. This time threshold currently cannot be manipulated.</p> <p>Conntrack is generally used to limit the traffic sent on a GSM network.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Default</td><td>Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Disable</td><td>Conntrack disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Custom</td><td>Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.</td></tr> </table>	Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.	Disable	Conntrack disabled.	Custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.		
Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.								
Disable	Conntrack disabled.								
Custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.								
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Timeout UCI: multiwan.wan.timeout Opt: timeout	<p>Sets Ping timeout in seconds. Choose the time in seconds that the health monitor ICMP will timeout at.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3</td><td>Wait 3 seconds for ping reply</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply	Range					
3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply								
Range									
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Interval UCI: multiwan.wan.icmp_interval Opt: icmp_interval	<p>Defines the interval between multiple pings sent at each health check</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	1		Range					
1									
Range									
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Count UCI: multiwan.wan.icmp_count Opt: icmp_count	<p>Defines the number of pings to send at each health check.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	1		Range					
1									
Range									
Web: Attempts Before WAN Failover UCI: multiwan.wan.health_fail_retries Opt: health_fail_retries	<p>Sets the amount of health monitor retries before interface is considered a failure.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	3		Range					
3									
Range									
Web: Attempts Before WAN Recovery UCI: multiwan.wan.health_recovery_retries Opt: health_recovery_retries	<p>Sets the number of health monitor checks before the interface is considered healthy. Only relevant if pre-empt mode is enabled.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>5</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	5		Range					
5									
Range									
Web: Priority UCI: multiwan.wan.priority Opt: priority	<p>Specifies the priority of the interface. The higher the value, the higher the priority.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range					
0									
Range									

Web: Manage Interface State (Up/Down) UCI: multiwan.wan.manage_state Opt: manage_state	Defines whether multi-wan will start and stop the interface. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.												
1	Enabled.																
0	Disabled.																
Web: Exclusive Group UCI: multiwan.wan.exclusive_group Opt: exclusive_group	Defines the group to which the interface belongs, only one interface can be active. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range													
0																	
Range																	
Web: Minimum ifup Interval UCI: multiwan.wan.ifup_retry_sec Opt: ifup_retry_sec	Specifies the interval in seconds before retrying the primary interface when pre-empt mode is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>300</td><td>Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.	Range													
300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.																
Range																	
Web: Interface Start Timeout UCI: multiwan.wan.ifup_timeout Opt: ifup_timeout	Specifies the time in seconds for interface to start up. If it is not up after this period, it will be considered a fail. <table border="1"> <tr><td>40</td><td>40 seconds.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	40	40 seconds.	Range													
40	40 seconds.																
Range																	
Web: Signal Threshold (dBm) UCI: multiwan.wan.signal_threshold Opt: signal_threshold	Specifies the minimum signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for sig_dbm in mobile diagnostics.-115. <table border="1"> <tr><td></td><td>Disabled</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dBm</td></tr> </table>		Disabled	Range	-46 to -115 dBm												
	Disabled																
Range	-46 to -115 dBm																
Web: RSCP Threshold (dBm) UCI: multiwan.wan.rscp_threshold Opt: rscp_threshold	Specifies the minimum RSCP signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for rscp_dbm in mobile diagnostics. <table border="1"> <tr><td>-115</td><td>Disabled</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dBm</td></tr> </table>	-115	Disabled	Range	-46 to -115 dBm												
-115	Disabled																
Range	-46 to -115 dBm																
Web: ECIO Threshold (dB) UCI: multiwan.wan.ecio_threshold Opt: ecio_threshold	Specifies the minimum ECIO signal strength in dB before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for ecio_db in mobile diagnostics. <table border="1"> <tr><td>-115</td><td>Disabled</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dB</td></tr> </table>	-115	Disabled	Range	-46 to -115 dB												
-115	Disabled																
Range	-46 to -115 dB																
Web: Signal Test UCI: multiwan.wan.signal_test Opt: signal_test	Defines a script to test various signal characteristics in multiwan signal test. For example: <pre>option signal_test '(tech == 0) then (sig_dbm > -70) else (rscp_dbm > -105 and ecio_db > -15)'</pre> <p>This states that when technology is GSM, a health fail is determined when signal strength is less than -70dBm. When technology is not GSM a health fail occurs when either rscp_dbm falls below -105dBm or ecio_db falls below -15dB</p> <p>Tech values are:</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>GSM</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>GSM Compact</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>UTRAN</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>GSM w/EGPRS</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>UTRAN w/HSPDA</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>UTRAN w/HSUPA</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>E-UTRAN</td></tr> </table>	0	GSM	1	GSM Compact	2	UTRAN	3	GSM w/EGPRS	4	UTRAN w/HSPDA	5	UTRAN w/HSUPA	6	UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA	7	E-UTRAN
0	GSM																
1	GSM Compact																
2	UTRAN																
3	GSM w/EGPRS																
4	UTRAN w/HSPDA																
5	UTRAN w/HSUPA																
6	UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA																
7	E-UTRAN																

Table 57: Information table for multi-WAN interface page

22.3 Multi-WAN traffic rules

You can also set up traffic rules, to forward specific traffic out of the right WAN interface, based on source, destination address, protocol or port. This is useful to force traffic on specific interfaces when using multiple WAN interfaces simultaneously.

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface for Multi-WAN Traffic Rules. At the top, there is a header "Multi-WAN Traffic Rules" and a sub-instruction "Configure rules for directing outbound traffic through specified WAN Uplinks." Below this is a table with columns: "Source Address", "Destination Address", "Protocol", "Ports", and "WAN Uplink". A message "This section contains no values yet" is displayed below the table. At the bottom left is an "Add" button, and at the bottom right are buttons for "Default Route" (set to "Disable") and a dropdown menu.

Figure 95: The multi-WAN traffic rules page

22.4 Configuring Multi-WAN using UCI

Multi-WAN UCI configuration settings are stored on **/etc/config/multiwan**

Run UCI export or show commands to see multiwan UCI configuration settings. A sample is shown below.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export multiwan

package multiwan

config multiwan 'config'
    option preempt 'yes'
    option alt_mode 'no'
    option enabled 'yes'

config interface 'wan'
    option disabled '0'
    option health_interval '10'          option health_fail_retries '3'
    option health_recovery_retries '5'
    option priority '2'
    option manage_state 'yes'
    option exclusive_group '0'
    option ifup_retry_sec '40'
    option icmp_hosts 'disable'
    option icmp_interval '1'
    option timeout '3'
```

```

option icmp_count '1'
option conntrack_hosts 'disable'          option signal_threshold '-111'
option rscp_threshold '-90'
option ecio_threshold '-15'
option ifup_timeout_sec '120'

root@GW_router:~# uci show multiwan
multiwan.config=multiwan
multiwan.config.preempt=yes
multiwan.config.alt_mode=no
multiwan.config.enabled=yes
multiwan.wan=interface
multiwan.wan.disabled=0
multiwan.wan.health_interval=10multiwan.wan.health_fail_retries=3
multiwan.wan.health_recovery_retries=5
multiwan.wan.priority=2
multiwan.wan.manage_state=yes
multiwan.wan.exclusive_group=0
multiwan.wan.ifup_retry_sec=36000
multiwan.wan.icmp_hosts=disable
multiwan.wan.timeout=3
multiwan.wan.icmp_interval '1'
multiwan.wan.timeout '3'
multiwan.wan.icmp_count '1'
multiwan.wan.conntrack_hosts 'disable'
multiwan.wan.signal_threshold=-111
multiwan.wan.rscp_threshold=-90
multiwan.wan.ecio_threshold=-15

```

22.5 Multi-WAN diagnostics

The multiwan package is an agent script that makes multi-WAN configuration simple, easy to use and manageable. It comes complete with load balancing, failover and an easy to manage traffic ruleset. The uci configuration file /etc/config/multiwan is provided as part of the multi-WAN package.

The multi-WAN package is linked to the network interfaces within /etc/config/network.

Note: multi-WAN will not work if the WAN connections are on the same subnet and share the same default gateway.

To view the multi-WAN package, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export multiwan
package multiwan

config multiwan 'config'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option preempt 'yes'
    option alt_mode 'no'

config interface 'ADSL'
    option health_interval '10'
    option icmp_hosts 'dns'
    option timeout '3'
    option health_fail_retries '3'
    option health_recovery_retries '5'
    option priority '1'
    option manage_state 'yes'
    option exclusive_group '0'
    option ifup_retry_sec '300'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '40'

config interface 'Ethernet'
    option health_interval '10'
    option icmp_hosts 'dns'
    option timeout '3'
    option health_fail_retries '3'
    option health_recovery_retries '5'
    option priority '2'
    option manage_state 'yes'
    option exclusive_group '0'
    option ifup_retry_sec '300'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '40'
```

The following output shows the multi-WAN standard stop/start commands for troubleshooting.

```
root@GW_router:~# /etc/init.d/multiwan
Syntax: /etc/init.d/multiwan [command]
```

Available commands:

```
start    Start the service
stop     Stop the service
restart  Restart the service
reload   Reload configuration files (or restart if that fails)
enable   Enable service autostart
disable  Disable service autostart
```

When troubleshooting, make sure that the routing table is correct using `route -n`.

Ensure all parameters in the multi-WAN package are correct. The name used for multi-WAN interfaces must be identical, including upper and lowercases, to the interface name defined in the network configuration.

To check the names and settings are correct, browse to **Network - > interfaces** (or alternatively, run: `cat/etc/config/network` through CLI).

Enter the name of the WAN interface to configure, and then click **Add**. The new section for configuring specific parameters will appear.

23 Automatic operator selection

This section describes how to configure and operate the Automatic Operator Selection feature of a SATEL router.

When the roaming SIM is connected, the radio module has the ability to scan available networks. The router, using mobile and multi-WAN packages, finds available networks to create and sort interfaces according to their signal strength. These interfaces are used for failover purposes.

23.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
Multiwan	General, interfaces
Mobile	Main, Template interface
Network	2G/3G/4G interface

23.2 Configuring automatic operator selection via the web interface

While the router boots up it checks for mobile networks. Based on available networks, the router creates interfaces and the multiwan package is used to run failover between interfaces. Typically these auto-generated interfaces are sorted by signal strength.

Details for these interfaces are provided in the mobile package. When you have created the interfaces, Multi-WAN manages the operation of primary (predefined) and failover (auto created) interfaces.

Multi-WAN periodically does a health check on the active interface. A health check comprises of a configurable combination of the following:

- interface state
- pings to an ICMP target
- signal level checks using signal threshold, RSCP threshold and ECIO threshold option values

A fail for any of the above health checks results in an overall fail. After a configurable number of health check failures, multiwan will move to the next highest priority interface. Multi-WAN will optionally stop the failed interface and start the new interface, if required.

In some circumstances, particularly in mobile environments, it is desirable for a primary interface to be used whenever possible. In this instance, if the active interface is not the primary interface, multiwan will perform a health check on the primary interface after a configurable period. If the health checks pass for the configured number of recovery health checks then the primary interface will be used.

There are typically three scenarios:

- Primary Mobile Provider (PMP) + roaming: pre-empt enabled
- PMP + roaming: pre-empt disabled
- No PMP + roaming

23.2.1 Scenario 1: PMP + roaming: pre-empt enabled

23.2.1.1 Overview

In this scenario, the PMP interface is used whenever possible.

The PMP interface is attempted first. When the health checks fail on the PMP interface, and Multi-WAN moves to an autogenerated interface, a timer is started `multiwan option ifup_retry_sec`. On expiration of this timer, multiwan will disconnect the current interface and retry the PMP interface.

The PMP interface will then be used if the configurable number of health checks pass the checks.

23.2.1.2 Software operation

13. Multiwan first attempts to bring up the PMP interface. If the PMP interface connects within the time set by multiwan option `ifup_timeout` continue to step 2. Otherwise go to step 4.
14. A health check is periodically done on the PMP interface as determined by the multiwan option `health_interval`. If the health check fails for the number of retries (multiwan option `health_fail_retries`), disconnect the PMP interface.
15. Connect the first auto-generated interface.
16. If the interface connects within the time set by multiwan option `ifup_timeout` continue to step 5, otherwise multiwan moves to the next auto-generated interface.
17. Wait until the health check fails on the auto-generated interface, or until the PMP interface is available to connect after it was disconnected in step 2. (multiwan option `ifup_retry_sec`).
18. Disconnect auto-generated interface.
19. If the interface was disconnected due to health check failure then connect the next auto-generated interface and repeat step 4. If the interface was disconnected because `ifup_retry_sec` of PMP interface timed out, then go back to step 1 and repeat the process.

The PMP predefined interface is defined in the network package. Ensure the interface name matches the interface name defined in the multiwan package.

23.2.1.3 Create a primary predefined interface

In the web interface top menu, go to **Network ->Interfaces**. The Interfaces page appears.

LAN

Interfaces

Interface Overview

Network	Status	Actions
LAN eth0	Uptime: 6h 37m 34s MAC Address: 00:E0:C8:10:0E:E6 RX: 431.31 MB (4672877 Pkts.) TX: 1.68 MB (21023 Pkts.) IPv4: 10.1.10.93/16	<input type="button" value="Connect"/> <input type="button" value="Stop"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
LOOPBACK lo	Uptime: 6h 37m 38s MAC Address: 00:00:00:00:00:00 RX: 9.99 MB (109997 Pkts.) TX: 9.99 MB (109997 Pkts.) IPv4: 127.0.0.1/8 IPv6: 0:0:0:0:0:0:0:1/128	<input type="button" value="Connect"/> <input type="button" value="Stop"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

[Add new interface...](#)

Figure 96: The interface overview page

Click **Add new interface...** The Create Interface page appears.

Create Interface

Name of the new interface: ⓘ The allowed characters are: A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _

Protocol of the new interface:

Create a bridge over multiple interfaces:

Cover the following interface:

- Ethernet Adapter: "eth0" (lan)
- Ethernet Adapter: "gre0"
- Ethernet Adapter: "lo" (loopback)
- Custom Interface:

ⓘ Note: If you choose an interface here which is part of another network, it will be moved into this network.

Figure 97: The create interface page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description								
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network.3g_s<sim-number>_<short-operator-name>. Opt: 3g_s<sim-number>_<short-operator-name>.	Type the name of the new interface. Type the interface name in following format: 3g_s<sim-number>_<short-operator-name>. Where <sim-number> is number of roaming SIM (1 or 2) and <short-operator-name> is first four alphanumeric characters of operator name (as reported by 'AT+COPS=?' command). Type the short operator name in lower case, for example: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operator name</th><th>First four alphanumeric numbers</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Vodafone UK</td><td>voda</td></tr> <tr> <td>O2 – UK</td><td>o2uk</td></tr> <tr> <td>Orange</td><td>oran</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Operator name	First four alphanumeric numbers	Vodafone UK	voda	O2 – UK	o2uk	Orange	oran
Operator name	First four alphanumeric numbers								
Vodafone UK	voda								
O2 – UK	o2uk								
Orange	oran								

Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.[...x...].proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6 over IPv4</td><td>IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>Point to Point Protocol over ATM.</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.	IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation.	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.	PPP	Point to Point Protocol.	PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.	PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM.	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.																										
IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation.																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.																										
PPP	Point to Point Protocol.																										
PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.																										
PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM.																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.[...x...].typeOpt: type	Enables bridge between two interfaces. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.																						
0	Disabled.																										
1	Enabled.																										
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.[...x...].ifname Opt: ifname	Select interfaces for bridge connection.																										

Table 58: Information table for the create interface page

Click **Submit**. The Common Configuration page appears.

Common Configuration

General Setup **Advanced Settings** Physical Settings Firewall Settings

Status: 3g-3g_s2_voda RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)
TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)

Protocol: UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO

Service Type: UMTS/GPRS

SIM: 1

APN: internet

PIN:

PAP/CHAP username: internet

PAP/CHAP password:

[Back to Overview](#) **Save & Apply** **Save** **Reset**

Figure 98: The common configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Protocol UCI: network.[..x..].proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO .	
Option	Description	
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	
Unmanaged	Unspecified	
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.	
IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.	
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation.	
IOT		
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.	
PPP	Point to Point Protocol.	
PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.	
PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM.	
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.	
Web: Service Type UCI: network.[..x..].service Opt: service	Service type that will be used to connect to the network.	
gprs_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to GPRS network.	
lte_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to LTE network.	
cdma	Allows GSM module to only connect to CDMA network.	
auto	GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.	
Web: SIM UCI: network.[..x..].sim Opt: sim	Select SIM 1 or SIM 2.	
auto	Automatically detects which SIM slot is used.	
SIM 1	Selects Sim from slot 1.	
SIM 2	Selects Sim from slot 2.	
Web: APN UCI: network.[..x..].apn Opt: apn	APN name of Mobile Network Operator.	
Web: APN username UCI: network.[..x..].username Opt: username	Username used to connect to APN.	
Web: APN password UCI: network.[..x..].password Opt: password	Password used to connect to APN.	
Web: Modem Configuration UCI: N/A Opt: N/A	Click the link if you need to configure additional options from Mobile Manager.	

Table 59: Information table for the general set up sectionClick **Save & Apply**.

23.2.1.4 Set multi-WAN options for primary predefined interface

On the web interface go to **Network ->Multi-Wan**. The Multi-WAN page appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Multi-WAN' configuration page. At the top, a note states: 'Multi-WAN allows for the use of multiple uplinks for failover.' Below this is a 'WAN Interfaces' section with a note: 'Health Monitor detects and corrects network changes and failed connections.' A message indicates: 'This section contains no values yet.' There is an 'Add' button next to an empty input field. At the bottom right are three buttons: 'Save & Apply' (blue), 'Save' (blue), and 'Reset' (grey).

Figure 99: The multi-WAN page

In the WAN Interfaces section, type in the name of the Multi-WAN interface.

Click **Add**. The Multi-WAN page appears.

Multi-WAN

Multi-WAN allows for the use of multiple uplinks for failover.

Enable

Preempt

Alternate Mode ⓘ It will use alternate interface after reboot

WAN Interfaces

Health Monitor detects and corrects network changes and failed connections.

3G_S1_VODA

Delete

Health Monitor Interval: 10 sec.

Health Monitor ICMP Host(s): DNS Server(s)

Health Monitor ICMP Timeout: 3 sec.

Attempts Before WAN Failover: 3

Attempts Before WAN Recovery: 5

Priority: 0 ⓘ Higher value is higher priority

Manage Interface State (Up/Down)

Exclusive Group: 0 ⓘ Only one interface in group could be up in the same time

Minimum ifup Interval: 300 sec. ⓘ Minimum interval between two successive interface start attempts

Interface Start Timeout: 40 sec. ⓘ Time for interface to startup

Signal Threshold (dBm): 115 ⓘ Below is a failure

Add

Save & Apply Save Reset

Figure 100: The multi-WAN page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enable UCI: multiwan.config.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables multiwan. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Preempt UCI: multiwan.config.preempt Opt: preempt	Enables or disables pre-emption for multiwan. If enabled the router will keep trying to connect to a higher priority interface depending on timer set. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Alternate Mode UCI: multiwan.config.alt Opt: alt	Enables or disables alternate mode for multiwan. If enabled the router will use an alternate interface after reboot. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: WAN Interfaces UCI: multiwan.3g_s<sim-number>_<short-operator-name> Opt: 3g_s<sim-number>_<short-operator-name>	Provide the same interface name as chosen in multiwan section below and click Add.				

Web: Health Monitor Interval UCI: multiwan.[..x..].health_interval Opt: health_interval	Sets the period to check the health status of the interface. The Health Monitor interval will be used for: interface state checks ping interval signal strength checks								
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Host(s) UCI: multiwan.[..x..].icmp_hosts Opt: icmp_hosts	Specifies target IP address for ICMP packets. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Disable</td> <td>Disables the option.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DNS servers</td> <td>DNS IP addresses will be used.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN Gateway</td> <td>Gateway IP address will be used.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>custom</td> <td>Ability to provide IP address.</td> </tr> </table>	Disable	Disables the option.	DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.	WAN Gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.	custom	Ability to provide IP address.
Disable	Disables the option.								
DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.								
WAN Gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.								
custom	Ability to provide IP address.								
Web: Health Monitor Conntrack Test Host(s) UCI: multiwan.wan.conntrack_hosts Opt: conntrack_hosts	Conntrack is the feature used to track if there is any traffic to and from an IP destination within the health interval. Conntrack_hosts option defines the IP for conntrack to track – usually the icmp_host IP is used. If traffic to the conntrack_hosts IP is detected then multiwan does not send a ping health check to the icmp_host otherwise a ping is sent as normal to the icmp_host. By default the conntrack_hosts is checked if the health interval is greater than 5 minutes. This time threshold currently cannot be manipulated. Conntrack is generally used to limit the traffic sent on a GSM network <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Default</td> <td>Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Disable</td> <td>Conntrack disabled</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Custom</td> <td>Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track</td> </tr> </table>	Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes	Disable	Conntrack disabled	Custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track		
Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes								
Disable	Conntrack disabled								
Custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track								
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Timeout UCI: multiwan.[..x..].timeout Opt: timeout	Sets ping timeout in seconds. Choose the time in seconds that the health monitor ICMP will timeout at. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Wait 3 seconds for ping reply</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply	Range					
3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply								
Range									
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Interval UCI: multiwan.wan.icmp_interval Opt: icmp_interval	Defines the interval between multiple pings sent at each health check <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	1		Range					
1									
Range									
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Count UCI: multiwan.wan.icmp_count Opt: icmp_count	Defines the number of pings to send at each health check. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	1		Range					
1									
Range									
Web: Attempts Before WAN Failover UCI: multiwan. [..x..].health_fail_retries Opt: health_fail_retries	Sets the amount of health monitor retries before interface is considered a failure. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	3		Range					
3									
Range									
Web: Attempts Before WAN Recovery UCI: multiwan. [..x..].health_recovery_retries Opt: health_recovery_retries	Sets the number of health monitor checks before the interface is considered healthy. Only relevant if pre-empt mode is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>5</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	5		Range					
5									
Range									
Web: Priority UCI: multiwan.[..x..].priority Opt: priority	Specifies the priority of the interface. The higher the value, the higher the priority. This multiwan interface priority must be higher than the one specified in the priority field in the 'Roaming Interface Template' page described in the following section. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	0		Range					
0									
Range									

Web: Exclusive Group UCI: multiwan.[..x...].exclusive_group Opt: exclusive_group	Defines the group to which the interface belongs, only one interface can be active. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	0		Range													
0																	
Range																	
Web: Manage Interface State (Up/Down) UCI: multiwan.[..x...].manage_state Opt: manage_state	Defines whether multi wan will start and stop the interface. Select Enabled. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.												
0	Disabled.																
1	Enabled.																
Web: Minimum ifup Interval UCI: multiwan.[..x...].ifup_retry_sec Opt: ifup_retry_sec	Specifies the interval in seconds before retrying the primary interface when pre-empt mode is enabled.																
Web: Interface Start Timeout UCI: multiwan.[..x...].ifup_timeout Opt: ifup_timeout	Specifies the time in seconds for interface to start up. If it is not up after this period, it will be considered a fail. Choose timer greater than 120 seconds. <table border="1"><tr><td>40</td><td>40 seconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	40	40 seconds	Range													
40	40 seconds																
Range																	
Web: Signal Threshold (dBm) UCI: multiwan.[..x...].signal_threshold Opt: signal_threshold	Specifies the minimum signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for sig_dbm in mobile diagnostics. <table border="1"><tr><td>-115</td><td>Disabled</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dBm</td></tr></table>	-115	Disabled	Range	-46 to -115 dBm												
-115	Disabled																
Range	-46 to -115 dBm																
Web: RSCP Threshold (dBm) UCI: multiwan.[..x...].rscp_threshold Opt: rscp_threshold	Specifies the minimum RSCP signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for rscp_dbm in mobile diagnostics. <table border="1"><tr><td>-115</td><td>Disabled</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dBm</td></tr></table>	-115	Disabled	Range	-46 to -115 dBm												
-115	Disabled																
Range	-46 to -115 dBm																
Web: ECIO Threshold (dB) UCI: multiwan.[..x...].ecio_threshold Opt: ecio_threshold	Specifies the minimum ECIO signal strength in dB before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for ecio_db in mobile diagnostics. <table border="1"><tr><td>-115</td><td>Disabled</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dB</td></tr></table>	-115	Disabled	Range	-46 to -115 dB												
-115	Disabled																
Range	-46 to -115 dB																
Web: Signal Test UCI: multiwan.[..x...].signal_test Opt: signal_test	Defines script to test various signal characteristics in multiwan signal test. For example: <pre>option signal_test '(tech == 0) then (sig_dbm > -70) else (rscp_dbm > -105 and ecio_db > -15)'</pre> This states that when technology is GSM a health fail is determined when signal strength is less than -70dBm. When technology is not GSM a health fail occurs when either rscp_dbm falls below -105dBm or ecio_db falls below -15dB. Tech values are: <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>GSM</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>GSM Compact</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>UTRAN</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>GSM w/EGPRS</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>UTRAN w/HSPDA</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>UTRAN w/HSUPA</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>E-UTRAN</td></tr></table>	0	GSM	1	GSM Compact	2	UTRAN	3	GSM w/EGPRS	4	UTRAN w/HSPDA	5	UTRAN w/HSUPA	6	UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA	7	E-UTRAN
0	GSM																
1	GSM Compact																
2	UTRAN																
3	GSM w/EGPRS																
4	UTRAN w/HSPDA																
5	UTRAN w/HSUPA																
6	UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA																
7	E-UTRAN																

Table 60: Information table for Multi-WAN page

Click **Save**.

23.2.2 Set options for automatically created interfaces (failover)

From the top menu on the web interface page, select **Services ->Mobile Manager**. The Mobile Manager page appears.

Figure 101: The mobile manager page

There are three sections in Mobile Manager.

Basic settings	Configure SMS, select roaming SIM and collect ICCIDs.
Callers	Configure callers that can use SMS.
Roaming Interface Template	Configure common values for interface created by Automatic Operator Selection.

23.2.2.1 Basic settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: SMS Enable UCI: mobile.main.sms Opt: sms	Enables SMS. no Disabled. yes Enabled.
Web: Collect ICCIDs UCI: mobile.main.init_get_iccids Opt: init_get_iccids	Enables or disables integrated circuit card identifier ICCID's collection functionality. If enabled then both SIM 1 and SIM 2 ICCIDs will be collected, otherwise it will default to SIM 1. This will be displayed under mobile stats no Disabled. yes Enabled.
Web: PIN code for SIM1 UCI: mobile.main.sim2pin Opt: sim2pin	Depending on the SIM card, specify the PIN code for SIM 1.

Web: PIN code for SIM2 UCI: mobile.main.sim2pin Opt: sim2pin	Depending on the SIM card, specify the PIN code for SIM 2.
Web: HDR Auto User ID UCI: mobile.main.hdr_userid Opt: hdr_userid	AN-PPP user ID. Supported on Cellient (CDMA) modem only.

Table 61: Information table for mobile manager basic settings**23.2.2.2 Caller settings**

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Name UCI: mobile.@caller[0].name Opt: name	Name assigned to the caller.				
Web: Number UCI: mobile.@caller[0].number Opt: number	Number of the caller allowed to SMS the router. Add in specific caller numbers, or use the wildcard symbol *.				
Web: Enable UCI: mobile.@caller[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables incoming caller ID. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Respond UCI: mobile.@caller[0].respond Opt: respond	If checked, the router will return an SMS. Select Respond if you want the router to reply. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 62: Information table for caller settings

23.2.3 Roaming interface template

Roaming Interface Template
Common config values for interfaces created by Automatic Operator Selection

Interface Signal Sort: Sort interfaces by signal strength so those having better signal strength at the startup would be tried first

Roaming SIM: In which slot roaming sim-card is inserted

Firewall Zone: lan: lan:
 wan: 3g_s1_voda:
 unspecified -or- create:
Append all the generated interfaces to this zone

Service Type:

APN:

PIN:

PAP/CHAP username:

PAP/CHAP password:

Health Monitor Interval:

Health Monitor ICMP Host(s):

Health Monitor ICMP Timeout:

Attempts Before WAN Failover:

Attempts Before WAN Recovery:

Priority: Higher value is higher priority

Minimum ifup Interval:

Interface Start Timeout: Time for interface to startup

Signal Threshold (dBm): Below is a failure

Add

Save & Apply **Save** **Reset**

Figure 102: The roaming interface template page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description										
Web: Interface Signal Sort UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].sort_sig_strength Opt: sort_sig_strength	<p>Sorts interfaces by signal strength priority so those that have a better signal strength will be tried first.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Roaming SIM UCI: mobile.main.roaming_sim Opt: roaming_sim	<p>Sets in which slot to insert roaming SIM card.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>SIM slot 1.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>SIM slot 2.</td></tr> </table>	1	SIM slot 1.	2	SIM slot 2.						
1	SIM slot 1.										
2	SIM slot 2.										
Web: Firewall Zone UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].firewall_zone Opt: firewall_zone	<p>Adds all generated interfaces to this zone. Select existing zone or click unspecified or create to create new zone.</p>										
Web: Service Type UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].service Opt: service	<p>Specifies the service type that will be used to connect to the network.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Auto</td><td>GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.</td></tr> <tr> <td>lte_only</td><td>Allows GSM module to only connect to LTE network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>umts_only</td><td>Allows GSM module to only connect to 3G network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>gprs_only</td><td>Allows GSM module to only connect to GPRS network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>cdma</td><td>Allows GSM module to only connect to cdma network.</td></tr> </table>	Auto	GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.	lte_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to LTE network.	umts_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to 3G network.	gprs_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to GPRS network.	cdma	Allows GSM module to only connect to cdma network.
Auto	GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.										
lte_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to LTE network.										
umts_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to 3G network.										
gprs_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to GPRS network.										
cdma	Allows GSM module to only connect to cdma network.										
Web: APN UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].apn Opt: apn	APN name of Mobile Network Operator.										
Web: PIN UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].pincode Opt: pincode	SIM card's PIN number.										
Web: PAP/CHAP username UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].username Opt: username	Username used to connect to APN.										
Web: PAP/CHAP password UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].password Opt: password	Password used to connect to APN.										
Web: Health Monitor Interval UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_interval Opt: health_interval	<p>Sets the period to check the health status of the interface. The Health Monitor interval will be used for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> interface state checks ping interval signal strength checks 										
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Host(s) UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].icmp_hosts Opt: icmp_hosts	<p>Specifies target IP address for ICMP packets.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Disable</td><td>Disables the option.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DNS servers</td><td>DNS IP addresses will be used.</td></tr> <tr> <td>WAN gateway</td><td>Gateway IP address will be used.</td></tr> <tr> <td>custom</td><td>Ability to provide IP address.</td></tr> </table>	Disable	Disables the option.	DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.	WAN gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.	custom	Ability to provide IP address.		
Disable	Disables the option.										
DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.										
WAN gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.										
custom	Ability to provide IP address.										

Web: Health Monitor ICMP Timeout UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].timeout Opt: timeout	Specifies the time in seconds that Health Monitor ICMP will timeout at. Sets ping timeout in seconds. Choose the time in seconds that the health monitor ICMP will timeout at.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>3</td><td>Wait 3 seconds for ping reply</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply	Range	
3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply				
Range					
Web: Attempts Before WAN Failover UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[1].health_fail_retries Opt: health_fail_retries	Defines the number of health check failures before interface is disconnected.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	3		Range	
3					
Range					
Web: Attempts Before WAN Recovery UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_recovery_retries Opt: health_recovery_retries	Sets the number of health check passes before the interface is considered healthy. This field is not used for a roaming template.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>5</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	5		Range	
5					
Range					
Web: Priority UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].priority Opt: priority	Type the priority number. The higher the value, the higher the priority. This multi-WAN interface priority must be lower than the one specified in the priority field for the PMP interface.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					
Web: Minimum ifup interval UCI: multiwan.wan.ifup_retry_sec Opt: ifup_retry_sec	Not used for a roaming interface.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>300</td><td>Retry primary interface every 300 seconds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds	Range	
300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds				
Range					
Web: Interface Start Timeout UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_timeout_sec Opt: ifup_timeout	Specifies the time in seconds for interface to start up. If it is not up after this period, it will be considered a fail.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>40</td><td>40 seconds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	40	40 seconds	Range	
40	40 seconds				
Range					
Web: Signal Threshold (dBm) UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].signal_threshold Opt: signal_threshold	Specifies the minimum RSCP signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for rscp_dbm in mobile diagnostics.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dBm</td></tr> <tr> <td>-115dBm</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range	-46 to -115 dBm	-115dBm	
Range	-46 to -115 dBm				
-115dBm					

Table 63: Information table for roaming interface template

When you have configured your settings, click **Save & Apply**.

In the top menu, select **System -> Reboot**. The System page appears.

System

Reboot

Reboots the operating system of your device

Reboot now

Reboot on - - :

Powered by LuCI Trunk (trunk+svn8382) 15.00.32 image1 config2

Figure 103: The reboot page

Check the **Reboot now** check box and then click **Reboot**.

23.2.4 Scenario 2: PMP + roaming: pre-empt disabled

As in the previous section, multi-WAN connects the PMP interface and uses auto created interfaces for failover.

However, in this scenario, the auto-created interface will not be disconnected as soon as the `ifup_retry_sec` expires for the PMP interface. The primary interface will be reconnected when the current auto-created interface fails multiwan health checks after expiration of the `ifup_retry_sec` timer.

Follow the instructions in the section above for creation of the PMP interface, multi-WAN and Mobile Manager roaming interfaces. The only change in configuration compared to the PMP + roaming: pre-empt enabled scenario is that you must disable the pre-empt option in the multi-WAN package.

23.2.4.1 Set multi-WAN options for pre-empt disabled

To disable PMP + roaming pre-empt, in the top menu, select **Network -> Multi-Wan**.

In the Multi-WAN page, ensure Preempt is not selected.

Multi-WAN

Multi-WAN allows for the use of multiple uplinks for failover.

Enable

Preempt

Alternate Mode ⓘ *It will use alternate interface after reboot*

Figure 104: The multi-wan page, pre-empt not selected

Click **Save & Apply**.

In the top menu, select **System -> Reboot**. The System Reboot page appears.

System

Reboot

Reboots the operating system of your device

Reboot now

Reboot on - - :

Powered by LuCI Trunk (trunk+svn8382) 15.00.32 image1 config2

Figure 105: The system reboot page

Check the **Reboot now** check box and then click **Reboot**.

23.2.5 Scenario 3: No PMP + roaming

In this scenario there is no PMP interface that can be used for a connection. The router scans the available mobile networks at boot and sorts the networks according to signal strength.

The network that offers the best signal strength will be the first to connect. Multi-WAN then controls the failover between the available networks.

Multiwan periodically does a health check on the interface. A health check comprises of a configurable combination of the following:

- interface state
- pings to an ICMP target
- signal level checks using signal threshold, RSCP threshold and ECIO threshold option values

A fail for any of the above health checks results in a fail. After a configurable number of health check failures, Multi-WAN will disconnect the failed interface and attempt to connect to the next best roaming interface.

23.2.6 Set options for automatically created interfaces (failover)

In the top menu on the web interface page, select **Services ->Mobile Manager**. The Mobile Manager page appears.

There are three sections:

Basic settings	Configure SMS, select roaming SIM and collect ICCIDs
Callers	Configure callers that can use SMS.
Roaming Interface Template	Configure common values for interface created by Automatic Operator Selection.

23.2.6.1 Basic settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: SMS Enable UCI: mobile.main.sms Opt: sms	Enables SMS. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>no</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>yes</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	no	Disabled.	yes	Enabled.
no	Disabled.				
yes	Enabled.				
Web: Collect ICCIDs UCI: mobile.main.init_get_iccids Opt: init_get_iccids	Enables or disables integrated circuit card identifier ICCID's collection functionality. If enabled then both SIM 1 and SIM 2 ICCID's will be collected otherwise it will default to SIM 1. This will be display under mobile stats. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>no</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>yes</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	no	Disabled.	yes	Enabled.
no	Disabled.				
yes	Enabled.				
Web: PIN code for SIM1 UCI: mobile.main.sim2pin Opt: sim2pin	Depending on the SIM card specify the pin code for SIM 1. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>blank</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	blank		range	
blank					
range					
Web: PIN code for SIM2 UCI: mobile.main.sim2pin Opt: sim2pin	Depending on the SIM card specify the pin code for SIM 2. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>blank</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	blank		range	
blank					
range					

Web: HDR Auto User ID UCI: mobile.main.hdr_userid Opt: hdr_userid	AN-PPP user ID. Supported on Cellient (CDMA) modem only. blank range
---	--

Table 64: Information table for mobile manager basic settings**23.2.6.2 Caller settings**

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Name UCI: mobile.@caller[0].name Opt: name	Name assigned to the caller. blank range
Web: Number UCI: mobile.@caller[0].number Opt: number	Number of the caller allowed to SMS the router. Add in specific caller numbers, or use the wildcard symbol. blank range
Web: Enable UCI: mobile.@caller[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables incoming caller ID. no Disabled. yes Enabled.
Web: Respond UCI: mobile.@caller[0].respond Opt: respond	If checked, the router will return an SMS. Select Respond if you want the router to reply. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.

Table 65: Information table for mobile manager caller settings

23.2.7 Roaming interface template

The screenshot shows the 'Roaming Interface Template' configuration page. At the top, there are navigation links: Status, System, Services, Network, and Logout. A blue bar indicates 'UNSAVED CHANGES' with a count of 1. Below the header, the title 'Roaming Interface Template' and a subtitle 'Common config values for interfaces created by Automatic Operator Selection' are displayed. A 'Delete' button is located in the top right corner.

Interface Signal Sort: A checked checkbox with a tooltip: 'Sort interfaces by signal strength so those having better signal strength at the startup would be tried first.'

Roaming SIM: A dropdown menu set to '1' with a tooltip: 'In which slot roaming sim-card is inserted.'

Firewall Zone: A dropdown menu set to 'lan' with a tooltip: 'Append all the generated interfaces to this zone.'

Service Type: A dropdown menu set to 'UMTS/GPRS'.

APN: A text input field containing 'vpn.amylan.co.uk'.

PIN: An empty text input field.

PAP/CHAP username: A text input field containing 'campen1'.

PAP/CHAP password: A masked text input field.

Health Monitor Interval: A dropdown menu set to 'Disable'.

Health Monitor ICMP Host(s): A dropdown menu set to 'Disable'.

Health Monitor ICMP Timeout: A dropdown menu set to '1 sec.'.

Attempts Before WAN Failover: A dropdown menu set to '3'.

Attempts Before WAN Recovery: A dropdown menu set to '5'.

Priority: A dropdown menu set to '5' with a tooltip: 'Higher value is higher priority'.

Minimum ifup Interval: A dropdown menu set to '120 sec.' with a tooltip: 'Minimum interval between two successive interface start attempts'.

Interface Start Timeout: A dropdown menu set to '180' with a tooltip: 'Time for interface to startup'.

Signal Threshold (dBm): A dropdown menu set to '-105' with a tooltip: 'Below is a failure'.

Add: A button to add new roaming interface templates.

Buttons at the bottom: Save & Apply, Save, and Reset.

Figure 106: The roaming interface template page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Interface Signal Sort UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].sort_sig_strength Opt: sort_sig_strength	Sorts interfaces by signal strength priority so those that have a better signal strength will be tried first.				
Web: Roaming SIM UCI: mobile.main.roaming_sim Opt: roaming_sim	Sets which slot to insert roaming SIM card. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>SIM slot 1.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>SIM slot 2.</td> </tr> </table>	1	SIM slot 1.	2	SIM slot 2.
1	SIM slot 1.				
2	SIM slot 2.				
Web: Firewall Zone UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].firewall_zone Opt: firewall_zone	Adds all generated interfaces to this zone. Select existing zone or click unspecified or create to create a new zone.				

Web: Service Type UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].service Opt: service	Specifies the service type that will be used to connect to the network. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>UMTS/GPRS</td><td>GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Umts_only</td><td>Allows GSM module to only connect to 3G network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GPRS_only</td><td>Allows GSM module to only connect to GPRS network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>cdma</td><td>Allows GSM module to only connect to cdma network.</td></tr> </table>	UMTS/GPRS	GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.	Umts_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to 3G network.	GPRS_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to GPRS network.	cdma	Allows GSM module to only connect to cdma network.
UMTS/GPRS	GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.								
Umts_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to 3G network.								
GPRS_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to GPRS network.								
cdma	Allows GSM module to only connect to cdma network.								
Web: APN UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].apn Opt: apn	APN name of Mobile Network Operator.								
Web: PIN UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].pincode Opt: pincode	SIM card's PIN number.								
Web: PAP/CHAP username UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].username Opt: username	Username used to connect to APN.								
Web: PAP/CHAP password UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].password Opt: password	Password used to connect to APN.								
Web: Health Monitor Interval UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_interval Opt: health_interval	Sets the period to check the health status of the interface. The Health Monitor interval will be used for: interface state checks ping interval signal strength checks								
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Host(s) UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].icmp_hosts Opt: icmp_hosts	Specifies target IP address for ICMP packets. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Disable</td> <td>Disables the option</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DNS servers</td> <td>DNS IP addresses will be used.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN gateway</td> <td>Gateway IP address will be used.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>custom</td> <td>Ability to provide IP address.</td> </tr> </table>	Disable	Disables the option	DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.	WAN gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.	custom	Ability to provide IP address.
Disable	Disables the option								
DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.								
WAN gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.								
custom	Ability to provide IP address.								
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Timeout UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].timeout Opt: timeout	Sets ping timeout in seconds. Choose the time in seconds that the health monitor ICMP will timeout at. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Wait 3 seconds for ping reply</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply	Range					
3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply								
Range									
Web: Attempts Before WAN Failover UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[1].health_fail_retries Opt: health_fail_retries	Defines the number of health check failures before interface is disconnected. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	3		range					
3									
range									
Web: Attempts Before WAN Recovery UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_recovery_retries Opt: health_recovery_retries	Sets the number of health check passes before the interface is considered healthy. This field is not used for a roaming template.								
Web: Priority UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].priority Opt: priority	Type the priority number. The higher the value, the higher the priority. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	0		range					
0									
range									

Web: Minimum ifup interval UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_retry_sec Opt: ifup_retry_sec	Specifies the interval in seconds before retrying the primary interface when pre-empt mode is enabled. <table border="1"><tr><td>300</td><td>Retry primary interface every 300 seconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds	Range	
300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds				
Range					
Web: Interface Start Timeout UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_timeout_sec Opt: ifup_timeout	Specifies the time in seconds for interface to start up. If it is not up after this period, it will be considered a fail. It is recommended to configure a value greater than 120 seconds. <table border="1"><tr><td>40</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>range</td><td></td></tr></table>	40		range	
40					
range					
Web: Signal Threshold (dBm) UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].signal_threshold Opt: signal_threshold	Specifies the minimum signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for sig_dbm in mobile diagnostics.-115 dBm <table border="1"><tr><td>Disabled</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>range</td><td>-46 to -115 dBm</td></tr></table>	Disabled		range	-46 to -115 dBm
Disabled					
range	-46 to -115 dBm				

Table 66: Information table for roaming interface template

When you have configured your settings, click **Save & Apply**.

23.2.7.1 Set multi-WAN operation

From the top menu, select **Network -> Multi-Wan**. The Multi-WAN page appears.

Figure 107: The multi-WAN page

In the Multi-WAN section click **Add**.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enable UCI: multiwan.config.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables multiwan. Select this option. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Preempt UCI: multiwan.config.preempt Opt: pre-empt	Enables or disables pre-emption for multiwan. If enabled the router will keep trying to connect to a higher priority interface depending on timer set by ifup_retry_sec. Leave this option unselected. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Alternate Mode UCI: multiwan.config.alt Opt: alt	Enables or disables alternate mode for multiwan. If enabled the router will use an alternate interface after reboot. Leave this option unselected. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 67: Information table for multi-WAN operation

23.3 Configuring via UCI

23.3.1 PMP + roaming: pre-empt enabled & disabled via UCI

23.3.1.1 PMP interface configuration

The PMP interface is configured in the network package /etc/config/network. To view the network configuration file, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export network
package network

config interface 'loopback'
    option ifname 'lo'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '127.0.0.1'
    option netmask '255.0.0.0'

config interface 'lan'
    option ifname 'eth0'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '192.168.100.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'

config interface '3g_s1_voda'
    option auto '0'
    option proto '3g'
```

```

option service 'umts'
option apn 'testIE'
option username 'test'
option password 'test'
option sim '1'          option operator 'vodafone IE'

```

To view uci commands, enter:

```

root@GW_router:~# uci show network
network.loopback=interface
network.loopback.ifname=lo
network.loopback.proto=static
network.loopback.ipaddr=127.0.0.1
network.loopback.netmask=255.0.0.0
network.lan=interface
network.lan.ifname=eth0
network.lan.proto=static
network.lan.ipaddr=192.168.100.1
network.lan.netmask=255.255.255.0
network.3g_s1_voda=interface
network. 3g_s1_voda.auto=0
network. 3g_s1_voda.proto=3g
network. 3g_s1_voda.service=umts
network. 3g_s1_voda.apn=test IE
network. 3g_s1_voda.username=test
network. 3g_s1_voda.password=test
network. 3g_s1_voda.sim=1
network. 3g_s1_voda.operator=vodafone IE

```

23.3.1.2 Roaming interface configuration

The roaming interface configurations are stored in the mobile package /etc/config/mobile. To view the mobile configuration file, enter: root@GW_router:~# uci export mobile

```

config mobile 'main'
    option sms 'yes'
    option roaming_sim '1'
    option init_get_iccids 'no'
config caller

```

```

option name 'Test'
option number '*'
option enabled 'yes'
option respond 'yes'

config roaming_template
    option roaming_sim '1'
    option firewall_zone 'wan'
    option apn 'test IE'
    option username 'test'
    option password 'test'
    option service 'umts'
    option health_interval '4'
    option icmp_hosts 'disable'
    option timeout 'disable'
    option health_fail_retries '3'
    option signal_threshold '-95'
    option priority '5'
    option ifup_retry_sec '120'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '180'
    option defaultroute 'yes'
    option sort_sig_strength 'yes'

```

To view the uci command of package mobile, enter:

```

root@GW_router:~#uci show mobile
mobile.main=mobile
mobile.main.sms=yes
mobile.main.roaming_sim=1
mobile.main.init_get_iccid=no
mobile.@caller[0]=caller
mobile.@caller[0].name=Test
mobile.@caller[0].number=*
mobile.@caller[0].enabled=yes
mobile.@caller[0].respond=yes
mobile.@roaming_template[0]=roaming_template
mobile.@roaming_template[0].roaming_sim=1
mobile.@roaming_template[0].firewall_zone=wan

```

```

mobile.@roaming_template[0].apn=test IE
mobile.@roaming_template[0].username=test
mobile.@roaming_template[0].password=test
mobile.@roaming_template[0].service=umts
mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_interval=4
mobile.@roaming_template[0].icmp_hosts=disable
mobile.@roaming_template[0].timeout=disable
mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_fail_retries=3
mobile.@roaming_template[0].signal_threshold=-95
mobile.@roaming_template[0].priority=5
mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_retry_sec=120
mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_timeout_sec=180
mobile.@roaming_template[0].defaultroute=yes
mobile.@roaming_template[0].sort_sig_strength=yes

```

23.3.1.3 Multi-WAN configuration using UCI

The configuration file for package multiwan is stored on **/etc/config/multiwan**

To see configuration file of mobile package, enter:

```

root@GW_router:~# cat /etc/config/multiwan
config multiwan 'config'
    option enabled '1'
    option preempt '1'

config interface '3g_s1_voda'
    option health_fail_retries '3'
    option health_interval '3'
    option timeout '1'
    option icmp_hosts 'disable'
    option priority '10'
    option exclusive_group '3g'
    option signal_threshold '-95'
    option ifup_retry_sec '350'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '180'
    option manage_state '1'

```

To view the uci command of package multiwan, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show multiwan
multiwan.config=multiwan
multiwan.config.enabled=1
multiwan.config.preempt=1
multiwan.main_voda=interface
multiwan.main_voda.health_fail_retries=3
multiwan.main_voda.health_interval=3
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.timeout=1
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.icmp_hosts=disable
multiwan.3g_s1_main_voda.priority=10
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.exclusive_group=3g
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.signal_threshold=-95
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.ifup_retry_sec=350
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.ifup_timeout_sec=180
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.manage_state=1
```

The difference between PMP + roaming: pre-empt enabled and disabled is setting one option parameter. To disable pre-empt, enter:

```
uci set multiwan.config.preempt=0
uci commit
```

Note: available values are:

0	Disabled
1	Enabled

23.4 Configuring no PMP + roaming using UCI

The roaming interface configuration file is stored in the mobile package **/etc/config/mobile**. To view the mobile package, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export mobile

package mobile
config mobile 'main'
    option sms 'yes'
    option roaming_sim '1'
    option debug '1'
```

```

config caller
    option name 'Eval'
    option number '*'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option respond 'yes'

config roaming_template
    option roaming_sim '1'
    option firewall_zone 'wan'
    option apn 'test IE'
    option username 'test'
    option password 'test'
    option service 'umts'
    option health_fail_retries '2'
    option signal_threshold '-100'
    option priority '5'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '180'
    option defaultroute 'yes'
    option sort_sig_strength 'yes'
    option ifup_retry_sec '200'
    option health_interval '120'
    option icmp_hosts '172.31.4.129'
    option timeout '3'
    option health_recovery_retries '3'

```

To view the mobile package via uci commands, enter:

```

root@GW_router:~# uci show mobile
mobile.main=mobile
mobile.main.sms=yes
mobile.main.roaming_sim=1
mobile.main.debug=1
mobile.@caller[0]=caller
mobile.@caller[0].name=Eval
mobile.@caller[0].number=*
mobile.@caller[0].enabled=yes

```

```

mobile.@caller[0].respond=yes
mobile.@roaming_template[0]=roaming_template
mobile.@roaming_template[0].roaming_sim=1
mobile.@roaming_template[0].firewall_zone=wan
mobile.@roaming_template[0].apn=stream.co.uk
mobile.@roaming_template[0].username=default
mobile.@roaming_template[0].password=void
mobile.@roaming_template[0].service=umts
mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_fail_retries=2
mobile.@roaming_template[0].signal_threshold=-100
mobile.@roaming_template[0].priority=5
mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_timeout_sec=180
mobile.@roaming_template[0].defaultroute=yes
mobile.@roaming_template[0].sort_sig_strength=yes
mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_retry_sec=200
mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_interval=120
mobile.@roaming_template[0].icmp_hosts=172.31.4.129
mobile.@roaming_template[0].timeout=3
mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_recovery_retries=3

```

The multiwan package is stored on **/etc/config/multiwan**. To view the multiwan package, enter:

```

root@GW_router:~# uci export multiwan
package multiwan

config multiwan 'config'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option preempt 'no'
    option alt_mode 'no'

To see multiwan package via uci, enter:
root@GW_router:~# uci show multiwan
multiwan.config=multiwan
multiwan.config.enabled=yes
multiwan.config.preempt=no
multiwan.config.alt_mode=no

```

23.5 Automatic operator selection diagnostics via the web interface

23.5.1 Checking the status of the Multi-WAN package

When interfaces are auto created they are presented in the network and in the Multi-WAN package.

To check interfaces created in the Multi-WAN package, from the top menu, select **Network -> Multi-WAN**.

To check interfaces that have been created in the network package, from the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**.

Interface Overview		
Network	Status	Actions
3G_S1_O2IR 3g-3g_s1_o2ir	RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)	Connect Stop Edit Delete
3G_S1_VODA 3g-3g_s1_voda	Uptime: 7h 31m 26s RX: 62.00 B (8 Pkts.) TX: 23.44 KB (329 Pkts.) IPv4: 10.140.1.23/32	Connect Stop Edit Delete
WCLIENT Client "0"	MAC Address: 00:00:00:00:00:00 RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)	Connect Stop Edit Delete
LAN eth0	Uptime: 7h 35m 24s MAC Address: 00:E0:C8:10:1A:82 RX: 67.25 KB (502 Pkts.) TX: 132.29 KB (157 Pkts.) IPv4: 10.1.1.9/29	Connect Stop Edit Delete
LOOPBACK lo	Uptime: 7h 35m 30s MAC Address: 00:00:00:00:00:00 RX: 41.72 KB (516 Pkts.) TX: 41.72 KB (516 Pkts.) IPv4: 127.0.0.1/8 IPv6: 0:0:0:0:0:0:1/128	Connect Stop Edit Delete

Figure 108: The interface overview page

To check the status of the interface you are currently using, in the top menu, click **Status**. The Interface Status page appears.

Scroll down to the bottom of the page to view Multi-WAN Stats.

<i>There are no active leases.</i>
<p>Multi-WAN Status</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;">  3g_s1_voda : Up  3g_s1_O2IR : Down(standby backup) </div>

Figure 109: The status page: multi-WAN status section page

23.6 Automatic operator selection diagnostics via UCI

To check interfaces created in the multi-WAN package, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# cat /var/const_state/multiwan
```

```
root@VA_GW2021:~# cat /var/const_state/multiwan
multiwan.3g_s1_voda=interface
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.dns=auto
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.health_recovery_retries=5
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.exclusive_group=3g
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.manage_state=yes
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.health_fail_retries=5
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.ifup_retry_sec=80
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.ifup_timeout_sec=80
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.icmp_hosts=disable
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.health_interval=5
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.priority=10
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.timeout=disable
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.signal_threshold=-90
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR=interface
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.dns=auto
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.health_recovery_retries=5
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.exclusive_group=3g
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.manage_state=yes
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.health_fail_retries=5
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.ifup_retry_sec=80
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.ifup_timeout_sec=80
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.icmp_hosts=disable
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.health_interval=5
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.priority=10
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.timeout=disable
multiwan.3g_s1_o2IR.signal_threshold=-90
```

Figure 110: Example of output from the command: cat /var/const_stat/multiwan

To check interfaces created in the network package, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# cat /var/const_state/network
```

```
root@GW_GW0000 :~# cat /var/const_state/network
network.3g_s1_voda=interface
network.3g_s1_voda.auto=no
network.3g_s1_voda.service=umts
network.3g_s1_voda.roaming_sim=1
network.3g_s1_voda.defaultroute=no
network.3g_s1_voda.username=internet
network.3g_s1_voda.apn=hs.vodafone.ie
network.3g_s1_voda.operator=vodafone IE
network.3g_s1_voda.proto=3g
network.3g_s1_voda.sim=1
network.3g_s1_voda.password=internet
network.3g_s1_o2IR=interface
network.3g_s1_o2IR.auto=no
network.3g_s1_o2IR.service=umts
network.3g_s1_o2IR.roaming_sim=1
network.3g_s1_o2IR.defaultroute=no
network.3g_s1_o2IR.username=internet
network.3g_s1_o2IR.apn=hs.vodafone.ie
network.3g_s1_o2IR.operator=o2 IRL
network.3g_s1_o2IR.proto=3g
network.3g_s1_o2IR.sim=1
network.3g_s1_o2IR.password=internet
root@VA_GW2021:~#
```

Figure 111: Example of output from the command cat /var/const_state/network

To check the status of the interface you are currently using, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# cat /var/const_state/mobile
```

```
root@GW_GW0000 :~# cat /var/const_state/network
mobile.3g_0=status
mobile.3g_0.sim1_iccid=89314404000039480265
root@GW_GW0000 :~#
root@GW_GW0000 :~#
root@GW_GW0000 :~# cat /var/state/mobile
mobile.3g_0=status
mobile.3g_0.sim_slot=1
mobile.3g_0.sim_in=yes
mobile.3g_0.registered=5, Roaming
mobile.3g_0.reg_code=5
mobile.3g_0.imei=357784040034322
mobile.3g_0.imsi=204043726270034
mobile.3g_0.registered_pkt=5, Roaming
mobile.3g_0.reg_code_pkt=5
mobile.3g_0.area=BCC
mobile.3g_0.tech=2
mobile.3g_0.technology=UTRAN
mobile.3g_0.operator=1,0,"vodafone IE",2
mobile.3g_0.cell=AA787
mobile.3g_0.sig_dbm=-113
root@GW_GW0000 :~#
```

Figure 112: Example of output from the command cat /vat/const_state/mobile

24 Configuring IPSec

Internet Protocol Security (IPSec) is a protocol suite used to secure communications at IP level. Use IPSec to secure communications between two hosts or between two networks. SATEL routers implement IPSec using strongSwan software.

If you need to create an IPSec template for DMVPN, read the chapter 'Dynamic Multipoint Virtual Private Network (DMVPN)'.

The number of IPSec tunnels supported by SATEL' routers is not limited in any way by software; the only hardware limitation is the amount of RAM installed on the device.

24.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
strongswan	general connection secret

24.2 Configuring IPSec using the web interface

To configure IPSec using the web interface, in the top menu, select **Services -> IPSec**. The strongSwan IPSec VPN page appears. There are three sections:

Common Settings	Control the overall behaviour of strongSwan. This behaviour is common across all tunnels.
Connection Settings	
Secret Settings	Together, these sections define the required parameters for a two-way IKEv1 tunnel.

24.2.1 Configure common settings

The screenshot shows the 'strongSwan IPsec VPN' configuration page. The title bar says 'strongSwan IPsec VPN' and 'Configuration of the strongSwan IPsec VPN system.' Below the title, there is a 'Delete' button. The main area contains several configuration options:

- Enable StrongSwan IPsec:** A checked checkbox.
- Strict CRL Policy:** A dropdown menu set to 'no'. A tooltip explains: 'Defines if a fresh CRL must be available in order for the peer authentication based on RSA signatures to succeed. IKEv2 additionally recognizes 'furi' which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.'
- Unique IDs:** A dropdown menu set to 'yes'. A tooltip explains: 'Whether a particular participant ID should be kept unique, with any new (automatically keyed) connection using an ID from a different IP address deemed to replace all old ones using that ID. Participant IDs normally are unique, so a new (automatically-keyed) connection using the same ID is almost invariably intended to replace an old one. The IKEv2 daemon also accepts the value 'replace' which is identical to 'yes' and the value 'keep' to reject new IKE SA setups and keep the duplicate established earlier.'
- Cache CRLs:** A checkbox with a tooltip: 'CRLs fetched via HTTP or LDAP will be cached.'
- Disable Revocation (CRL and OCSP):** A checkbox.
- Send INITIAL CONTACT by default:** A checked checkbox with a tooltip: 'Send INITIAL CONTACT notification when first connection attempt for all connections'
- Debug:** A dropdown menu set to 'none'.

Figure 113: The common settings section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description								
Web: Enable strongswan UCI: strongswan.general.enable Opt: enabled	Enables or disables IPSec. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Strict CRL Policy UCI: strongswan.general.strictcrlpolicy Opt: strictcrlpolicy	Defines if a fresh CRL must be available for the peer authentication based on RSA signatures to succeed. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>ifuri</td><td>The IKEv2 application additionally recognizes the "ifuri" option which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.	ifuri	The IKEv2 application additionally recognizes the "ifuri" option which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.		
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
ifuri	The IKEv2 application additionally recognizes the "ifuri" option which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.								
Web: Unique IDs UCI: strongswan.general.uniqueids Opt: uniqueids	Defines whether a particular participant ID should be kept unique, with any new (automatically keyed) connection using an ID from a different IP address deemed to replace all old ones using that ID. Participant IDs normally are unique, so a new (automatically-keyed) connection using the same ID is almost invariably intended to replace an old one. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>replace</td><td>Identical to Yes.</td></tr> <tr> <td>keep</td><td>Rejects new IKE SA and keep the duplicate established earlier</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.	replace	Identical to Yes.	keep	Rejects new IKE SA and keep the duplicate established earlier
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
replace	Identical to Yes.								
keep	Rejects new IKE SA and keep the duplicate established earlier								
Web: Cache CRLs UCI: strongswan.general.cachecrils Opt: cachecrils	Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) fetched via HTTP or LDAP will be cached in /etc/ipsec.d/crls/ under a unique file name derived from the certification authority's public key. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Disable Revocation UCI: strongswan.general.revocation_disabled Opt: revocation_disabled	Defines whether disable CRL and OCSP checking for revoked certificates. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Send INITIAL CONTACT by default UCI: strongswan.general.initial_contact Opt: initial_contact	Defines whether the first attempt to contact a remote peer by this strongswan instance sets the initial_contact flag, which should cause compliant peers to automatically bring down any previous sessions. This can also be enabled/disabled per connection. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Does not set initial contact flag.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Sets initial contact flag on first attempt.</td></tr> </table>	0	Does not set initial contact flag.	1	Sets initial contact flag on first attempt.				
0	Does not set initial contact flag.								
1	Sets initial contact flag on first attempt.								
Web: Debug UCI: strongswan.general.debug Opt: debug	Enables debugging. This option is used for trouble shooting issues. It is not suitable for a production environment. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>None</td><td>Debug disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Control</td><td>Debug enabled. Shows generic control flow with errors and very basic auditing logs.</td></tr> <tr> <td>All</td><td>Debug enabled. Most verbose logging also includes sensitive information such as keys.</td></tr> </table>	None	Debug disabled.	Control	Debug enabled. Shows generic control flow with errors and very basic auditing logs.	All	Debug enabled. Most verbose logging also includes sensitive information such as keys.		
None	Debug disabled.								
Control	Debug enabled. Shows generic control flow with errors and very basic auditing logs.								
All	Debug enabled. Most verbose logging also includes sensitive information such as keys.								

Table 68: Information table for IPSec common settings

24.2.2 Common settings: configure connection

Status ▾ System ▾ Services ▾ Network ▾ Logout

UNSAVED CHANGES 10
VIE-16.00.55
Image2/config2

Connections

Enabled

Aggressive Mode

Name

Autostart Action Operation on startup. **add** loads a connection without starting it. **route** loads a connection and installs kernel traps. If traffic is detected between localan and remotelan, a connection is established. **start** loads a connection and brings it up immediately. **ignore** do nothing

Connection Type

Delete

Figure 114: The configuring IPSec settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Enabled UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].enabled Opt: enable	Enables or disables IPSec connection.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Aggressive UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].aggressive Opt: aggressive	Enables or disables IKE aggressive mode. Note: using aggressive mode along with PSK authentication is less secure method than main mode and should be avoided.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Name UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].name Opt: name	Specifies a name for the tunnel.	
Web: Autostart Action UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].auto Opt: auto	Specifies when the tunnel is initiated.	
	start	On start up.
	route	When traffic routes this way.
	add	Loads a connection without starting it.
	ignore	Ignores the connection.
	always	Actively retries to establish the tunnel if it went down.
Web: Connection Type UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].type Opt: type	Defines the type of IPSec connection.	
	tunnel	Connection uses tunnel mode.
	transport	Connection uses transport mode.
	pass	Connection does not perform any IPSec processing.
	drop	Connection drops all the packets.

Table 69: Information table for connection settings

24.2.3 Common settings: IP addressing

Figure 115: The IP addressing settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Remote GW Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteaddress Opt: remoteaddress	Sets the public IP address of the remote peer.
Web: Local ID UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localid Opt: localid	Defines the local peer identifier.
Web: Remote ID UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteid Opt: remoteid	Defines the remote peer identifier.
Web: Local LAN IP Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].locallan Opt: locallan	Defines the local IP of LAN.
Web: Local LAN IP Address Mask UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].locallanmask Opt: locallanmask	Defines the subnet of local LAN.
Web: Remote LAN IP Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remotelan Opt: remotelan	Defines the IP address of LAN serviced by remote peer.
Web: Remote LAN IP Address Mask UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remotelanmask Opt: remotelanmask	Defines the Subnet of remote LAN.

Web: Local Protocol UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localproto Opt: localproto	Restricts the connection to a single protocol on the local side.														
Web: Local Port UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localport Opt: localport	Restricts the connection to a single port on the local side.														
Web: Remote Protocol UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteproto Opt: remoteproto	Restricts the connection to a single protocol on the remote side.														
Web: Remote Port UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteport Opt: remoteport	Restricts the connection to a single port on the remote side.														
Web: Authby UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].authby Opt: authby	<p>Defines how the two secure gateways should authenticate. Note: using aggressive mode along with PSK authentication is unsecure and should be avoided.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Pubkey</td> <td>For public key signatures.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Rsasig</td> <td>For RSA digital signatures.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ecdsasig</td> <td>For Elliptic Curve DSA signatures.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Psk</td> <td>Using a preshared key.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>xauthrsasig</td> <td>Enables eXtended Authentication (XAuth) with addition to RSA signatures.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>xauthpsk</td> <td>Using extended authentication and preshared key.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>never</td> <td>Can be used if negotiation is never to be attempted or accepted (shunt connections).</td> </tr> </table>	Pubkey	For public key signatures.	Rsasig	For RSA digital signatures.	ecdsasig	For Elliptic Curve DSA signatures.	Psk	Using a preshared key.	xauthrsasig	Enables eXtended Authentication (XAuth) with addition to RSA signatures.	xauthpsk	Using extended authentication and preshared key.	never	Can be used if negotiation is never to be attempted or accepted (shunt connections).
Pubkey	For public key signatures.														
Rsasig	For RSA digital signatures.														
ecdsasig	For Elliptic Curve DSA signatures.														
Psk	Using a preshared key.														
xauthrsasig	Enables eXtended Authentication (XAuth) with addition to RSA signatures.														
xauthpsk	Using extended authentication and preshared key.														
never	Can be used if negotiation is never to be attempted or accepted (shunt connections).														

Table 70: Information table for IP addressing settings

24.2.4 Common settings: IPSec settings

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for an IPSec connection. The top bar displays the router's name (VA_router) and various navigation links. The main area contains several configuration parameters:

- XAuth identity:** A text input field with a tooltip explaining it defines the XAuth identity.
- Reauthenticate:** A checkbox labeled "Reauthenticate the peer at every rekeying of the IKE_SA".
- IKE algorithm:** A dropdown menu set to "aes256-sha1-modp1024".
- ESP algorithm:** A dropdown menu set to "3des-sha1-modp1024".
- WAN Interface:** A dropdown menu set to "wan".
- IKE life time:** A text input field set to "900s".
- Key life:** A text input field set to "500s".
- Rekey margin:** A text input field set to "30s".
- Keying tries:** A text input field set to "%forever".
- Restart delay:** A text input field set to "0s".
- DPD Action:** A dropdown menu set to "restart".
- DPD Delay:** A text input field set to "30s".
- DPD Timeout:** A text input field set to "150s".
- Inherit CHILD SA:** A checkbox labeled "Inherit CHILD SA when IKE SA is rekeyed".
- Send INITIAL CONTACT:** A checkbox labeled "Send INITIAL CONTACT notification when first connection attempt".

Figure 116: The IPSec connections settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: XAuth Identity UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].xauth_identity Opt: xauth_identity	Defines Xauth ID.

<p>Web: IKE Algorithm UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].ike Opt: ike</p>	<p>Specifies the IKE algorithm to use. The format is: encAlgo authAlgo DHGroup encAlgo: 3des aes128 aes256 serpent twofish blowfish authAlgo: md5 sha sha2 DHGroup: modp1024 modp1536 modp2048 modp3072 modp4096 modp6144 modp8192 For example, a valid IKE algorithm is aes128-sha-modp1536.</p>
<p>Web: ESP algorithm UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].esp Opt: esp</p>	<p>Specifies the esp algorithm to use. The format is: encAlgo authAlgo DHGroup encAlgo: 3des aes128 aes256 serpent twofish blowfish authAlgo: md5 sha sha2 DHGroup: modp1024 modp1536 modp2048 modp3072 modp4096 modp6144 modp8192 For example, a valid encryption algorithm is: aes128-sha-modp1536. If no DH group is defined then PFS is disabled.</p>
<p>Web: WAN Interface UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].waniface Opt: waniface</p>	<p>This is a space-separated list of the WAN interfaces the router will use to establish a tunnel with the secure gateway. On the web, a list of the interface names is automatically generated. If you want to specify more than one interface use the "custom" value. Example: if you have a 3G WAN interface called 'wan' and a WAN ADSL interface called 'dsl' and wanted to use one of these interfaces for this IPSec connection, you would use: 'wan adsl'.</p>

Web: IKE Life Time UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].ikelifetime Opt: ikelifetime	Specifies how long the keyring channel of a connection (ISAKMP or IKE SA) should last before being renegotiated.	
	3h	
Web: Key Life UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].keylife Opt: keylife	Timespec	1d, 3h, 25m, 10s.
	Specifies how long a particular instance of a connection (a set of encryption/authentication keys for user packets) should last, from successful negotiation to expiry. Normally, the connection is renegotiated (via the keying channel) before it expires (see rekeymargin).	
Web: Rekey Margin UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].rekeymargin Opt: rekeymargin	1h	
	Timespec	1d, 1h, 25m, 10s.
Web: Restart Delay UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].restartdelay Opt: restartdelay	9m	
	Timespec	1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.
Web: Keying Tries UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].keyringtries Opt: keyringtries	Defines specific delay when re-establishing a connection. Previously if <code>close_action=restart</code> , then new option <code>restartdelay</code> controls how many seconds it waits before attempting to re-establish the tunnel (to allow head-end some time to tidy up). If not set, it defaults to zero, which means that the previous behaviour of choosing a random time interval in the range 0..RekeyMargin seconds takes effect.	
	0	
Web: DPD Action UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpdaction Opt: dpdaction	Timespec	1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.
	Specifies how many attempts (a positive integer or %forever) should be made to negotiate a connection, or a replacement for one, before giving up. The value %forever means 'never give up'. Relevant only locally, other end need not agree on it.	
Web: DPD Delay UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpddelay Opt: dpddelay	Defines DPD (Dead Peer Detection) action.	
	None	Disables DPD.
Web: DPD Timeout UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpdtimeout Opt: dpdtimeout	Clear	Clear down the tunnel if peer does not respond. Reconnect when traffic brings the tunnel up.
	Hold	Clear down the tunnel and bring up as soon as the peer is available.
Web: DPD Timeout UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpdtimeout Opt: dpdtimeout	Restart	Restarts DPD when no activity is detected.
	Defines the period time interval with which R_U_THERE messages and INFORMATIONAL exchanges are sent to the peer. These are only sent if no other traffic is received.	
Web: DPD Timeout UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpdtimeout Opt: dpdtimeout	30s	
	Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.
Web: Inherit CHILD SA UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].inherit_child Opt: inherit_child	Defines the timeout interval, after which all connections to a peer are deleted in case of inactivity.	
	150s	
Web: Inherit CHILD SA UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].inherit_child Opt: inherit_child	Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.
	Defines whether the existing phase two IPSEC SA is maintained through IKE rekey for this tunnel. This is normally set to match the behaviour on the IPSEC headend.	
Web: Inherit CHILD SA UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].inherit_child Opt: inherit_child	0	Delete the existing IPSEC SA on IKE rekey
	1	Maintain the existing IPSEC SA on IKE rekey

Web: Send INITIAL CONTACT UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].initial_contact Opt: initial_contact	Defines whether the first attempt to contact a remote peer by this strongswan instance sets the initial_contact flag which should cause compliant peers to automatically bring down any previous sessions.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Do not set initial contact flag</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Set initial contact flag on first attempt</td></tr> </table>	0	Do not set initial contact flag	1	Set initial contact flag on first attempt
0	Do not set initial contact flag				
1	Set initial contact flag on first attempt				

Table 71: Information table for IPSec connections settings

24.2.5 Configure secret settings

Each tunnel requires settings to configure how the local end point of the tunnel proves its identity to the remote end point.

Figure 117: IPSec secrets settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description										
Web: Enabled UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].enabled Opt: enabled	Defines whether this set of credentials is to be used or not. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].idtype Opt: idtype	Defines whether IP address or userfqdn is used.										
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].localaddress Opt: localaddress	Defines the local address this secret applies to.										
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].remoteaddress Opt: remoteaddress	Defines the remote address this secret applies to.										
Web: N/A UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].userfqnd Opt: userfqnd	FQDN or Xauth name used of Extended Authentication. This must match xauth_identity from the configuration connection section.										
Web: Secret Type UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].secrettype Opt: secrettype	Specifies the authentication mechanism to be used by the two peers. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Psk</td><td>Preshared secret</td></tr> <tr> <td>Pubkey</td><td>Public key signatures</td></tr> <tr> <td>RsaSig</td><td>RSA digital signatures</td></tr> <tr> <td>EcdsaSig</td><td>Elliptic Curve DSA signatures</td></tr> <tr> <td>Xauth</td><td>Extended authentication</td></tr> </table>	Psk	Preshared secret	Pubkey	Public key signatures	RsaSig	RSA digital signatures	EcdsaSig	Elliptic Curve DSA signatures	Xauth	Extended authentication
Psk	Preshared secret										
Pubkey	Public key signatures										
RsaSig	RSA digital signatures										
EcdsaSig	Elliptic Curve DSA signatures										
Xauth	Extended authentication										

Web: Secret UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].secret Opt: secret	Defines the secret.
---	---------------------

Table 72: Information table for IPSec secrets settings

24.3 Configuring IPSec using UCI

24.3.1 Common settings

```
# Commands
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci set strongswan.general=general
uci set strongswan.general.enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.general.strictcrlpolicy=no
uci set strongswan.general.uniqueids=yes
uci set strongswan.general.cachecrls=no
uci set strongswan.general.debug=none
uci set strongswan.general.initial_contact=0
uci commit
```

This will create the following output:

```
config general 'general'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option strictcrlpolicy 'no'
    option uniqueids 'yes'
    option cachecrls 'no'
    option debug 'none'
    option initial_contact '0'
```

24.3.2 Connection settings

```
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci add strongswan connection
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].ikelifetime=3h
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].keylife=1h
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].rekeymargin=9m
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].keyingtries=3
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].restartdelay=0
```

```

uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpdaction=none
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpddelay=30s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpdtimeout=150s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].name=3G_Backup
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].auto=start
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].type=tunnel
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].remoteaddress=100.100.100.100
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].localid=192.168.209.1
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].remoteid=100.100.100.100
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].locallan=192.168.209.1
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].locallanmask=255.255.255.255
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].remotelan=172.19.101.3
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].remotelanmask=255.255.255.255
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].authby=xauthpsk
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].xauth_identity=testxauth
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].ike=3des-md5-modp1024
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].esp=3des-md5
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].waniface=wan
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].inherit_child=0
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].initial_contact=0
uci commit

```

This will create the following output:

```

config connection
    option ikelifetime '3h'
    option keylife '1h'
    option rekeymargin '9m'
    option keyingtries '3'
    option restartdelay '0'
    option dpdaction 'none'
    option dpddelay '30s'
    option dpdtimeout '150s'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option name '3G_Backup'
    option auto 'start'

```

```

option type 'tunnel'
option remoteaddress '100.100.100.100'
option localid '192.168.209.1'
option remoteid '100.100.100.100'
option locallan '192.168.209.1'
option locallanmask '255.255.255.255'
option remotelan '172.19.101.3'
option remotelanmask '255.255.255.255'
option authby 'xauthpsk'
option xauth_identity 'testxauth'
option ike '3des-md5-modp1024'
option esp '3des-md5'
option waniface 'wan'
option inherit_child '0'
option initial_contact '0'

```

24.3.3 Shunt connection

If the remote LAN network is 0.0.0.0/0 then all traffic generated on the local LAN will be sent via the IPSec tunnel. This includes the traffic destined to the router's IP address. To avoid this situation you must include an additional config connection section.

```

# Commands
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci add strongswan connection
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].name=local
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].locallan=10.1.1.1
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].locallanmask=255.255.255.255
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].remotelan=10.1.1.0
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].remotelanmask=255.255.255.0
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].type=pass
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].auto=route
uci commit

```

This will create the following output:

```

config connection
    option name 'local'

```

```

option enabled 'yes'
option locallan '10.1.1.1'
option locallanmask '255.255.255.255'
option remotelan '10.1.1.0'
option remotelanmask '255.255.255.0'
option type 'pass'
option auto 'route'

```

Traffic originated on `remotelan` and destined to `locallan` address is excluded from VPN IPSec policy.

24.3.4 Secret settings

Each tunnel also requires settings for how the local end point of the tunnel proves its identity to the remote end point.

A sample secret section, which could be used with the connection section in 'Connection Settings', is shown below.

```

# Commands to add a secret for psk auth
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci add strongswan secret
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].localaddress=192.168.209.1
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].remoteaddress= 100.100.100.100
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].secrettype=psk
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].secret=secret
uci commit

```

This will create the following output:

```

config secret
    option enabled 'yes'
    option localaddress '192.168.209.1'
    option remoteaddress '100.100.100.100 '
    option secrettype 'psk'
    option secret 'secret'

```

If `xauth` is defined as the authentication method then you must include an additional config secret section, as shown in the example below.

```
# Commands to add a secret for xauth auth
touch /etc/config/strongswan

uci add strongswan secret

uci set strongswan.@secret[1].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].idtype=userfqdn
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].userfqdn=testxauth
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].remoteaddress=100.100.100.100
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].secret=xauth
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].secrettype=XAUTH

uci commit
```

This will create the following output:

```
config secret

    option enabled 'yes'
    option idtype 'userfqdn'
    option userfqdn 'testxauth'
    option remoteaddress '100.100.100.100'
    option secret 'xauth'
    option secrettype 'XAUTH'
```

24.4 Configuring an IPSec template for DMVPN via the web interface

To configure IPSec using the web interface, in the top menu, select **Services -> IPSec**. The strongSwan IPSec VPN page appears. There are three sections:

Common Settings	Control the overall behaviour of strongSwan. This behaviour is common across all tunnels.
Connection Settings	Together, these sections define the required parameters for a two-way IKEv1 tunnel.
Secret Settings	

24.4.1 Configure common settings

The screenshot shows the 'strongSwan IPsec VPN' configuration interface. At the top, there are navigation links: Services, Network, Logout, and a 'UNSAVED CHANGES 3' indicator. The main title is 'strongSwan IPsec VPN' with the subtitle 'Configuration of the strongSwan IPsec VPN system.' Below this, there are several configuration options:

- Enable StrongSwan IPsec**: A checked checkbox.
- Strict CRL Policy**: A dropdown menu set to 'no'. A tooltip explains: 'Defines if a fresh CRL must be available in order for the peer authentication based on RSA signatures to succeed. IKEv2 additionally recognizes 'ifuri' which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.'
- Unique IDs**: A dropdown menu set to 'yes'. A tooltip explains: 'Whether a particular participant ID should be kept unique, with any new (automatically keyed) connection using an ID from a different IP address deemed to replace all old ones using that ID. Participant IDs normally are unique, so a new (automatically-keyed) connection using the same ID is almost invariably intended to replace an old one. The IKEv2 daemon also accepts the value 'replace' which is identical to 'yes' and the value 'keep' to reject new IKE SA setups and keep the duplicate established earlier.'
- Cache CRLs**: A checkbox followed by a tooltip: 'CRLs fetched via HTTP or LDAP will be cached.'
- Debug**: A dropdown menu set to 'none'.

Figure 118: The common settings section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable strongswan UCI: strongswan.general.enable Opt: enabled	Enables or disables IPSec.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Strict CRL Policy UCI: strongswan.general.strictcrlpolicy Opt: strictcrlpolicy	Defines if a fresh CRL must be available for the peer authentication based on RSA signatures to succeed.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
	ifuri	The IKEv2 application additionally recognizes the "ifuri" option which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.
Web: Unique IDs UCI: strongswan.general.uniqueids Opt: uniqueids	Defines whether a particular participant ID should be kept unique, with any new (automatically keyed) connection using an ID from a different IP address deemed to replace all old ones using that ID. Participant IDs normally are unique, so a new (automatically-keyed) connection using the same ID is almost invariably intended to replace an old one.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
	replace	Identical to Yes
	keep	Rejects new IKE SA and keep the duplicate established earlier
Web: Cache CRLs UCI: strongswan.general.cacheccrls Opt: cacheccrls	Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) fetched via HTTP or LDAP will be cached in /etc/ipsec.d/crls/ under a unique file name derived from the certification authority's public key.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Debug UCI: strongswan.general.debug Opt: debug	Enable debugging. This option is used for trouble shooting issues. It is not suitable for a production environment.	
	None	Debug disabled.
	Control	Debug enabled. Shows generic control flow with errors and very basic auditing logs.
	All	Debug enabled. Most verbose logging also includes sensitive information such as keys.

Table 73: Information table for IPSec common settings

24.4.2 Configure connection settings

Scroll down to view the connection settings section.

If you want to create a DMVPN, you do not need to configure all settings as the DMVPN will automatically create them using the template. Leave the following sections blank:

- Remote GW Address
- Local ID
- Remote Id
- Local LAN IP Address
- Local LAN IP Address Mask
- Remote LAN IP Address
- Remote LAN IP Address Mask

Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Aggressive Mode	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Name	DMVPN_VDF
Autostart Action	ignore <small>Operation on startup. add loads a connection without starting it. route loads a connection and installs kernel traps. If traffic is detected between localan and remotelan, a connection is established. start loads a connection and brings it up immediately. ignore do nothing</small>
Connection Type	transport
Remote GW Address	
Local Id	
Remote Id	
Local LAN IP Address	
Local LAN IP Address Mask	
Remote LAN IP Address	
Remote LAN IP Address Mask	
Local Protocol	gre <small>Restrict the traffic selector to a single protocol on the local side</small>
Local Port	
Remote Protocol	gre <small>Restrict the traffic selector to a single protocol on the remote side</small>
Remote Port	
Authby	psk <small>How the two security gateways should authenticate each other.</small>
XAuth identity	
IKE algorithm	aes128-sha1-modp1024
ESP algorithm	3des-md5
WAN Interface	3GVDF
IKE life time	3h <small>How long the keying channel of a connection should last before being renegotiated.</small>
Key life	1h <small>Synonym for lifetime. How long a particular instance of a connection (a set of encryption/authentication keys for user packets) should last, from successful negotiation to expiry.</small>
Rekey margin	9m <small>Synonym for margintime. How long before connection expiry or keying-channel expiry should attempts to negotiate a replacement begin.</small>
Keying tries	3 <small>How many attempts (a positive integer or %forever) should be made to negotiate a connection, or a replacement for one, before giving up (default 3). The value %forever means 'never give up'.</small>
DPD Action	none <small>Controls the use of the DPD protocol where R_U_THERE notification messages (IKEv1) or empty INFORMATIONAL messages (IKEv2) are periodically sent in order to check the liveness of the IPsec peer. If no activity is detected, all connections with a dead peer are stopped and unroute (clear), put in the hold state (hold) or restarted (restart). The default is none which disables the active sending of DPD messages.</small>
DPD Delay	30s <small>Defines the period time interval with which R_U_THERE messages/INFORMATIONAL exchanges are sent to the peer.</small>
DPD Timeout	30s <small>Defines the timeout interval, after which all connections to a peer are deleted in case of inactivity.</small>

Figure 119: The connections settings section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description										
Web: Enabled UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].enabled Opt: enable	Enables or disables IPSec connection. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Aggressive UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].aggressive Opt: aggressive	Enables or disables IKE aggressive mode. Note: using aggressive mode along with PSK authentication is less secure method than main mode and should be avoided. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Name UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].name Opt: name	Specifies a name for the tunnel.										
Web: Autostart Action UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].auto Opt: auto	Specifies when the tunnel is initiated. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>start</td><td>On start up.</td></tr> <tr> <td>route</td><td>When traffic routes this way.</td></tr> <tr> <td>add</td><td>Loads a connection without starting it.</td></tr> <tr> <td>ignore</td><td>Ignores the connection.</td></tr> <tr> <td>always</td><td>Actively retries to establish the tunnel if it went down.</td></tr> </table>	start	On start up.	route	When traffic routes this way.	add	Loads a connection without starting it.	ignore	Ignores the connection.	always	Actively retries to establish the tunnel if it went down.
start	On start up.										
route	When traffic routes this way.										
add	Loads a connection without starting it.										
ignore	Ignores the connection.										
always	Actively retries to establish the tunnel if it went down.										
Web: Connection Type UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].type Opt: type	Defines the type of IPSec connection. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>tunnel</td><td>Connection uses tunnel mode.</td></tr> <tr> <td>transport</td><td>Connection uses transport mode.</td></tr> <tr> <td>pass</td><td>Connection does not perform any IPSec processing.</td></tr> <tr> <td>drop</td><td>Connection drops all the packets.</td></tr> </table>	tunnel	Connection uses tunnel mode.	transport	Connection uses transport mode.	pass	Connection does not perform any IPSec processing.	drop	Connection drops all the packets.		
tunnel	Connection uses tunnel mode.										
transport	Connection uses transport mode.										
pass	Connection does not perform any IPSec processing.										
drop	Connection drops all the packets.										
Web: Remote GW Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteaddress Opt: remoteaddress	Sets the public IP address of the remote peer. Leave blank for DMVPN.										
Web: Local ID UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localid Opt: localid	Defines the local peer identifier. Leave blank for DMVPN.										
Web: Remote ID UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteid Opt: remoteid	Defines the remote peer identifier. Leave blank for DMVPN.										
Web: Local LAN IP Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].locallan Opt: locallan	Defines the local IP of LAN. Leave blank for DMVPN.										
Web: Local LAN IP Address Mask UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].locallanmask Opt: locallanmask	Defines the subnet of local LAN. Leave blank for DMVPN.										
Web: Remote LAN IP Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remotelan Opt: remotelan	Defines the IP address of LAN serviced by remote peer. Leave blank for DMVPN.										
Web: Remote LAN IP Address Mask UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remotelanmask Opt: remotelanmask	Defines the Subnet of remote LAN. Leave blank for DMVPN.										
Web: Local Protocol UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localproto Opt: localproto	Restricts the connection to a single protocol on the local side.										

Web: Local Port UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localport Opt: localport	Restricts the connection to a single port on the local side.														
Web: Remote Protocol UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteproto Opt: remoteproto	Restricts the connection to a single protocol on the remote side.														
Web: Remote Port UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteport Opt: remoteport	Restricts the connection to a single port on the remote side.														
Web: Authby UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].authby Opt: authby	<p>Defines how the two secure gateways should authenticate. Note: using aggressive mode along with PSK authentication is unsecure and should be avoided.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Pubkey</td><td>For public key signatures.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Rsasig</td><td>For RSA digital signatures.</td></tr> <tr> <td>ecdsasig</td><td>For Elliptic Curve DSA signatures.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Psk</td><td>Using a preshared key.</td></tr> <tr> <td>xauthrsasig</td><td>Enables eXtended Authentication (XAuth) with addition to RSA signatures.</td></tr> <tr> <td>xauthpsk</td><td>Using extended authentication and preshared key.</td></tr> <tr> <td>never</td><td>Can be used if negotiation is never to be attempted or accepted (shunt connections).</td></tr> </table>	Pubkey	For public key signatures.	Rsasig	For RSA digital signatures.	ecdsasig	For Elliptic Curve DSA signatures.	Psk	Using a preshared key.	xauthrsasig	Enables eXtended Authentication (XAuth) with addition to RSA signatures.	xauthpsk	Using extended authentication and preshared key.	never	Can be used if negotiation is never to be attempted or accepted (shunt connections).
Pubkey	For public key signatures.														
Rsasig	For RSA digital signatures.														
ecdsasig	For Elliptic Curve DSA signatures.														
Psk	Using a preshared key.														
xauthrsasig	Enables eXtended Authentication (XAuth) with addition to RSA signatures.														
xauthpsk	Using extended authentication and preshared key.														
never	Can be used if negotiation is never to be attempted or accepted (shunt connections).														
Web: XAuth Identity UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].xauth_identity Opt: xauth_identity	Defines Xauth ID.														
Web: IKE Algorithm UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].ike Opt: ike	<p>Specifies the IKE algorithm to use. The format is: encAlgo authAlgo DHGroup: encAlgo: 3des aes128 aes256 serpent twofish blowfish authAlgo: md5 sha sha2 DHGroup: modp1024 modp1536 modp2048 modp3072 modp4096 modp6144 modp8192 For example, a valid IKE algorithm is: aes128-sha-modp1536.</p>														

<p>Web: ESP algorithm UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].esp Opt: esp</p>	<p>Specifies the esp algorithm to use. The format is: encAlgo authAlgo DHGroup encAlgo: 3des aes128 aes256 serpent twofish blowfish authAlgo: md5 sha sha2 DHGroup: modp1024 modp1536 modp2048 modp3072 modp4096 modp6144 modp8192 For example, a valid encryption algorithm is: aes128-sha-modp1536. <u>If no DH group is defined then PFS is disabled.</u></p>				
<p>Web: WAN Interface UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].waniface Opt: waniface</p>	<p>This is a space separated list of the WAN interfaces the router will use to establish a tunnel with the secure gateway. On the web, a list of the interface names is automatically generated. If you want to specify more than one interface use the "custom" value. Example: If you have a 3G WAN interface called 'wan' and a WAN ADSL interface called 'dsl' and wanted to use one of these interfaces for this IPSec connection, you would use: 'wan adsl'.</p>				
<p>Web: IKE Life Time UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].ikelifetime Opt: ikelifetime</p>	<p>Specifies how long the keyring channel of a connection (ISAKMP or IKE SA) should last before being renegotiated.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3h</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td> <td>1d, 3h, 25m, 10s.</td> </tr> </table>	3h		Timespec	1d, 3h, 25m, 10s.
3h					
Timespec	1d, 3h, 25m, 10s.				
<p>Web: Key Life UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].keylife Opt: keylife</p>	<p>Specifies how long a particular instance of a connection (a set of encryption/authentication keys for user packets) should last, from successful negotiation to expiry. Normally, the connection is renegotiated (via the keying channel) before it expires (see rekeymargin).</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1h</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td> <td>1d, 1h, 25m, 10s.</td> </tr> </table>	1h		Timespec	1d, 1h, 25m, 10s.
1h					
Timespec	1d, 1h, 25m, 10s.				
<p>Web: Rekey Margin UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].rekeymargin Opt: rekeymargin</p>	<p>Specifies how long before connection expiry or keying-channel expiry should attempt to negotiate a replacement begin. Relevant only locally, other end need not agree on it.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>9m</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td> <td>1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.</td> </tr> </table>	9m		Timespec	1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.
9m					
Timespec	1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.				
<p>Web: Keyring Tries UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].keyringtries Opt: keyringtries</p>	<p>Specifies how many attempts (a positive integer or %forever) should be made to negotiate a connection, or a replacement for one, before giving up. The value %forever means 'never give up'. Relevant only locally, other end need not agree on it.</p>				

Web: DPD Action UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpdaction Opt: dpdaction	Defines DPD (Dead Peer Detection) action. <table border="1"> <tr><td>None</td><td>Disables DPD.</td></tr> <tr><td>Clear</td><td>Clear down the tunnel if peer does not respond. Reconnect when traffic brings the tunnel up.</td></tr> <tr><td>Hold</td><td>Clear down the tunnel and bring up as soon as the peer is available.</td></tr> <tr><td>Restart</td><td>Restarts DPD when no activity is detected.</td></tr> </table>	None	Disables DPD.	Clear	Clear down the tunnel if peer does not respond. Reconnect when traffic brings the tunnel up.	Hold	Clear down the tunnel and bring up as soon as the peer is available.	Restart	Restarts DPD when no activity is detected.
None	Disables DPD.								
Clear	Clear down the tunnel if peer does not respond. Reconnect when traffic brings the tunnel up.								
Hold	Clear down the tunnel and bring up as soon as the peer is available.								
Restart	Restarts DPD when no activity is detected.								
Web: DPD Delay UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpddelay Opt: dpddelay	Defines the period time interval with which R_U_THERE messages and INFORMATIONAL exchanges are sent to the peer. These are only sent if no other traffic is received. <table border="1"> <tr><td>30s</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	30s		Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.				
30s									
Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.								
Web: DPD Timeout UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpdtimeout Opt: dpdtimeout	Defines the timeout interval, after which all connections to a peer are deleted in case of inactivity. <table border="1"> <tr><td>150s</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	150s		Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.				
150s									
Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.								

Table 74: Information table for IPSec connections settings

24.4.3 Configure secret settings

Each tunnel requires settings to configure how the local end point of the tunnel proves its identity to the remote end point.

Secrets			
Enabled	ID selector	Secret Type	Secret
<i>To match local/remote ip enter local ip followed by space followed by remote ip</i>			
<i>This section contains no values yet</i>			
<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Save & Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>			

Figure 120: IPSec secrets settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enabled UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].enabled Opt: enabled	Defines whether this set of credentials is to be used or not. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].idtype Opt: idtype	Defines whether IP address or userfqdn is used.				
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].localaddress Opt: localaddress	Defines the local address this secret applies to.				
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].remoteaddress Opt: remoteaddress	Defines the remote address this secret applies to.				

Web: N/A UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].userfqnd Opt: userfqnd	FQDN or Xauth name used of Extended Authentication. This must match xauth_identity from the configuration connection section.										
Web: Secret Type UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].secrettype Opt: secrettype	Specifies the authentication mechanism to be used by the two peers. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr><td>Psk</td><td>Preshared secret</td></tr> <tr><td>Pubkey</td><td>Public key signatures</td></tr> <tr><td>Rsasig</td><td>RSA digital signatures</td></tr> <tr><td>Ecdsasig</td><td>Elliptic Curve DSA signatures</td></tr> <tr><td>Xauth</td><td>Extended authentication</td></tr> </table>	Psk	Preshared secret	Pubkey	Public key signatures	Rsasig	RSA digital signatures	Ecdsasig	Elliptic Curve DSA signatures	Xauth	Extended authentication
Psk	Preshared secret										
Pubkey	Public key signatures										
Rsasig	RSA digital signatures										
Ecdsasig	Elliptic Curve DSA signatures										
Xauth	Extended authentication										
Web: Secret UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].secret Opt: secret	Defines the secret.										

Table 75: Information table for IPSec secret settings

24.5 Configuring an IPSec template to use with DMVPN

The following example shows how to configure an IPSec connection template to use with DMVPN.

```
# Commands
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci set strongswan.general=general
uci set strongswan.general.enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.general.strictcrlpolicy=no
uci set strongswan.general.uniqueids=yes
uci set strongswan.general.cachecls=yes
uci set strongswan.general.nat traversal=yes
uci add strongswan connection
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].name=dmvpn
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].type=transport
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].localproto=gre
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].remoteproto=gre
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].ike=aes-sha1-modp1024
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].esp=aes128-sha1
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].waniface=lan4
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].auto=ignore
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].ikelifetime=28800s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].keylife=300s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].rekeymargin=30s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].keyingtries=%forever
```

```

uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpdaction=hold
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpddelay=30s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpdtimeout=150s
uci add strongswan secret
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].secrettype=psk
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].secret=secret

```

This will create package strongswan.

```

config general 'general'
option enabled 'yes'
option strictcrlpolicy 'no'
option uniqueids 'yes'
option cachecrls 'yes'
option nattraversal 'yes'

config connection
option enabled 'yes'
option name 'dmvpn'
option type 'transport'
option localproto 'gre'
option remoteproto 'gre'
option ike 'aes-shal-modp1024'
option esp 'aes128-sha1'
option waniface 'lan4'
option auto 'ignore'
option ikelifetime '28800s'
option keylife '300s'
option rekeymargin '30s'
option keyingtries '%forever'
option dpdaction 'hold'
option dpddelay '30s'
option dpdtimeout '150s'

config secret
option enabled 'yes'
option secrettype 'psk'
option secret 'secret'

```

24.6 IPSec diagnostics using the web interface

24.6.1 IPSec status

In the top menu, click **Status -> IPSec**. The IPSec Connections page appears.

IPsec Connections									
Name	IKE					SA			
	Status	Remote	Established	Encryption	Integrity	Status	Policy	Data In/Out	Rekey in
dmvpn_213_233_148_2	ESTABLISHED	213.233.148.2	2 hours ago	3DES_CBC	HMAC_MD5_96	INSTALLED			
dmvpn_89_101_154_151	ESTABLISHED	89.101.154.151	2 hours ago	3DES_CBC	HMAC_MD5_96	INSTALLED			

Figure 121: The IPSec connections page

In the Name column, the syntax contains the IPSec Name defined in package dmvpn and the remote IP address of the hub, or the spoke separated by an underscore; for example, dmvpn_213.233.148.2.

24.7 IPSec diagnostics using UCI

24.7.1 IPSec configuration

To view IPSec configuration via UCI, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export strongswan
```

To restart strongSwan, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# etc/init.d/strongswan restart
```

24.7.2 IPSec status

24.7.3 To view IPSec status, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# ipsec statusall
Security Associations (1 up, 0 connecting):
dmvpn_89_101_154_151[1]: ESTABLISHED 2 hours ago,
10.68.234.133[10.68.234.133]...89.101.154.151[89.101.154.151]
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}:  REKEYING, TRANSPORT, expires in 55 seconds
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}:  10.68.234.133/32[gre] === 192.168./32[gre]
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}:  INSTALLED, TRANSPORT, ESP in UDP SPIs: cca7b970_i
d874dc90_o
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}:  10.68.234.133/32[gre] === 89.101.154.151/32[gre]
```

To view a list of IPSec commands, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# ipsec -help
```

25 Configuring a GRE interface

General Routing Encapsulation (GRE) is a tunnelling protocol used for encapsulation of other communication protocols inside point to point links over IP.

25.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
network	interface

25.2 Creating a GRE connection using the web interface

To create GRE interfaces through the web interface, in the top menu, select **Network ->Interfaces**.

There are three sections in the Interfaces page.

Section	Description
Interface Overview	Shows existing interfaces and their status. You can create new, and edit existing interfaces here.
Port Map	In this section you can map device ports to Ethernet interfaces. Ports are marked with capital letters starting with 'A'. Type in space separated port numbers in the port map fields.
ATM Bridges	ATM bridges expose encapsulated Ethernet in AAL5 connections as virtual Linux network interfaces, which can be used in conjunction with DHCP or PPP to dial into the provider network.

In the Interface Overview section, click **Add new interface**. The Create Interface page appears.

Figure 122: The create interface page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description																										
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network. .<if name> Opt: config interface	Assigns a logical name to the GRE tunnel, The network interface section will be assigned this name <if name>. Type the name of the new interface. Allowed characters are A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _. Must be less than 11 characters.																										
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.<if name>.proto Opt: proto	Specifies what protocol the interface will operate on. Select GRE . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point-to-Point protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	PPP	Point-to-Point protocol	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																										
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol																										
PPP	Point-to-Point protocol																										
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet																										
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.<if name> Opt: n/a	Not applicable for GRE.																										
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.<if name> Opt:n/a	Not applicable for GRE.																										

Table 76: Information table for the create new interface page

Click **Submit**. The Common Configuration page appears. There are three sections in the Common Configurations page.

Section	Description
General Setup	Configure the basic interface settings such as protocol, IP address, mask length, local interface, remote IP address, TTL, tunnel key and MTU.
Advanced Settings	'Bring up on boot' and 'monitor interface state' settings.
Firewall settings	Assign a firewall zone to the connection.

25.2.1 GRE connection: common configuration - general setup

The screenshot shows the 'Common Configuration' page with the 'General Setup' tab selected. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for Status, System, Services, Network, and Logout. Below the navigation bar, the title 'Common Configuration' is displayed, followed by three tabs: General Setup (selected), Advanced Settings, and Firewall Settings.

The main area contains the following fields:

- Status:** Shows 'gre-Tunnel1' with icons for interface and statistics, and values for RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) and TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.).
- Protocol:** A dropdown menu set to 'GRE'.
- Tunnel IP Address:** An input field.
- Mask Length:** An input field.
- Local Interface:** A list of available interfaces:
 - 3G: (selected)
 - ADSL: (disabled)
 - Test_BC: (disabled)
 - lan: (disabled)
 - lan2: (disabled)
 - lan3: (disabled)
 - lan4: (disabled)
 - loopback: (disabled)
 - ethalias: (no interfaces attached)
- Remote IP Address:** An input field.
- TTL:** An input field set to '128'.
- Tunnel key:** An input field.
- MTU:** An input field set to '1472'.

Figure 123: The GRE common configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.<if name>.proto Opt: proto	Shows the protocol the interface will operate on. GRE should be currently selected.
Web: Tunnel IP Address UCI: network.<if name>.ipaddr Opt: ipaddr	Configures local IP address of the GRE interface.
Web: Mask Length UCI: network.<if name>.mask_length Opt: mask_length	Subnet mask, in CIDR notation, to be applied to the tunnel. Typically '30' for point-to-point tunnels.

Web: Local Interface UCI: network.<if name>.local_interface Opt: local_interface	Specifies which interface is going to be linked with the GRE tunnel interface (optional).				
Web: Remote IP address UCI: network.<if name>.remote_ip Opt: remote_ip	For point to point tunnels specifies Remote IP address.				
Web: TTL UCI: network.<if name>.ttl Opt: ttl	Sets Time-To-Live value on the interface. <table border="1"><tr><td>128</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	128		Range	
128					
Range					
Web: Tunnel key UCI: network.<if name>.key Opt: key	Sets GRE tunnel ID key (optional). Usually an integer.				
Web: MTU UCI: network.<if name>.mtu Opt: mtu	Configures MTU (maximum transmission unit) size of PDUs using this interface. <table border="1"><tr><td>1472</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	1472		Range	
1472					
Range					

Table 77: Information table for GRE

25.2.2 GRE connection: common configuration-advanced settings

The screenshot shows the 'Common Configuration' page with the 'Advanced Settings' tab selected. The 'General Setup' tab is also visible. The 'Advanced Settings' tab contains the following fields:

- Bring up on boot:** A checked checkbox.
- Monitor interface state:** An unchecked checkbox with a tooltip: "This interface state would be reported to VA Monitor via keep-alive".
- Dependant interfaces:** A list of interfaces:
 - GRETUNNEL1: (edit icon)
 - MOBILE_amylan: (edit icon)
 - MOBILE_voda: (edit icon)
 - PeAADSL: (edit icon)
 - SUBNET1: (no interfaces attached)
 - SUBNET2: (edit icon)
 - SUBNET3: (edit icon)
 - SUBNET4: (edit icon)
 - loopback: (edit icon)
- Check interfaces which should start after this interface is started and stop after this interface is stopped:** An unchecked checkbox.
- SNMP Alias ifindex:** A text input field containing '1'. A tooltip states: "Alias ifindex SNMP agent. Alias indexes are present at 1000 offset. So setting 1 here will create snmp ifTable entry 1001. Useful when interface creates new linux interface on every startup (e.g. ppp interface). With this set the interface could be monitored via constant snmp agent interface table entry".

Figure 124: GRE advanced settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description										
Web: Bring up on boot UCI: network.<if name>.auto Opt: auto	Enables the interface to connect automatically on boot up. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Monitor interface state UCI: network.<if name>.monitored Opt: monitored	Enabled if status of interface is presented on Monitoring platform. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Dependant Interfaces UCI: network.[..x...].dependants Opt: dependants	Lists interfaces that are dependent on this parent interface. Dependant interfaces will go down when parent interface is down and will start or restart when parent interface starts. Separate multiple interfaces by a space when using UCI. Example: option dependants 'PPPADSL MOBILE' This replaces the following previous options in child interfaces. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>gre</td><td>option local_interface</td></tr> <tr> <td>lt2p</td><td>option src_ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>iot</td><td>option wan1 wan2</td></tr> <tr> <td>6in4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>6to4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> </table>	gre	option local_interface	lt2p	option src_ipaddr	iot	option wan1 wan2	6in4	option ipaddr	6to4	option ipaddr
gre	option local_interface										
lt2p	option src_ipaddr										
iot	option wan1 wan2										
6in4	option ipaddr										
6to4	option ipaddr										
Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network.[..x...].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface, that can be polled via the SNMP interface index (<i>snmp_alias_ifindex+1000</i>). See <i>Configuring SNMP</i> section for more information <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>No SNMP interface alias index</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0 - 4294966295</td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias index	Range	0 - 4294966295						
Blank	No SNMP interface alias index										
Range	0 - 4294966295										

Table 78: Information table for GRE advanced settings

25.2.3 GRE connection: firewall settings

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface.

Select **unspecified** to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Common Configuration

General Setup Advanced Settings Firewall Settings

Create / Assign firewall-zone

lan: lan:

wan: ADSL: 3G:

unspecified -or- create:

Choose the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface. Select unspecified to remove the interface from a zone.

Back to Overview Save & Apply Save Reset

Figure 125: GRE firewall settings

Click **Save and Apply**. This will save the current settings and return you to the Interface Overview page. To configure further settings on the GRE interface select **EDIT** for the relevant GRE interface.

25.2.4 GRE connection: adding a static route

After you have configured the GRE interface, you must configure a static route to route the desired traffic over the GRE tunnel. To do this, browse to **Network->Static Routes**. For more information, read the chapter 'Configuring Static Routes'.

25.3 GRE configuration using command line

The configuration file is stored on **/etc/config/network**

For the examples below tunnel1 is used as the interface logical name.

25.4 GRE configuration using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show network
network.tunnel1=interface
network.tunnel1.proto=gre
network.tunnel1.monitored=0
network.tunnel1.ipaddr=172.255.255.2
network.tunnel1.mask_length=24
network.tunnel1.local_interface=wan
network.tunnel1.remote_ip=172.255.255.100
network.tunnel1.ttl=128
network.tunnel1.key=1234
network.tunnel1.mtu=1472
network.tunnel1.auto=1
```

25.5 GRE configuration using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export network
config interface 'tunnel1'
    option proto 'gre'
    option monitored '0'
    option ipaddr '172.255.255.2'
    option mask_length '24'
    option local_interface 'wan'
    option remote_ip '172.255.255.100'
```

```

option ttl '128'
option key '1234'
option mtu '1472'
option auto '1'

```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

25.6 GRE diagnostics

25.6.1 GRE interface status

To show the current running interfaces, enter:

```

root@GW_router:~# ifconfig
base0      Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:00:00:00:01:01
            inet6 addr: fe80::200:ff:fe00:101/64 Scope:Link
                      UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1504  Metric:1
                      RX packets:39810 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
                      TX packets:365 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
                      collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
                      RX bytes:10889090 (10.3 MiB)  TX bytes:68820 (67.2 KiB)

eth4       Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:1E:10:1F:00:00
            inet  addr:10.68.66.54  Bcast:10.68.66.55  Mask:255.255.255.252
            inet6 addr: fe80::21e:10ff:fef0:0/64 Scope:Link
                      UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
                      RX packets:81 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
                      TX packets:127 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
                      collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
                      RX bytes:8308 (8.1 KiB)  TX bytes:12693 (12.3 KiB)

gre-Tunnell1  Link encap:UNSPEC  HWaddr 0A-44-42-36-DB-B0-00-48-00-00-00-
            00-00-00-00
            inet  addr:13.13.13.2  Mask:255.255.255.248
            inet6 addr: fe80::5efe:a44:4236/64 Scope:Link
                      UP RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1472  Metric:1
                      RX packets:7 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
                      TX packets:7 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
                      collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
                      RX bytes:912 (912.0 B)  TX bytes:884 (884.0 B)

lo         Link encap:Local Loopback

```

```

        inet addr:127.0.0.1 Mask:255.0.0.0
        inet6 addr: ::1/128 Scope:Host
          UP LOOPBACK RUNNING MTU:16436 Metric:1
          RX packets:1465 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:1465 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
          RX bytes:166202 (162.3 KiB) TX bytes:166202 (162.3 KiB)

```

To display a specific GRE interface, enter `ifconfig gre-<if name>`:

```

root@GW_router:~# ifconfig gre-Tunnell
gre-Tunnell    Link encap:UNSPEC    HWaddr 0A-44-42-36-00-00-7F-E2-00-00-00-
00-00-00-00-00

        inet addr:13.13.13.2 Mask:255.255.255.248
        inet6 addr: fe80::5efe:a44:4236/64 Scope:Link
          UP RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1472 Metric:1
          RX packets:7 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:7 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
          RX bytes:912 (912.0 B) TX bytes:8GRE route status

```

To show the current GRE route status, enter:

```

root@GW_router:~# route -n
Kernel IP routing table
Destination     Gateway         Genmask        Flags Metric Ref  Use
Iface
0.0.0.0         10.68.66.53   0.0.0.0        UG    0      0      0
eth4
0.0.0.0         13.13.13.1    0.0.0.0        UG    1      0      0
gre-Tunnell1
10.68.66.52     0.0.0.0       255.255.255.252 U     0      0      0
eth4
13.13.13.0      0.0.0.0       255.255.255.248 U     0      0      0
gre-Tunnell1
172.19.101.3    13.13.13.1   255.255.255.255 UGH   0      0      0
gre-Tunnell1

```

Note: a GRE route will only be displayed in the routing table when the interface is up.

26 Dynamic Multipoint Virtual Private Network (DMVPN)

Dynamic Multipoint Virtual Private Network (DMVPN) is a scalable method of creating VPN IPSec Networks. DMVPN is a suite of three protocols: NHRP, GRE and IPSec, used to dynamically create VPN tunnels between different endpoints in the network without having to pre-configure each device with VPN details of the rest of endpoints in the network.

26.1 Prerequisites for configuring DMVPN

Before configuring DMVPN, you must first configure:

- A GRE interface; the previous chapter, 'Configuring GRE interfaces'
- An IPSec connection to use as a template; read the chapter, 'Configuring IPSec'.

26.2 Advantages of using DMVPN

Using DMVPN eliminates the need of IPSec configuration to the physical interface. This reduces the number of lines of configuration required for a VPN development. For example, for a 1000-site deployment, DMVPN reduces the configuration effort at the hub from 3900 lines to 13.

- Adding new peers (spokes) to the VPN requires no changes at the hub.
- Better scalability of the network.
- Dynamic IP addresses can be used at the peers' site.
- Spokes can be connected in private or public network.
- NHRP NAT extension allows spoke-to-spoke tunnels to be built, even if one or more spokes is behind a Network Address Translation (NAT) device.
- New hubs can be added to the network to improve the performances and reliability.
- Ability to carry multicast and main routing protocols traffic (RIP, OSPF, BGP).
- DMVPN can be deployed using Activator, the SATEL automated provisioning system.
- Simplifies branch communications by enabling direct branch to branch connectivity.
- Simplifies configuration on the spoke routers. The same IPSec template configuration is used to create spoke-to-hub and spoke-to-spoke VPN IPSec tunnel.
- Improves business resiliency by preventing disruption of business-critical applications and services by incorporating routing with standards-based IPsec technology.

26.3 DMVPN scenarios

26.3.1 Scenario 1

Spoke1, spoke2 and a hub are in the same public or private network.

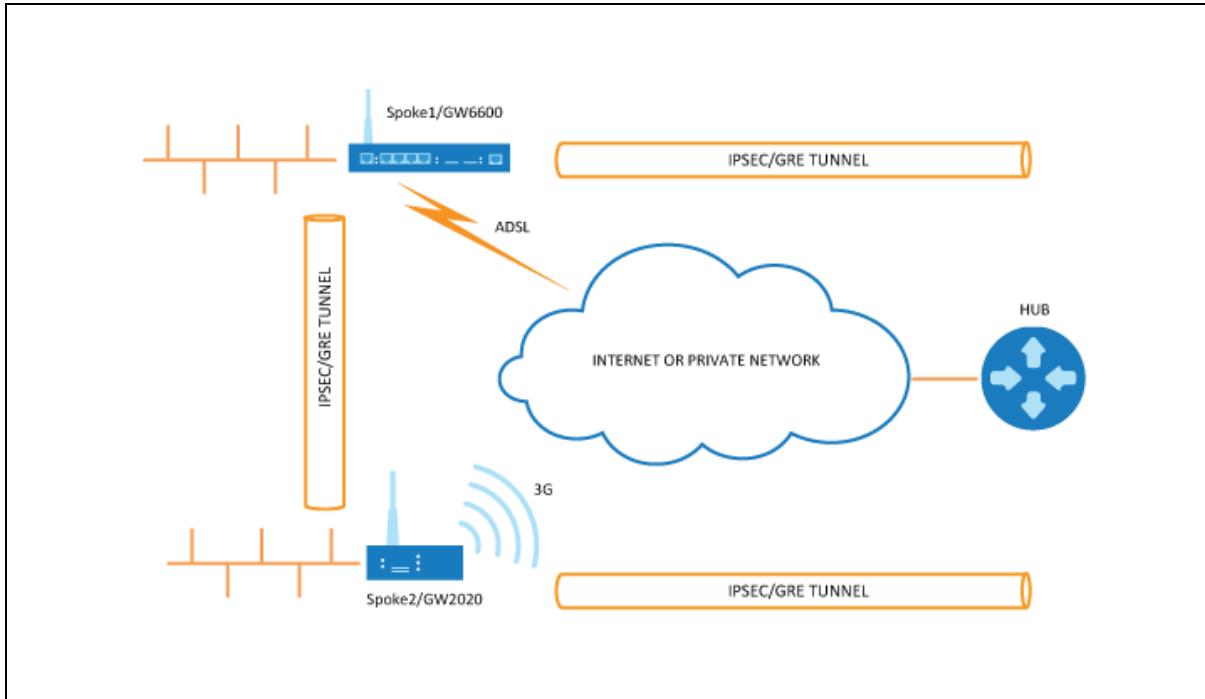


Figure 126: Network diagram for DMVPN spoke to spoke

- Spoke1 and spoke2 connect on their WAN interface: ADSL, 3G and initiate main mode IPsec in transport mode to the hub.
- After an IPsec tunnel is established, spokes register their NHRP membership with the hub.
- GRE tunnels come up.
- Hub caches the GRE tunnel and real IP addresses of each spoke.
- When spoke1 wants to talk to spoke2, it sends an NHRP resolution request to the hub.
- The hub checks its cache table and forwards that request to spoke2.
- Spoke2 caches spoke1's GRE and real IP address and sends an NHRP resolution reply via the hub.
- Spoke1 receives an NHRP resolution reply and updates its NHRP table with spoke2 information. Then it initiates VPN IPsec connection to spoke2.
- When an IPsec tunnel is established, spoke1 and spoke2 can send traffic directly to each other.

26.3.2 Scenario 2

Spoke1 is in a private (NAT-ed) network, spoke2 and hub are in public network.

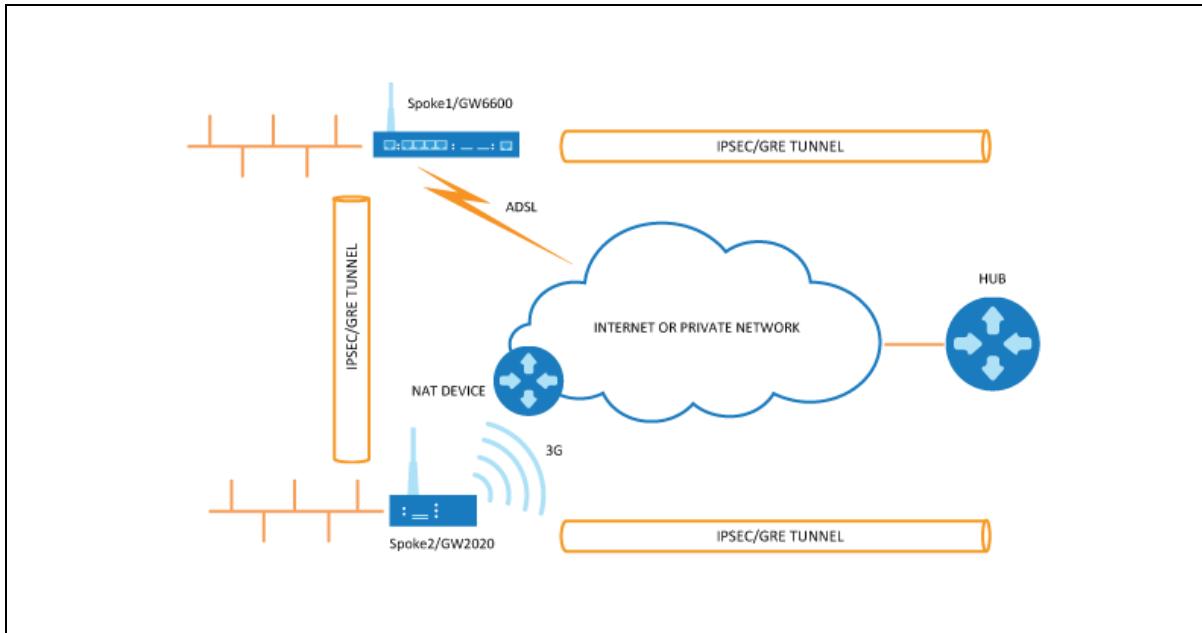


Figure 127: Network diagram for DMVPN spoke behind NAT

- Spoke1 sends an NHRP registration request to the hub.
- Hub receives this request and compares the source tunnel address of the spoke with the source of the packet.
- Hub sends an NHRP registration reply with a NAT extension to spoke1.
- The NAT extension informs spoke1 that it is behind the NAT-ed device.
- Spoke1 registers its pre- and post-NAT address.
- When spoke1 wants to talk to spoke2, it sends an NHRP resolution request to the hub.
- Hub checks its cache table and forwards that request to spoke2.
- Spoke2 caches spoke1's GRE pre- and post-NAT IP address and sends an NHRP resolution reply via the hub.
- Spoke1 receives the NHRP resolution reply and updates its NHRP table with spoke2 information. It initiates a VPN IPsec connection to spoke2.
- When the IPsec tunnel is established, spoke1 and spoke2 can send traffic directly to each other.

Note: if an IPsec tunnel fails to be established between the spokes then packets between the spokes are sent via the hub.

26.4 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
network	For configuring the GRE tunnels.
strongswan	For enabling and configuring the IPSec connection template
dmvpn	

26.5 Configuring DMVPN using the web interface

The DMVPN section contains fields required to configure the parameters relative to the DMVPN Hub. These are used for DMVPN tunnels, such as GRE tunnels, GRE tunnel remote IP, DMVPN Hub IP and password.

26.5.1 DMVPN general settings

In the top menu, select **Network -> DMVPN**. The DMVPN page appears. There are two sections: General and DMVPN Hub Settings.

Figure 128: The DMVPN general section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enable DMVPN UCI: dmvpn.common.enabled Opt: enable	Enables DMVPN. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: IPSec template connection UCI: dmvpn.common.ipsec_template_name Opt: ipsec_template_name	Selects the IPSec connection, defined in strongSwan, to be used as a template.				

Table 79: Information table for DMVPN general settings

26.5.2 DMVPN hub settings

DMVPN Hub Settings								
GRE Interface	GRE Remote Endpoint IP Address	GRE Remote Endpoint Mask Length	DMVPN Hub IP Address	NHRP Authentication	NHRP Holding Time	Use as Default Route	Default Route Metric	LED state indication
gre1	10.2.5.6		192.168.15.2	Cisco	600	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	vpn1
<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Save & Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>								

Figure 129: The DMVPN hub settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: GRE Interface UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].gre_interface Opt: gre_interface	Specifies which GRE interface will be used with this DMVPN configuration.				
Web: GRE Remote Endpoint IP Address UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].gre_endpoint_ip Opt: gre_endpoint_ip	Configures the GRE IP address of the hub.				
Web: GRE Remote Endpoint Mask Length UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].gre_endpoint_mask_length Opt: gre_endpoint_mask_length	Configures the length of the mask of the GRE interface on the hub. For example if the mask is 255.255.0.0 the length will be 16.				
Web: DMVPN Hub IP Address UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].nhs_ip Opt: nhs_ip	Configures the physical IP address for the DMVPN hub.				
Web: NHRP Authentication UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].cisco_auth Opt: cisco_auth	Enables authentication on NHRP. The password will be applied in plaintext to the outgoing NHRP packets. Maximum length is 8 characters.				
Web: NHRP Holding Time UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].holding_time Opt: holding_time	Timeout for cached NHRP requests.				
Web: Use As Default Route UCI : dmvpn.@interface[X].defaultroute Opt: defaultroute	Adds a default route into tunnel interface. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Default Route Metric UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].defaultroutemetric Opt: defaultroutemetric	Metric to use for the default route.				
Web: LED state indication UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].led Opt: led	LED to use for indicating if the VPN is up.				

Table 80: Information table for DMVPN hub settings

26.5.3 Configuring an IPSec template for DMVPN using the web interface

Configuring an IPSec template is covered in the chapter 'Configuring IPSec'.

26.6 DMVPN diagnostics

In the top menu, click **Status -> IPSec**. The IPSec Connections page appears.

IPsec Connections									
Name	IKE					SA			
	Status	Remote	Established	Encryption	Integrity	Status	Policy	Data In/Out	Rekey in
dmvpn_213_233_148_2	ESTABLISHED	213.233.148.2	2 hours ago	3DES_CBC	HMAC_MD5_96	INSTALLED			
dmvpn_89_101_154_151	ESTABLISHED	89.101.154.151	2 hours ago	3DES_CBC	HMAC_MD5_96	INSTALLED			

Figure 130: The IPSec connections page

In the Name column, the syntax contains the IPSec name defined in package dmvpn and the remote IP address of the hub, or the spoke separated by an underscore; for example, dmvpn_213.233.148.2.

To check the status of DMVPN, in the top menu, click **Status -> DMVPN**.

NBMA peers			
NBMA Address	Interface	Address	Type
213.233.148.2	GRE	11.11.11.3/32	spoke
89.101.154.151	GRE	11.11.11.1/29	hub

Powered by LuCI Trunk (trunk+svn8382) VIE-16.00.28 image1 config2

Figure 131: The NBMA peers page

To check DMVPN status, enter:

```
:~# opennhrpctl show
Status: ok
Interface: gre-GRE
Type: local
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.7/32
Alias-Address: 11.11.11.3
Flags: up
Interface: gre-GRE
Type: local
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.3/32
Flags: up
Interface: gre-GRE
Type: cached
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.2/32
NBMA-Address: 178.237.115.129
NBMA-NAT-OA-Address: 172.20.38.129
```

```

Flags: used up
Expires-In: 0:18

Interface: gre-GRE
Type: static
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.1/29
NBMA-Address: 89.101.154.151
Flags: up

```

Interface	Description	
Type	incomplete	Resolution request sent.
	negative	Negative cached.
	cached	Received/relayed resolution reply.
	shortcut_route	Received/relayed resolution for route.
	dynamic	NHC resolution.
	dynamic_nhs	Dynamic NHS from dns-map.
	static	Static mapping from config file.
	dynamic_map	Static dns-map from config file.
	local_route	Non-local destination, with local route.
	local_addr	Local destination (IP or off-NBMA subnet).
Protocol Address	Tunnel IP address	
NBMA-Address	Pre-NAT IP address if NBMA-NAT-OA-Address is present or real address if NAT is not present.	
NBMA-NAT-OA-Address	Post NAT IP address. This field is present when Address is translated in the network.	
Flags	up	Can send all packets (registration ok).
	unique	Peer is unique.
	used	Peer is kernel ARP table.
	lower-up	openhrp script executed successfully.
Expires-In	Expiration time.	

Table 81: Information table for DMVPN status

You can check IPSec status using UCI commands.

```

root@GW-router:~# ipsec status
Security Associations (1 up, 0 connecting):
dmvpn_89_101_154_151[1]: ESTABLISHED 2 hours ago,
10.68.234.133[10.68.234.133]...89.101.154.151[89.101.154.151]
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: REKEYING, TRANSPORT, expires in 55 seconds
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: 10.68.234.133/32[gre] === 192.168./32[gre]
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: INSTALLED, TRANSPORT, ESP in UDP SPIs: cca7b970_i
d874dc90_o
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: 10.68.234.133/32[gre] === 89.101.154.151/32[gre]

```

You can check DMVPN status using UCI commands.

```
:~# opennhrpctl show  
Status: ok  
  
Interface: gre-GRE  
Type: local  
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.7/32  
Alias-Address: 11.11.11.3  
Flags: up  
  
Interface: gre-GRE  
Type: local  
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.3/32  
Flags: up  
Interface: gre-GRE  
Type: cached  
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.2/32  
NBMA-Address: 178.237.115.129  
NBMA-NAT-OA-Address: 172.20.38.129  
Flags: used up  
Expires-In: 0:18  
Interface: gre-GRE  
Type: static  
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.1/29  
  
NBMA-Address: 89.101.154.151  
Flags: up
```

27 Open VPN

The following is a guide to configuring a basic client mode OpenVPN connection.

27.1 Client configuration

To configure a basic client mode, rrowse to the router's IP address and login.

Select **Service tab > OpenVPN**.

The screenshot shows the 'OpenVPN' configuration page. At the top, there is a header 'OpenVPN' and a sub-header 'OpenVPN instances'. Below this, a message states 'Below is a list of configured OpenVPN instances and their current state'. A table header row includes columns for 'Enabled', 'Started', 'Start/Stop', 'Port', and 'Protocol'. A message 'This section contains no values yet' is displayed below the table. At the bottom of the page, there is a dropdown menu with 'VPN' selected, a note 'Simple client configuration for a', and an 'Add' button. On the right, there are three buttons: 'Save & Apply', 'Save', and 'Reset'. The footer of the page includes the text 'Powered by LuCI LIS-15.00.52r13 00E0C812269F image1 config2'.

Figure 132: The openVPN page

Enter a relevant name and select the instance from the drop down list. The options are:

- Client configuration for an Ethernet bridge VPN
- Client configuration for a routed multi-client VPN
- Simple client configuration for a routed point-to-point VPN
- Server configuration for an Ethernet bridge VPN
- Server configuration for a routed multi-client VPN
- Simple server configuration for a routed point-to-point VPN

This document outlines how to configure a 'simple client configuration for a routed point-to-point VPN'. Click **Add**. The instance Overview page appears.

Overview » Instance "client_tun_ptp"

Switch to advanced configuration »

verb: 3 Set output verbosity

port: 2009 TCP/UDP port # for both local and remote

tun_ipv6: Make tun device IPv6 capable

ifconfig: 10.8.0.86 10.8.0.85 Set tun/tap adapter parameters

nobind: Do not bind to local address and port

comp_lzo: Use fast LZO compression

client: Configure client mode

client_to_client: Allow client-to-client traffic

remote: 1.1.1.1 Remote host name or ip address

secret: /etc/openvpn/michaelb.txt Enable Static Key encryption mode (non-TLS)

Additional Field – Add

Figure 133: The overview -> instance page

For this scenario, a secret key is used, which is loaded into /etc/openvpn.

27.1.1 Load secret key

To load the secret key, in the top menu, browse to **System tab > Administration**. Scroll towards the bottom of the page and select **Choose File for OpenVPN Certificates and Keys**.

Certificates & Private Keys

Certificates and private keys used for various services could be uploaded here

IPsec Certificates and Keys Choose File No file chosen
Upload a *.tar.gz file containing certificates and/or private keys. All the ipsec certs previously uploaded will be deleted when new ones uploaded. Archive structure should match this of /etc/ipsec.d folder. Every file should be in one of 8 subfolders according to its purpose:
private (private keys) certs (entity certs)
crls (revocation lists)
cacerts (CA certs)
oscpcerts (OCSP signer certs)
aacerts (Authorization Authority certs)
acerts (attribute certs)
reqs (PKCS#10 cert requests)
More info

OpenVPN Certificates and Keys Choose File No file chosen
Upload a *.tar.gz file containing certificates and/or private keys. All the openvpn certs previously uploaded will be deleted when new ones uploaded. OpenVPN requires no special folder structure, hence files will be installed into the openvpn folder as they are in archive

VA Certificates and Keys Choose File No file chosen
Upload a *.tar.gz file containing certificates and/or private keys. All the va certs previously uploaded will be deleted when new ones uploaded. Archive structure should match this of /etc/certs folder which is similar to /etc/ipsec.d folder.

Figure 134: The certificates and private keys page

When the key has been uploaded, you can select it as a secret option in the OpenVPN configuration page.

27.1.2 Add routes to a VPN connection

To add routes to the VPN connection, select **Switch to advanced configuration**. Select the Networking tab, scroll to the bottom of the page.

Click the drop down button and select the route you require and then click **Add**.

The route parameter will be available as below.

The screenshot shows the 'Networking' configuration page. It includes fields for 'port' (set to 2009), 'dev' (set to tun), and 'route' (set to 10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0). Other options like 'nobind' (checked) and 'float' (unchecked) are also visible.

Parameter	Value	Description
port	2009	TCP/UDP port # for both local and remote
float	<input type="checkbox"/>	Allow remote to change its IP or port
nobind	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Do not bind to local address and port
dev	tun	tun/tap device
tun_ipv6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Make tun device IPv6 capable
ifconfig	10.8.0.86 10.8.0.85	Set tun/tap adapter parameters
ifconfig_noexec	<input type="checkbox"/>	Don't actually execute ifconfig
ifconfig_nowarn	<input type="checkbox"/>	Don't warn on ifconfig inconsistencies
route	10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0	Add route after establishing connection
route_noexec	<input type="checkbox"/>	Don't add routes automatically
mtu_test	<input type="checkbox"/>	Empirically measure MTU
comp_lzo	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Use fast LZO compression
comp_noadapt	<input type="checkbox"/>	Don't use adaptive lzo compression
ping_timer_rem	<input type="checkbox"/>	Only process ping timeouts if routes exist

Figure 135: The networking page

Select **Save & Apply**.

28 Configuring firewall

The firewall itself is not required. It is a set of scripts which configure Netfilter. If preferred, you can use Netfilter directly to achieve the desired firewall behaviour.

Note: the UCI firewall exists to simplify the configuration of Netfilter for many scenarios, without requiring the knowledge to deal with the complexity of Netfilter.

The firewall configuration consists of several zones covering one or more interfaces. Permitted traffic flow between the zones is controlled by forwardings. Each zone can include multiple rules and redirects (port forwarding rules).

The Netfilter system is a chained processing filter where packets pass through various rules. The first rule that matches is executed often leading to another rule-chain until a packet hits either ACCEPT or DROP/REJECT.

Accepted packets pass through the firewall. Dropped packets are prohibited from passing. Rejected packets are also prohibited but an ICMP message is returned to the source host.

A minimal firewall configuration for a router usually consists of one 'defaults' section, at least two 'zones' (LAN and WAN) and one forwarding to allow traffic from LAN to WAN. Other sections that exist are 'redirects', 'rules' and 'includes'.

28.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
firewall	

28.2 Configuring firewall using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> Firewall**. The Firewall page appears. It is divided into four sections:

Section	Description
General Zone Settings	Defines the firewall zones, both global and specific.
Port Forwards	Port Forwards are also known as Redirects. This section creates the redirects using DNAT (Destination Network Address Translation) with Netfilter.
Traffic Rules	Defines rules to allow or restrict access to specific ports, hosts or protocols.

28.2.1 Firewall: zone settings

Zone settings is divided into two sections:

Section	Description
General Settings	Defines the global firewall settings that do not belong to any specific zones.
Zones	The zones section groups one or more interfaces and serves as a source or destination for forwardings, rules and redirects. Masquerading (NAT) of outgoing traffic is controlled on a per-zone basis.

28.2.1.1 Firewall general settings

The General Settings page, or defaults section declares global firewall settings that do not belong to any specific zones. These default rules take effect last and more specific rules take effect first.

The screenshot shows the 'Firewall - Zone Settings' page. At the top, there are tabs for 'General Settings', 'Port Forwards', and 'Traffic Rules'. The 'General Settings' tab is selected. It contains sections for 'Enable SYN-flood protection' (checkbox checked), 'Drop invalid packets' (checkbox unchecked), and three dropdown menus for 'Input' (accept), 'Output' (accept), and 'Forward' (accept). Below this is a 'Zones' section with a table showing two entries. The first entry is 'lan: LAN1: [red] LAN2: [red] LAN3: [red] > wan' with policies: Input accept, Output accept, Forward accept, Masquerading unchecked, MSS clamping unchecked. The second entry is 'wan: MOBILE1: [red] PoADSL: [red] > lan' with policies: Input accept, Output accept, Forward accept, Masquerading checked, MSS clamping unchecked. There are 'Edit' and 'Delete' buttons for each entry, and an 'Add' button at the bottom left.

Figure 136: The firewall zone general settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable SYN-flood protection UCI: firewall.defaults.syn_flood Opt: syn_flood	Enables SYN flood protection. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.	
Web: Drop invalid packets UCI: firewall.defaults.drop_invalid Opt: drop_invalid	Drops packets not matching any active connection. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.	
Web: Input UCI: firewall.defaults.input Opt: input	Default policy for the INPUT chain. Accept Accepted packets pass through the firewall. Reject Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host. Drop Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.	
Web: Output UCI: firewall.defaults.output Opt: output	Default policy for the Output chain. Accept Accepted packets pass through the firewall. Reject Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host. Drop Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.	
Web: Forward UCI: firewall.defaults.forward Opt: forward	Default policy for the Forward chain. Accept Accepted packets pass through the firewall. Reject Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host. Drop Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.	

Table 82: Information table for general zone general settings page

28.2.1.2 Firewall zones

The Zones section groups one or more interfaces and serves as a source or destination for forwardings, rules and redirects. Masquerading (NAT) of outgoing traffic is controlled on a per-zone basis. To view a zone's settings, click **Edit**.

The number of concurrent dynamic/static NAT entries of any kind (NAT/PAT/DNAT/SNAT) is not limited in any way by software; the only hardware limitation is the amount of RAM installed on the device.

28.2.1.3 Firewall zone: general settings

Figure 137: The firewall zone general settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description						
Web: name UCI: firewall.<zone label>.name Opt: name	Sets the unique zone name. Maximum of 11 characters allowed. Note: the zone label is obtained by using the 'uci show firewall' command and is of the format '@zone[x]' where x is an integer starting at 0.						
Web: Input UCI: firewall.<zone label>.input Opt: input	Default policy for incoming zone traffic. Incoming traffic is traffic entering the router through an interface selected in the 'Covered Networks' option for this zone.						
<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Accept</td><td>Accepted packets pass through the firewall.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reject</td><td>Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Drop</td><td>Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.</td></tr> </table>		Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.	Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.	Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.
Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.						
Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.						
Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.						

Web: Output UCI: firewall.<zone label>.output Opt: output	Default policy for outgoing zone traffic. Outgoing traffic is traffic leaving the router through an interface selected in the 'Covered Networks' option for this zone.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Accept</td><td>Accepted packets pass through the firewall.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reject</td><td>Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Drop</td><td>Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.</td></tr> </table>	Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.	Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.	Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.
Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.						
Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.						
Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.						
Web: Forward UCI: firewall.<zone label>.forward Opt: forward	Default policy for internal zone traffic between interfaces. Forward rules for a zone describe what happens to traffic passing between different interfaces within that zone.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Accept</td><td>Accepted packets pass through the firewall.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reject</td><td>Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Drop</td><td>Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.</td></tr> </table>	Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.	Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.	Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.
Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.						
Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.						
Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.						
Web: Masquerading UCI: firewall.<zone label>.masq Opt: masq	Specifies whether outgoing zone traffic should be masqueraded (NATTED). This is typically enabled on the wan zone.						
Web: MSS Clamping UCI: firewall.<zone label>.mtu_fix Opt: mtu_fix	Enables MSS clamping for outgoing zone traffic. Subnets are allowed.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.		
0	Disabled.						
1	Enabled.						
Web: Covered networks UCI: firewall.<zone label>.network Opt: network	Defines a list of interfaces attached to this zone, if omitted, the value of name is used by default. Note: use the uci list syntax to edit this setting through UCI.						

Table 83: Information table for firewall zone general settings

28.2.1.4 Firewall zone: advanced settings

Firewall - Zone Settings - Zone "lan"

Zone "lan"

This section defines common properties of "lan". The *input* and *output* options set the default policies for traffic entering and leaving this zone while the *forward* option describes the policy for forwarded traffic between different networks within the zone. *Covered networks* specifies which available networks are member of this zone.

General Settings	Advanced Settings
Restrict to address family	IPv4 and IPv6
Restrict Masquerading to given source subnets	0.0.0.0/0
Restrict Masquerading to given destination subnets	0.0.0.0/0
Force connection tracking	<input type="checkbox"/>
Enable logging on this zone	<input type="checkbox"/>
Allow NAT Reflections	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Figure 138: Firewall zone advanced settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description												
Web: Restrict to address family UCI: firewall.<zone label>.family Opt: family	Restricts zone to IPv4, IPv6 or both IPv4 and IPv6. <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr> <tr> <td>IPv4 and IPv6</td><td>Any address family</td><td>any</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv4 only</td><td>IPv4 only</td><td>ipv4</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6 only</td><td>IPv6 only</td><td>Ipv6</td></tr> </table>	Option	Description	UCI	IPv4 and IPv6	Any address family	any	IPv4 only	IPv4 only	ipv4	IPv6 only	IPv6 only	Ipv6
Option	Description	UCI											
IPv4 and IPv6	Any address family	any											
IPv4 only	IPv4 only	ipv4											
IPv6 only	IPv6 only	Ipv6											
Web: Restrict Masquerading to given source subnets. UCI: firewall.<zone label>.masq_src Opt: masq_src	Limits masquerading to the given source subnets. Negation is possible by prefixing the subnet with '!'. Multiple subnets are allowed.												
Web: Restrict Masquerading to given destination subnets. UCI: firewall.<zone label>.masq_dest Opt: masq_dest	Limits masquerading to the given destination subnets. Negation is possible by prefixing the subnet with '!'. Multiple subnets are allowed. Multiple IP addresses/subnets should be separated by a space, for example:option masq_dest '1.1.1.1 2.2.2.0/24'												
Web: Force connection tracking UCI: firewall.<zone label>.conntrack Opt: conntrack	Forces connection tracking for this zone. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>If masquerading is used. Otherwise, default is 0.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	If masquerading is used. Otherwise, default is 0.								
0	Disabled.												
1	If masquerading is used. Otherwise, default is 0.												
Web: Enable logging on this zone UCI: firewall.<zone label>.log Opt: log	Creates log rules for rejected and dropped traffic in this zone.												
Web: Allow NAT reflections UCI: firewall.<zone label>.reflection Opt: reflection	Enable/disable all NAT reflections for this zone. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disable reflection.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enable reflection.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disable reflection.	1	Enable reflection.								
0	Disable reflection.												
1	Enable reflection.												
Web: n/a UCI: firewall.<zone label>.log_limit Opt: log_limit	Limits the amount of log messages per interval.												

Table 84: Information table for firewall zone advanced settings

28.2.1.5 Inter-zone forwarding

This section controls the traffic flow between zones. Selecting a source or destination zone generates a Forwarding rule. Only one direction is covered by any forwarding rule. Hence for bidirectional traffic flow between two zones then two rules are required, with source and destination alternated.

The options below control the forwarding policies between this zone (lan) and other zones. Destination zones cover forwarded traffic originating from "lan". Source zones match forwarded traffic from other zones targeted at "lan". The forwarding rule is *unidirectional*, e.g. a forward from lan to wan does *not* imply a permission to forward from wan to lan as well.

Allow forward to destination zones: wan: MOBILE1: PoAADS1:

Allow forward from source zones: wan: MOBILE1: PoAADS1:

Figure 139: The inter-zone forwarding section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Allow forward to destination zones UCI: firewall.<forwarding label>.dest Opt: dest	Allows forward to other zones. Enter the current zone as the source. Enabling this option puts two entries into the firewall file: destination and source.
UCI firewall.<forwarding label>.src Opt: src	
Web: Allow forward from source zones UCI: firewall.<forwarding label>.dest Opt: dest	Allows forward from other zones. Enter the current zone as the destination. Enabling this option puts two entries into the firewall file: destination and source.
UCI: firewall.<forwarding label>.src Opt: src	

Table 85: Information table for inter-zone forwarding settings

Note: the rules generated for forwarding traffic between zones relay connection tracking to be enabled on at least one of the source or destination zones. This can be enabled through the conntrack option or through masq.

28.2.2 Firewall port forwards

Port Forwards are also known as Redirects. This section creates the redirects using DNAT (Destination Network Address Translation) with Netfilter. The redirects are from the firewall zone labelled as wan to the firewall zone labelled as lan. These zones can refer to multiple external and internal interfaces as defined in the Firewall Zone settings.

To edit an existing port forward select **edit**.

To add a new port forward select **add**.

The screenshot shows the 'Firewall - Port Forwards' section of a web-based configuration interface. At the top, there are three tabs: 'General Settings', 'Port Forwards' (which is selected), and 'Traffic Rules'. Below the tabs, the title 'Firewall - Port Forwards' is displayed, followed by a brief description: 'Port forwarding allows remote computers on the Internet to connect to a specific computer or service within the private LAN.' The main area is titled 'Port Forwards' and contains a table with the following columns: Name, Protocol, Source, Via, Destination, Enable, and Sort. A single row is shown in the table:

HTTPS	TCP	From <i>any host in wan</i>	To <i>any router IP</i> at port 443	Forward to IP <i>192.168.100.100</i> , port 443 in <i>lan</i>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
-------	-----	-----------------------------	-------------------------------------	---	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Below the table, there is a section for 'New port forward:' with fields for Name, Protocol, External port, Internal IP address, and Internal port. A 'New port forward' button is available, and the protocol dropdown currently shows 'TCP+UDP'. There are also up and down sort buttons.

Figure 140: The firewall port forward page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description												
Web: name UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.name Opt: name	Sets the port forwarding name. For Web UI generated redirects the <redirect label> takes the form of @redirect[x], where x is an integer starting from 0.												
Web: Protocol UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.proto Opt: proto	Defines layer 4 protocol to match incoming traffic. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th> <th>Description</th> <th>UCI</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>tcp+udp</td> <td>Match either TCP or UDP packets</td> <td>tcp udp</td> </tr> <tr> <td>tcp</td> <td>Match TCP packets only</td> <td>tcp</td> </tr> <tr> <td>udp</td> <td>Match UDP packets only</td> <td>udp</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	UCI	tcp+udp	Match either TCP or UDP packets	tcp udp	tcp	Match TCP packets only	tcp	udp	Match UDP packets only	udp
Option	Description	UCI											
tcp+udp	Match either TCP or UDP packets	tcp udp											
tcp	Match TCP packets only	tcp											
udp	Match UDP packets only	udp											
Web: External port UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src_dport Opt: src_dport	Specifies the incoming TCP/UDP port or port range to match. This is the incoming destination port specified by the external host. Port ranges specified as start:stop, for example, 2001:2020. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>(empty)</td> <td>Match traffic to any port</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td>1 - 65535</td> </tr> </table>	(empty)	Match traffic to any port	Range	1 - 65535								
(empty)	Match traffic to any port												
Range	1 - 65535												
Web: Internal IP address UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.dest_ip Opt: dest_ip	Specifies the internal (LAN) IP address for the traffic to be redirected to.												
Web: Internal port UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.dest_port Opt: dest_port	Specifies the destination tcp/udp port for the redirect traffic.												

Table 86: Information table for firewall port forward settings

The defined redirects can be sorted into a specific order to be applied. More specific rules should be placed first.

After the redirect is created and saved, to make changes, click **Edit**. This will provide further options to change the source/destination zones; specify source mac addresses and enable NAT loopback (reflection).

Firewall - Port Forwards - (Unnamed Entry)

This page allows you to change advanced properties of the port forwarding entry. In most cases there is no need to modify those settings.

Rule is enabled

Name: Forward

Protocol: TCP+UDP

Source zone: wan: MOBILE1: PoAADS:

Source MAC address: any Only match incoming traffic from these MACs.

Source IP address: any Only match incoming traffic from this IP or range.

Source port: any Only match incoming traffic originating from the given source port or port range on the client host.

External IP address: any Only match incoming traffic directed at the given IP address.

External port: any Match incoming traffic directed at the given destination port or port range on this host.

Internal zone: wan: MOBILE1: PoAADS:

Internal IP address: any Redirect matched incoming traffic to the specified internal host.

Internal port: any Redirect matched incoming traffic to the given port on the internal host.

Enable NAT Loopback:

Extra arguments: Passes additional arguments to iptables. Use with care!

Figure 141: The firewall port forwards edits page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description												
Web: Rule is enabled UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Specifies if this redirect should be enabled or disabled. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.								
0	Disabled.												
1	Enabled.												
Web: name UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.name Opt: name	Sets the port forwarding name. For Web UI generated redirects the <redirect label> takes the form of @redirect[x], where x is an integer starting from 0.												
Web: Protocol UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.proto Opt: proto	Defines layer 4 protocol to match incoming traffic. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>tcp+udp</td><td>Match either TCP or UDP packets</td><td>tcp udp</td></tr> <tr> <td>tcp</td><td>Match TCP packets only</td><td>tcp</td></tr> <tr> <td>udp</td><td>Match UDP packets only</td><td>udp</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	UCI	tcp+udp	Match either TCP or UDP packets	tcp udp	tcp	Match TCP packets only	tcp	udp	Match UDP packets only	udp
Option	Description	UCI											
tcp+udp	Match either TCP or UDP packets	tcp udp											
tcp	Match TCP packets only	tcp											
udp	Match UDP packets only	udp											
Web: Source zone UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src Opt: src	Specifies the traffic source zone. It must refer to one of the defined zone names. When using the web interface, this is set to WAN initially.												

Web: Source MAC address UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src_mac Opt: list src_mac	Defines the list of source MAC addresses that this redirect will match Format: aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff Multiple RIP interfaces are entered using <code>uci set</code> and <code>uci add_list</code> commands. Example: <code>uci set firewall.@rediect[0].src_mac=aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff</code> <code>uci add_list</code> <code>firewall.@rediect[0].src_mac=12:34:56:78:90:12</code> or using a list of options via package options <code>list network 'aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff'</code> <code>list network '12:34:56:78:90:12'</code>				
Web: Source IP address UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src_ip Opt: src_ip	Defines a source IP address that this redirect will match. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>(empty)</td><td>Match traffic from any source IP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>A.B.C.D/mask</td></tr> </table>	(empty)	Match traffic from any source IP.	Range	A.B.C.D/mask
(empty)	Match traffic from any source IP.				
Range	A.B.C.D/mask				
Web: Source port UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src_port Opt: src_port	Defines a source IP port that this redirect will match. Multiple ports can be entered using a space separator. Example: <code>option src_port '22 23'</code> *see note below on use with options <code>src_dport</code> and <code>dest_port</code> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>(empty)</td><td>Match traffic from any source port.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	(empty)	Match traffic from any source port.	Range	1 - 65535
(empty)	Match traffic from any source port.				
Range	1 - 65535				
Web: External port UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src_dport Opt: src_dport	Specifies the incoming TCP/UDP port or port range to match. This is the incoming destination port specified by the external host. Port ranges specified in format start:stop, for example, 2001:2020. Multiple ports can be entered using a space separator. Example: <code>option src_dport '22 23'</code> *see note below on use with options <code>src_port</code> and <code>dest_port</code> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>(empty)</td><td>Match traffic to any port.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	(empty)	Match traffic to any port.	Range	1 - 65535
(empty)	Match traffic to any port.				
Range	1 - 65535				
Web: Internal zone UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.dest Opt: dest	Specifies the traffic destination zone, must refer to one of the defined zone names.				
Web: Internal IP address UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.dest_ip Opt: dest_ip	Specifies the internal (LAN) IP address for the traffic to be redirected to.				
Web: Internal port UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.dest_port Opt: dest_port	Specifies the destination tcp/udp port for the redirect traffic. Multiple ports can be entered using a space separator. *For example: <code>option dest_port '22 23'</code> *see note below table on use with options <code>src_port</code> and <code>src_dport</code> .				
Web: Enable NAT Loopback UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.reflection Opt: reflection	Enable or disable NAT reflection for this redirect. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>reflection disabled</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>reflection enabled</td></tr> </table>	0	reflection disabled	1	reflection enabled
0	reflection disabled				
1	reflection enabled				
Web: Extra arguments UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.extra Opt: extra	Passes extra arguments to IP tables. This is useful to specify additional match options, like <code>-m policy --dir in</code> for IPSec. The arguments are entered as text strings.				

Table 87: Information table for port forward edits fields

***Note:** redirect rule options src_port and src_dport/dest_port accept space-separated lists of ports. If src_port is a list, then src_dport/dst_port cannot be, to avoid ambiguity.

If src_dport/dest_port are lists of different lengths, then the missing values of the shorter list default to the corresponding port in the other list. For example, if configuration file is:

```
option src_dport '21 22 23'
option dest_port '21 22 23 24'
```

then the firmware will interpret the values as:

```
option src_dport '21 22 23 24'
option dest_port '21 22 23 24'
```

28.2.3 Firewall traffic rules

Rules can be defined to allow or restrict access to specific ports, hosts or protocols.

The screenshot shows the 'Firewall - Traffic Rules - (Unnamed Rule)' configuration page. The page has tabs for 'General Settings', 'Port Forwards', and 'Traffic Rules'. The 'Traffic Rules' tab is selected. The page contains the following fields:

- Rule is enabled:** A 'Disable' button.
- Name:** A text input field containing a dash (-).
- Restrict to address family:** A dropdown menu set to 'IPv4 and IPv6'.
- Protocol:** A dropdown menu set to 'TCP+UDP'.
- Match ICMP type:** A dropdown menu set to 'any'.
- Source zone:** A radio button group where 'wan:' is selected. Other options include 'Any zone' and 'lan: LAN1: [radio] LAN2: [radio] LAN3: [radio]'.
- Source MAC address:** A text input field set to 'any'.
- Source address:** A text input field set to 'any'.
- Source port:** A text input field set to 'any'.
- Destination zone:** A radio button group where 'Device (input)' is selected. Other options include 'Any zone (forward)' and 'wan: MOBILE1: [radio] PoADSL: [radio]'.
- Destination address:** A text input field set to 'any'.
- Destination port:** A text input field set to 'any'.
- Action:** A dropdown menu set to 'accept'.
- Extra arguments:** A text input field with a note: 'Passes additional arguments to iptables. Use with care!' preceded by a gear icon.

Figure 142: The firewall traffic rules page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description																		
Web: Rule is enabled UCI: firewall.<rule label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables traffic rule. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Rule is disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Rule is enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Rule is disabled.	1	Rule is enabled.														
0	Rule is disabled.																		
1	Rule is enabled.																		
Web: Name UCI: firewall.<rule label>.name Opt: name	Select a descriptive name limited to less than 11 characters.																		
Web: Restrict to address family UCI: firewall.<rule label>.family Opt: family	Restrict to protocol family. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>IPv4 and IPv6</td><td>Traffic rule applies to any address family</td><td>any</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv4 only</td><td>IPv4 only</td><td>ipv4</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6 only</td><td>IPv6 only</td><td>Ipv6</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	UCI	IPv4 and IPv6	Traffic rule applies to any address family	any	IPv4 only	IPv4 only	ipv4	IPv6 only	IPv6 only	Ipv6						
Option	Description	UCI																	
IPv4 and IPv6	Traffic rule applies to any address family	any																	
IPv4 only	IPv4 only	ipv4																	
IPv6 only	IPv6 only	Ipv6																	
Web: Protocol UCI: firewall.<rule label>.proto Opt: proto	Matches incoming traffic using the given protocol. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TCP+UDP</td><td>Applies rule to TCP and UDP only</td><td>tcp udp</td></tr> <tr> <td>TCP</td><td>Applies rule to TCP only</td><td>tcp</td></tr> <tr> <td>UDP</td><td>Applies rule to UDP only</td><td>udp</td></tr> <tr> <td>ICMP</td><td>Applies rule to ICMP only</td><td>icmp</td></tr> <tr> <td>custom</td><td>Specify protocol from /etc/protocols</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	UCI	TCP+UDP	Applies rule to TCP and UDP only	tcp udp	TCP	Applies rule to TCP only	tcp	UDP	Applies rule to UDP only	udp	ICMP	Applies rule to ICMP only	icmp	custom	Specify protocol from /etc/protocols	
Option	Description	UCI																	
TCP+UDP	Applies rule to TCP and UDP only	tcp udp																	
TCP	Applies rule to TCP only	tcp																	
UDP	Applies rule to UDP only	udp																	
ICMP	Applies rule to ICMP only	icmp																	
custom	Specify protocol from /etc/protocols																		
Web: Match ICMP type UCI: firewall.<rule label>.icmp_type Opt: icmp_type	Match specific icmp types. This option is only valid when ICMP is selected as the protocol. ICMP types can be listed as either type names or type numbers. Note: for a full list of valid ICMP type names, see the ICMP Options table below.																		
Web: Source zone UCI: firewall.<rule label>.src Opt: src	Specifies the traffic source zone, must refer to one of the defined zone names. For typical port forwards, this is usually WAN.																		
Web: Source MAC address UCI: firewall.<rule label>.src_mac Opt: src_mac	Matches incoming traffic from the specified MAC address. The MAC address must be entered in the following format: aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff: To only match the first portion of the MAC address append /prefix to the option value, where prefix defines the bits from the start of the MAC to match on. Example: option src_mac 00:E0:C8:12:34:56/24 will match on all packets with prefix 00:E0:C8.																		
Web: Source address UCI: firewall.<rule label>.src_ip Opt: src_ip	Matches incoming traffic from the specified source IP address.																		
Web: Source port UCI: firewall.<rule label>.src_port Opt: src_port	Matches incoming traffic originating from the given source port or port range on the client host.																		
Web: Destination zone UCI: firewall.<rule label>.dest Opt: dest	Specifies the traffic destination zone. Must refer to one of the defined zone names.																		

Web: Destination address UCI: firewall.<rule label>.dest_ip Opt: dest_ip	For DNAT, redirects matched incoming traffic to the specified internal host. For SNAT, matches traffic directed at the given address.															
Web: Destination port UCI: firewall.<rule label>.dest_port Opt: dest_port	For DNAT, redirects matched incoming traffic to the given port on the internal host. For SNAT, matches traffic directed at the given ports.															
Web: Action UCI: firewall.<rule label>.target Opt: target	Action to take when rule is matched. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th> <th>Description</th> <th>UCI</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>drop</td> <td>Drop matching traffic</td> <td>DROP</td> </tr> <tr> <td>accept</td> <td>Allow matching traffic</td> <td>ACCEPT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>reject</td> <td>Reject matching traffic</td> <td>REJECT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>don't track</td> <td>Disable connection tracking for the rule. See the Connection tracking section below for more information.</td> <td>NOTRACK</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	UCI	drop	Drop matching traffic	DROP	accept	Allow matching traffic	ACCEPT	reject	Reject matching traffic	REJECT	don't track	Disable connection tracking for the rule. See the Connection tracking section below for more information.	NOTRACK
Option	Description	UCI														
drop	Drop matching traffic	DROP														
accept	Allow matching traffic	ACCEPT														
reject	Reject matching traffic	REJECT														
don't track	Disable connection tracking for the rule. See the Connection tracking section below for more information.	NOTRACK														
Web: Extra arguments UCI: firewall.<rule label>.extra Opt: extra	Passes extra arguments to IP tables. This is useful to specify additional match options, like -m policy --dir in for IPSec.															
Web: n/a UCI: firewall.<rule label>.reflection Opt: reflection	Disables NAT reflection for this redirect if set to 0. Applicable to DNAT targets.															
Web: n/a UCI: firewall.<rule label>.limit Opt: limit	Sets maximum average matching rate; specified as a number, with an optional /second, /minute, /hour or /day suffix. Example 3/hour.															
Web: n/a UCI: firewall.<rule label>.limit_burst Opt: limit_burst	Sets maximum initial number of packets to match. This number gets recharged by one every time the limit specified above is not reached, up to this number.															
Web: n/a UCI: firewall.<rule label>.recent Opt: recent	Sets number of allowed connections within specified time. This command takes two values e.g. recent=2 120 will allow 2 connections within 120 seconds.															

Table 88: Information table for firewall traffic rules

ICMP Options	ICMP Options	ICMP Options	ICMP Options
address-mask-reply	host-redirect	pong	time-exceeded
address-mask-request	host-unknown	port-unreachable	timestamp-reply
any	host-unreachable	precedence-cutoff	timestamp-request
communication-prohibited	ip-header-bad	protocol-unreachable	TOS-host-redirect
destination-unreachable	network-prohibited	redirect	TOS-host-unreachable
echo-reply	network-redirect	required-option-missing	TOS-network-redirect
echo-request	network-unknown	router-advertisement	TOS-network-unreachable
fragmentation-needed	network-unreachable	router-solicitation	ttl-exceeded
host-precedence-violation	parameter-problem	source-quench	ttl-zero-during-reassembly
host-prohibited	ping	source-route-failed	ttl-zero-during-transit

Table 89: Information table for match ICMP type drop-down menu

28.3 Configuring firewall using UCI

Firewall is configured under the firewall package /etc/config/firewall.

There are three config sections: defaults, zone, forwarding, redirect, rule and include.

You can configure multiple zone, forwarding and redirect sections.

28.3.1 Firewall general settings

To set general (default) settings, enter:

```
uci add firewall defaults
uci set firewall.@defaults[0].syn_flood=1
uci set firewall.@defaults[0].drop_invalid=1
uci set firewall.@defaults[0].input=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@defaults[0].output=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@defaults[0].forward=ACCEPT
```

Note: this command is only required if there is no defaults section.

28.3.2 Firewall zone settings

By default, all firewall zone instances are named zone, instances are identified by @zone then the zone position in the package as a number. For example, for the first zone in the package using UCI:

```
firewall.@zone[0]=zone
firewall.@zone[0].name=lan
```

Or using package options:

```
config zone
    option name 'lan'
```

To set up a firewall zone, enter:

```
uci add firewall zone
uci set firewall.@zone[1].name=lan
uci set firewall.@zone[1].input=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@zone[1].output=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@zone[1].forward=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@zone[1].network=lan1 wifi_client
uci set firewall.@zone[1].family=any
uci set firewall.@zone[1].masq_src=10.0.0.0/24
uci set firewall.@zone[1].masq_dest=20.0.0.0/24
```

```
uci set firewall.@zone[1].conntrack=1
uci set firewall.@zone[1].masq=1
uci set firewall.@zone[1].mtu_fix=1
uci set firewall.@zone[1].log=1
uci set firewall.@zone[1].log_limit=5
```

28.3.3 Inter-zone forwarding

By default, all inter-zone instances are named forwarding, instances are identified by @forwarding then the forwarding position in the package as a number. For example, for the first forwarding in the package using UCI:

```
firewall.@forwarding[0]=forwarding
firewall.@forwarding[0].src=lan
```

Or using package options:

```
config forwarding
    option src 'lan'
```

To enable forwarding of traffic from WAN to LAN, enter:

```
uci add firewall forwarding
uci set firewall.@forwarding[1].dest=wan
uci set firewall.@forwarding[1].src=lan
```

28.3.4 Firewall port forwards

By default, all port forward instances are named redirect, instances are identified by @redirect then the redirect position in the package as a number. For example, for the first redirect in the package using UCI:

```
firewall.@redirect[0]=redirect
firewall.@redirect[0].name=Forward
```

Or using package options:

```
config redirect
    option name 'Forward'
```

To set port forwarding rules, enter:

```
uci add firewall redirect
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].name=Forward
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].proto=tcp
```

```
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].src=wan      # <- zone names
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].dest=lan      # <- zone names
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].src_dport=2001
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].dest_ip=192.168.0.100
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].dest_port=2005
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].enabled=1
```

28.3.5 Firewall traffic rules

By default, all traffic rule instances are named rule, instances are identified by @rule then the rule position in the package as a number. For example, for the first rule in the package using UCI:

```
firewall.@rule[0]=rule
firewall.@rule[0].enabled=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config rule
    option enabled '1'
```

To set traffic rules, enter:

```
uci add firewall rule
uci set firewall.@rule[1].enabled=1
uci set firewall.@rule[1].name=Allow_ICMP
uci set firewall.@rule[1].family=any
uci set firewall.@rule[1].proto=ICMP
uci set firewall.@rule[1].icmp_type=any
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src=wan
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src_mac=ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src_port=
uci set firewall.@rule[1].dest=lan
uci set firewall.@rule[1].dest_port=
uci set firewall.@rule[1].dest_ip=192.168.100.1
uci set firewall.@rule[1].target=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@rule[1].extra=
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src_ip=8.8.8.8
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src_dip=9.9.9.9
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src_dport=68
```

```
uci set firewall.@rule[1].reflection=1
uci set firewall.@rule[1].limit=3/second
uci set firewall.@rule[1].limit_burst=30
```

28.3.5.1 Custom firewall scripts: includes

It is possible to include custom firewall scripts by specifying one or more include sections in the firewall configuration.

There is only one possible parameter for includes:

Parameter	Description
path	Specifies a shell script to execute on boot or firewall restarts.

Custom scripts are executed as shell scripts and are expected to contain iptables commands.

28.4 IPv6 notes

As described above, the option family is used for distinguishing between IPv4, IPv6 and both protocols. However, the family is inferred automatically if a specific IP address family is used. For example; if IPv6 addresses are used then the rule is automatically treated as IPv6 only rule.

```
config rule
    option src wan
    option src_ip fdca:f00:ba3::/64
    option target ACCEPT
```

Similarly, the following rule is automatically treated as IPv4 only.

```
config rule
    option src wan
    option dest_ip 88.77.66.55
    option target REJECT
```

Rules without IP addresses are automatically added to iptables and ip6tables, unless overridden by the family option. Redirect rules (port forwards) are always IPv4 since there is no IPv6 DNAT support at present.

28.5 Implications of DROP vs. REJECT

The decision whether to drop or to reject traffic should be done on a case-by-case basis. Many people see dropping traffic as a security advantage over rejecting it because it exposes less information to a hypothetical attacker. While dropping slightly increases security, it can also complicate the debugging of network issues or cause unwanted side-effects on client programs.

If traffic is rejected, the router will respond with an icmp error message ("destination port unreachable") causing the connection attempt to fail immediately. This also means that for each connection attempt a certain amount of response traffic is generated. This can actually harm if the firewall is attacked with many simultaneous connection attempts, the resulting backfire of icmp responses can clog up all available upload and make the connection unusable (DoS).

When connection attempts are dropped the client is not aware of the blocking and will continue to re-transmit its packets until the connection eventually times out. Depending on the way the client software is implemented, this could result in frozen or hanging programs that need to wait until a timeout occurs before they're able to continue.

DROP

- less information is exposed
- less attack surface
- client software may not cope well with it (hangs until connection times out)
- may complicate network debugging (where was traffic dropped and why)

REJECT

- may expose information (like the IP at which traffic was actually blocked)
- client software can recover faster from rejected connection attempts
- network debugging easier (routing and firewall issues clearly distinguishable)

28.6 Connection tracking

By default, the firewall will disable connection tracking for a zone if no masquerading is enabled. This is achieved by generating NOTRACK firewall rules matching all traffic passing via interfaces referenced by the firewall zone. The purpose of NOTRACK is to speed up routing and save memory by circumventing resource intensive connection tracking in cases where it is not needed. You can check if connection tracking is disabled by issuing `iptables -t raw -S`, it will list all rules, check for NOTRACK target.

NOTRACK will render certain iptables extensions unusable, for example the MASQUERADE target or the state match will not work.

If connection tracking is required, for example by custom rules in `/etc/firewall.user`, the conntrack option must be enabled in the corresponding zone to disable NOTRACK. It should appear as option 'conntrack' '1' in the right zone in `/etc/config/firewall`.

28.7 Firewall examples

28.7.1 Opening ports

The default configuration accepts all LAN traffic, but blocks all incoming WAN traffic on ports not currently used for connections or NAT. To open a port for a service, add a rule section:

```
config rule
    option src      wan
    option dest_port 22
    option target   ACCEPT
    option proto    tcp
```

This example enables machines on the internet to use SSH to access your router.

28.7.2 Forwarding ports (destination NAT/DNAT)

This example forwards http, but not HTTPS, traffic to the web server running on 192.168.1.10:

```
config redirect
    option src      wan
    option src_dport 80
    option proto    tcp
    option dest_ip  192.168.1.10
```

The next example forwards one arbitrary port that you define to a box running SSH behind the firewall in a more secure manner because it is not using default port 22.

```
config 'redirect'
    option 'name' 'ssh'
    option 'src' 'wan'
    option 'proto' 'tcpudp'
    option 'src_dport' '5555'
    option 'dest_ip' '192.168.1.100'
    option 'dest_port' '22'
    option 'target' 'DNAT'
    option 'dest' 'lan'
```

28.7.3 Source NAT (SNAT)

Source NAT changes an outgoing packet destined for the system so that it looks as though the system is the source of the packet.

Define source NAT for UDP and TCP traffic directed to port 123 originating from the host with the IP address 10.55.34.85. The source address is rewritten to 63.240.161.99.

```
config redirect
    option src          lan
    option dest         wan
    option src_ip       10.55.34.85
    option src_dip      63.240.161.99
    option dest_port    123
    option target       SNAT
```

When used alone, Source NAT is used to restrict a computer's access to the internet, but allows it to access a few services by manually forwarding what appear to be a few local services; for example, NTP to the Internet. While DNAT hides the local network from the Internet, SNAT hides the Internet from the local network.

Source NAT and destination NAT are combined and used dynamically in IP masquerading to make computers with private (192.168.x.x, etc.) IP addresses appear on the internet with the system's public WAN IP address.

28.7.4 True destination port forwarding

This usage is similar to SNAT, but as the destination IP address is not changed, machines on the destination network need to be aware that they'll receive and answer requests from a public IP address that is not necessarily theirs. Port forwarding in this fashion is typically used for load balancing.

```
config redirect
    option src          wan
    option src_dport    80
    option dest         lan
    option dest_port   80
    option proto       tcp
```

28.7.5 Block access to a specific host

The following rule blocks all connection attempts to the specified host address.

```
config rule
    option src          lan
```

```

option dest          wan
option dest_ip      123.45.67.89
option target       REJECT

```

28.7.6 Block access to the internet using MAC

The following rule blocks all connection attempts from the client to the internet.

```

config rule
    option src        lan
    option dest       wan
    option src_mac   00:00:00:00:00:00
    option target     REJECT

```

28.7.7 Block access to the internet for specific IP on certain times

The following rule blocks all connection attempts to the internet from 192.168.1.27 on weekdays between 21:00pm and 09:00am.

```

config rule
    option src        lan
    option dest       wan
    option src_ip    192.168.1.27
    option extra     '-m time --weekdays Mon,Tue,Wed,Thu,Fri --
timestart 21:00 --timestop 09:00'
    option target     REJECT

```

28.7.8 Restricted forwarding rule

The example below creates a forward rule rejecting traffic from LAN to WAN on the ports 1000-1100.

```

config rule
    option src        lan
    option dest       wan
    option dest_port  1000-1100
    option proto     tcpudp
    option target     REJECT

```

28.7.9 Denial of service protection rule

The example below shows a sample configuration of SSH DoS attack where if more than two SSH connections are attempted within 120 seconds, every further connection will be dropped. You can configure this for any port number.

```
config rule 'sshattack'
    option src 'lan'
    option dest_port '22'
    option proto 'tcp'
    option recent '2 120'
    option target 'DROP'
```

28.7.10 IP spoofing prevention mechanism

Configure IP spoofing protection on a per interface basis in the /etc/config/network configuration file. The example below shows the ipv4_rp_filter option enabled on the Vlan12 interface in the network file. When reverse path filtering mechanism is enabled, the router will check whether a receiving packet source address is routable.

If it is routable through the interface from which it came, then the machine will accept the packet

If it is not routable through the interface from which it came, then the machine will drop that packet.

```
config interface 'Vlan12'
    option type 'bridge'
    option proto 'static'
    option monitored '0'
    option ipaddr '10.1.28.122'
    option netmask '255.255.0.0'
    option ifname 'eth1 eth3.12'
    option ipv4_rp_filter '1'
```

28.7.11 Simple DMZ rule

The following rule redirects all WAN ports for all protocols to the internal host 192.168.1.2.

```
config redirect
    option src          wan
    option proto        all
    option dest_ip      192.168.1.2
```

28.7.12 Transparent proxy rule (external)

The following rule redirects all outgoing HTTP traffic from LAN through an external proxy at 192.168.1.100 listening on port 3128. It assumes the router LAN address to be 192.168.1.1 - this is needed to masquerade redirected traffic towards the proxy.

```
config redirect
    option src           lan
    option proto         tcp
    option src_ip        !192.168.1.100
    option src_dport     80
    option dest_ip       192.168.1.100
    option dest_port     3128
    option target        DNAT

config redirect
    option dest          lan
    option proto         tcp
    option src_dip       192.168.1.1
    option dest_ip       192.168.1.100
    option dest_port     3128
    option target        SNAT
```

28.7.13 Transparent proxy rule (same host)

The rule below redirects all outgoing HTTP traffic from LAN through a proxy server listening at port 3128 on the router itself.

```
config redirect
    option src           lan
    option proto         tcp
    option src_dport     80
    option dest_port     3128
```

28.7.14 IPSec passthrough

This example enables proper forwarding of IPSec traffic through the WAN.

```
# AH protocol
config rule
    option src           wan
    option dest          lan
```

```

        option proto          ah
        option target         ACCEPT

# ESP protocol

config rule

        option src            wan
        option dest           lan
        option proto          esp
        option target         ACCEPT

```

For some configurations you also have to open port 500/UDP.

```

# ISAKMP protocol

config rule

        option src            wan
        option dest           lan
        option proto          udp
        option src_port       500
        option dest_port     500
        option target         ACCEPT

```

28.7.15 Manual iptables rules

You can specify traditional iptables rules, in the standard iptables unix command form, in an external file and included in the firewall config file. It is possible to use this process to include multiple files.

```

config include

        option path /etc/firewall.user

config include

        option path /etc/firewall.vpn

```

The syntax for the includes is Linux standard and therefore different from UCIs.

28.7.16 Firewall management

After a configuration change, to rebuild firewall rules, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# /etc/init.d/firewall restart
```

Executing the following command will flush all rules and set the policies to ACCEPT on all standard chains:

```
root@GW_router:/# /etc/init.d/firewall stop
```

To manually start the firewall, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# /etc/init.d/firewall start
```

To permanently disable the firewall, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# /etc/init.d/firewall disable
```

Note: disable does not flush the rules, so you might be required to issue a stop before.

To enable the firewall again, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# /etc/init.d/firewall enable
```

28.7.17 Debug generated rule set

It is possible to observe the iptables commands generated by the firewall programme. This is useful to track down iptables errors during firewall restarts or to verify the outcome of certain UCI rules.

To see the rules as they are executed, run the fw command with the FW_TRACE environment variable set to 1 (one):

```
root@GW_router:/# FW_TRACE=1 fw reload
```

To direct the output to a file for later inspection, enter:

```
root@GW_router:/# FW_TRACE=1 fw reload 2>/tmp/iptables.lo
```

29 Configuring SNMP

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is an internet-standard protocol for managing devices on IP networks. SNMP exposes management data in the form of a hierarchy of variables in a MIB (Management Information Base). These variables can be queried individually, or in groups using their OIDs (Object Identifiers) defined in MIBs. In addition, information from the router can be pushed to a network management station in the form of SNMP traps.

29.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections					
snmpd	access agent com2sec constant	exec group heartbeat informreceiver	inventory inventory_iftable monitor_disk monitor_ioerror	monitor_load monitor_memory monitor_process pass	system trapreceiver usm_user view	

The SNMP application has several configuration sections:

System and Agent	Configures the SNMP agent.
Com2Sec	Maps SNMP community names into an arbitrary security name.
Group	Assigns community names and SNMP protocols to groups.
View and Access	Creates views and sub views of the whole available SNMP tree and grants specific access to those views on a group by group basis.
usm_user	Define a user for SNMPv3 USM
Trap receiver	Address of a notification receiver that should be sent SNMPv1 TRAPs and SNMPv2c TRAP2s.
Inform receiver	Address of a notification receiver that should be sent SNMPv2 INFORM notifications respectively

29.2 Configuring SMNP using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Services -> SNMP**. The SNMP Service page appears.

Figure 143: The SNMP service page

29.2.1 System and agent settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
System settings					
Web: System Location UCI: snmpd.system[0].sysLocation Opt: sysLocation	Sets the system location, system contact or system name for the agent. This information is reported in the 'system' group in the mibII tree.				
Web: System Contact UCI: snmpd.system[0].sysContact Opt: sysContact					
Web: System Name UCI: snmpd.system[0].sysName Opt: sysName					
Agent Settings					
Web: Agent Address UCI: snmpd.agent[0].agentaddress Opt: agentaddress	Specifies the address(es) and port(s) on which the agent should listen. [(udp tcp):]port[@address][,...]				
Web: Enable Authentication Traps UCI: snmpd.agent[0].authtrapenabled Opt: authtrapenabled	Enables or disables SNMP authentication trap. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table> <p>Note: this is the SNMP poll authentication trap to be set when there is a community mismatch.</p>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Enable Link State Notification UCI: snmpd.agent[0].link_updown_notify Opt: link_updown_notify	Generates trap/info when interface goes up or down. When enabled, the router sends a trap notification link up or down. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 90: Information table for system and agent settings

29.2.2 Com2Sec settings

To access Com2Sec settings, scroll down the SNMP Services page.

Use the COM2Sec section to map SNMP community names into an arbitrary security name. Map community names into security names based on the community name and the source subnet. Use the first source/community combination that matches the incoming packet.

A community string is a password that is applied to a device to restrict both read-only and read-write access to the SNMP data on the device. These community strings should be chosen carefully to ensure they are not trivial. They should also be changed at regular intervals and in accordance with network security policies.

COM2SEC Settings

Security Name	Source	Community	
public	ro	default	public Delete
private	rw	localhost	private Delete

Add

Figure 144: The COM2Sec settings section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: Security Name UCI: snmpd.com2sec[x].secname Opt: secname	Specifies an arbitrary security name for the user.
Web: Source UCI: snmpd.com2sec[x].source Opt: source	A hostname, localhost or a subnet specified as a.b.c.d/mask or a.b.c.d/bits or 'default' for no restrictions.
Web: Community UCI: snmpd.com2sec[x].community Opt: community	Specifies the community string being presented in the request.

Table 91: Information table for Com2Sec settings

29.2.3 Group settings

Group settings assign community names and SNMP protocols to groups.

Group Settings

Group	Version	Security Name	
public_v1	v1	ro	Delete
public_v2c	v2c	ro	Delete
public_usm	usm	ro	Delete
private_v1	v1	rw	Delete
private_v2c	v2c	rw	Delete

Figure 145: The group settings section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description								
Web: Group UCI: snmpd.group[x].group Opt: group	Specifies an arbitrary group name.								
Web: Version UCI: snmpd.group[x].version Opt: version	Specifies the SNMP version number being used in the request: v1, v2c and usm (User-based Security Module) are supported. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>v1</td> <td>SNMP v1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>v2v</td> <td>SNMP v2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>usm</td> <td>SNMP v3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>any</td> <td>Any SNMP version</td> </tr> </table>	v1	SNMP v1	v2v	SNMP v2	usm	SNMP v3	any	Any SNMP version
v1	SNMP v1								
v2v	SNMP v2								
usm	SNMP v3								
any	Any SNMP version								
Web: Security Name UCI: snmpd.group[x].secname Opt: secname	An already defined security name that is being included in this group.								

Table 92: Information table for group settings

29.2.4 View settings

View settings define a named "view", which is a subset of the overall OID tree. This is most commonly a single subtree, but several view directives can be given with the same view name, to build up a more complex collection of OIDs.

View Settings			
Name	Type	OID	
all	all	included	/1
		<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	
<input type="button" value="Add"/>			

Figure 146: The view settings section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Name UCI: snmpd.view[x].viewname Opt: viewname	Specifies an arbitrary view name. Typically it describes what the view shows.				
Web: Type UCI: snmpd.view[x].type Opt: type	Specifies whether the view lists oids that are included in the view or lists oids to be excluded from the view (in which case all other oids are visible apart from those ones listed). <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>included</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>excluded</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	included		excluded	
included					
excluded					
Web: OID UCI: snmpd.view[x].oid Opt: oid	OID to be included in or excluded from the view. Only numerical representation is supported. Example <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Everything</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1.3.6.1.2.1.2</td> <td>Interfaces table</td> </tr> </table>	1	Everything	1.3.6.1.2.1.2	Interfaces table
1	Everything				
1.3.6.1.2.1.2	Interfaces table				

Table 93: Information table for view settings

29.2.5 Access settings

Access settings map from a group of users/communities, in a specific context and with a particular SNMP version and minimum security level, to one of three views, depending on the request being processed.

Access Settings								
	group	context	version	level	prefix	read	write	notify
public_access	public	none	any	noauth	exact	all	none	none
private_access	private	none	any	noauth	exact	all	all	all
<input type="button" value="Delete"/>								
<input type="button" value="Add"/>								

Figure 147: The access settings section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description								
Web: Group UCI: snmpd.access[x].group Opt: group	Specifies the group to which access is being granted.								
Web: Context UCI: snmpd.access[x].context Opt: context	SNMPv3 request context is matched against the value according to the prefix below. For SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c, the context must be none . <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>none</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>all</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	none		all					
none									
all									
Web: Version UCI: snmpd.access[x].version Opt: version	Specifies the SNMP version number being used in the request: any, v1, v2c and usm are supported. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>v1</td> <td>SNMP v1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>v2v</td> <td>SNMP v2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>usm</td> <td>SNMP v3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>any</td> <td>Any SNMP version</td> </tr> </table>	v1	SNMP v1	v2v	SNMP v2	usm	SNMP v3	any	Any SNMP version
v1	SNMP v1								
v2v	SNMP v2								
usm	SNMP v3								
any	Any SNMP version								
Web: Level UCI: snmpd.access[x].level Opt: level	Specifies the security level. For SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c level must be noauth . <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>noauth</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>auth</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>priv</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	noauth		auth		priv			
noauth									
auth									
priv									
Web: Prefix UCI: snmpd.access[x].prefix Opt: prefix	Prefix specifies how context (above) should be matched against the context of the incoming pdu. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>exact</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>any</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>all</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	exact		any		all			
exact									
any									
all									
Web: Read UCI: snmpd.access[x].read Opt: read	Specifies the view to be used for read access.								
Web: Write UCI: snmpd.access[x].write Opt: write	Specifies the view to be used for write access.								
Web: Notify UCI: snmpd.access[x].notify Opt: notify	Specifies the view to be used for notify access.								

Table 94: Information table for access settings

29.2.6 Trap receiver

Trap receiver settings define a notification receiver that should be sent SNMPv1 TRAPS and SNMPv2c TRAP2.

Trap Receiver			
Host	Port	Version	Community
192.168.100.254		v1	public
<input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/>			

Figure 148: The trap receiver settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Host UCI: snmpd.trapreceiver[x].host Opt: host	Host address. Can be either an IP address or an FQDN.				
Web: Port UCI: snmpd.trapreceiver[x].port Opt: port	UDP port to be used for sending traps. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>162</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Range		162	
Range					
162					
Web: Version UCI: snmpd.trapreceiver[x].version Opt: version	SNMP version. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>v1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>V2</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	v1		V2	
v1					
V2					
Web: Community UCI: snmpd.trapreceiver[x].community Opt: community	Community to use in trap messages for this host.				

Table 95: Information table for trap receiver settings

29.2.7 Inform receiver

Inform receiver settings define a notification receiver that should be sent SNMPv2c INFORM notifications.

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface for an 'Inform Receiver'. At the top, it says 'Inform Receiver'. Below that are three input fields: 'Host', 'Port', and 'Community', each with its own input field and a 'Browse' button. Below these fields is a note: 'This section contains no values yet'.

Figure 149: The inform receiver settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Host UCI: snmpd.informreceiver[x].host Opt: host	Host address. Can be either an IP address or an FQDN.				
Web: Port UCI: snmpd.informreceiver[x].port Opt: port	UDP port to be used for sending traps. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>162</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Range		162	
Range					
162					
Web: Community UCI: snmpd.informreceiver[x].community Opt: community	Community to use in inform messages for this host.				

Table 96: Information table for trap receiver settings

29.3 Configuring SNMP using command line

The configuration files are stored on **/etc/config/snmpd**.

29.3.1 System settings using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show snmpd
snmpd.system=system
snmpd.system.sysLocation=Office 123
snmpd.system.sysContact=Mr White
snmpd.system.sysName=Backup Access 4
snmpd.agent=agent
snmpd.agent.agentaddress=UDP:161
snmpd.agent.authtrapenabled=yes
snmpd.agent.link_updown_notify=yes
```

29.3.2 System settings using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export snmpd
package snmpd
config 'system'
    option sysLocation 'Office 123'
    option sysContact 'Mr White'
    option sysName 'Backup Access 4'

config 'agent'
    option agentaddress 'UDP:161'
    option authtrapenabled '1'
    option link_updown_notify '1'
```

Another sample agent configuration shown below causes the agent to listen on UDP port 161, TCP port 161 and UDP port 9161 on only the interface associated with the localhost address.

```
config 'agent'
    option agentaddress 'UDP:161,tcp:161,9161@localhost'
```

29.3.3 com2sec settings

The following sample specifies that a request from any source using “public” as the community string will be dealt with using the security name “ro”. However, any request from the localhost itself using “private” as the community string will be dealt with using the security name “rw”.

Note: the security names of “ro” and “rw” here are simply names – the fact of a security name having read only or read-write permissions is handled in the access section and dealt with at a group granularity.

29.3.3.1 Com2sec using UCI

```
snmpd.c2s_1=com2sec
snmpd.c2s_1.source=default
snmpd.c2s_1.community=public
snmpd.c2s_1.secname=rw
snmpd.c2s_2=com2sec
snmpd.c2s_2.source=localhost
snmpd.c2s_2.community=private
snmpd.c2s_2.secname=ro
```

29.3.3.2 Com2sec using package options

```
config 'com2sec' 'public'
    option secname 'ro'
    option source 'default'
    option community 'public'

config 'com2sec' 'private'
    option secname 'rw'
    option source 'localhost'
    option community 'private'
```

29.3.4 Group settings

The following example specifies that a request from the security name “ro” using snmp v1, v2c or USM (User Based Security Model for SNM P v3) are all mapped to the “public” group. Similarly, requests from the security name “rw” in all protocols are mapped to the “private” group.

29.3.4.1 Group settings using UCI

```
snmpd.grp_1_v1=group
snmpd.grp_1_v1.version=v1
snmpd.grp_1_v1.group=public
snmpd.grp_1_v1.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_1_v2c=group
snmpd.grp_1_v2c.version=v2c
snmpd.grp_1_v2c.group=public
snmpd.grp_1_v2c.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_1_usm=group
snmpd.grp_1_usm.version=usm
```

```
snmpd.grp_1_usm.group=public
snmpd.grp_1_usm.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_1_access=access
snmpd.grp_1_access.context=none
snmpd.grp_1_access.version=any
snmpd.grp_1_access.level=noauth
snmpd.grp_1_access.prefix=exact
snmpd.grp_1_access.read=all
snmpd.grp_1_access.write=none
snmpd.grp_1_access.notify=none
snmpd.grp_1_access.group=public
snmpd.grp_2_v1=group
snmpd.grp_2_v1.version=v1
snmpd.grp_2_v1.group=public
snmpd.grp_2_v1.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_2_v2c=group
snmpd.grp_2_v2c.version=v2c
snmpd.grp_2_v2c.group=public
snmpd.grp_2_v2c.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_2_usm=group
snmpd.grp_2_usm.version=usm
snmpd.grp_2_usm.group=public
snmpd.grp_2_usm.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_2_access=access
snmpd.grp_2_access.context=none
snmpd.grp_2_access.version=any
snmpd.grp_2_access.level=noauth
snmpd.grp_2_access.prefix=exact
snmpd.grp_2_access.read=all
snmpd.grp_2_access.write=all
snmpd.grp_2_access.notify=all
snmpd.grp_2_access.group=public
```

29.3.4.2 Group settings using package options

```
config 'group' 'public_v1'
    option group 'public'
    option version 'v1'
    option secname 'ro'

config 'group' 'public_v2c'
    option group 'public'
    option version 'v2c'
    option secname 'ro'

config 'group' 'public_usm'
    option group 'public'
    option version 'usm'
    option secname 'ro'

config 'group' 'private_v1'
    option group 'private'
    option version 'v1'
    option secname 'rw'

config 'group' 'private_v2c'
    option group 'private'

    option version 'v2c'
    option secname 'rw'

config 'group' 'private_usm'
    option group 'private'
    option version 'usm'
    option secname 'rw'
```

29.3.5 View settings

The following example defines two views, one for the entire system and another for only mib2.

29.3.5.1 View settings using UCI

```
snmpd.all=view
snmpd.all.viewname=all
snmpd.all.oid=.1
snmpd.mib2=view
snmpd.mib2.viewname=mib2
snmpd.mib2.type=included
snmpd.mib2.oid=.iso.org.dod.Internet.mgmt.mib-2
```

29.3.5.2 View settings using package options

```
config 'view' 'all'
    option viewname 'all'
    option type 'included'
    option oid '.1'

config 'view' 'mib2'
    option viewname 'mib2'
    option type 'included'
    option oid '.iso.org.dod.Internet.mgmt.mib-2'
```

29.3.6 Access settings

The following example shows the “public” group being granted read access on the “all” view and the “private” group being granted read and write access on the “all” view. Although it is possible to write some settings using SNMP write permission, it is not recommended, as any changes to the configuration made through an snmpset command may conflict with the UCI configuration. In this instance the changes will be overwritten by other processes and will not persist after a reboot.

29.3.6.1 Access using package options

```
config 'access' 'public_access'
    option group 'public'
    option context 'none'
    option version 'any'
    option level 'noauth'
    option prefix 'exact'
```

```

option read 'all'
option write 'none'
option notify 'none'

config 'access' 'private_access'
    option group 'private'
    option context 'none'
    option version 'any'
    option level 'noauth'
    option prefix 'exact'
    option read 'all'
    option write 'all'
    option notify 'all'

```

29.3.7 SNMP traps settings

29.3.7.1 SNMP trap using UCI

```

snmpd.@trapreceiver[0]=trapreceiver
snmpd.@trapreceiver[0].host=1.1.1.1:161
snmpd.@trapreceiver[0].version=v1
snmpd.@trapreceiver[0].community=public

```

29.3.7.2 SNMP trap using package options

```

# for SNMPv1 or v2c trap receivers

config trapreceiver
    option host 'IPADDR[:PORT]'
    option version 'v1|v2c'
    option community 'COMMUNITY STRING'

# for SNMPv2c inform request receiver

config informreceiver
    option host 'IPADDR[:PORT]'
    option community 'COMMUNITY STRING'

```

29.4 Configuring SNMP interface alias with static SNMP index

A Linux interface index changes dynamically. This is not ideal for SNMP managers that require static interface indexes to be defined.

The network package interface section allows defining a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface.

An alias entry is created in the SNMP ifEntry table at index (**snmp_alias_ifindex + 1000**). This entry is a shadow of the real underlying Linux interface corresponding to the UCI definition. You may use any numbering scheme you wish; the alias values do not need to be consecutive.

29.4.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
network	interface

29.4.2 Configuring SNMP interface alias

To enter and SNMP alias for an interface, select **Network->Interfaces->Edit->Common Configuration->Advanced Settings**.

Enter a small index value for **SNMP Alias ifindex** that is unique to this interface. To retrieve SNMP statistics for this interface, the SNMP manager should be configured to poll (**snmp_alias_ifindex + 1000**). For example, if an interface is configured with an **snmp_alias_ifindex** of 11, then the SNMP manager should poll **ifIndex=1011**. The ifIndex will remain fixed regardless of how many times the underlying interface is added or removed.

If the Linux interface associated with the UCI entry is active when the alias index is polled, the normal ifEntry information for that interface is reported. Otherwise, a dummy entry is created with the same ifDescr, and its ifOper field set to **DOWN**.

Note: if you are using SIM roaming, where mobile interfaces are created dynamically, you need to specify a fixed **snmp_alias_ifindex** value and a fixed **ifName** value in the roaming template. All roaming entries will then map to the same Linux interface name and underlying device.

SNMP Alias ifindex ⓘ Alias ifindex SNMP agent. Alias indexes are present at 1000 offset. So setting 1 here will create snmp ifTable entry 1001.
Useful when interface creates new linux interface on every startup (e.g. ppp interface). With this set the interface could be monitored via constant snmp agent interface table entry

Figure 150: The interface SNMP Alias ifindex field advanced settings page

UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network.@interface[X].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface, that can be polled using via the SNMP interface index (<i>snmp_alias_ifindex+1000</i>)	
	Blank	No SNMP interface alias index
	Range	0 - 4294966295

Web: n/a UCI: network.@interface[X].snmp_alias_ifdescr Opt: snmp_alias_ifdescr	Defines an alias name to be reported for the UCI name in the enterprise MIB for UCI interfaces, and in alias entries in the ifIndex table. If present, this option supercedes the default ifDescr value (usually the UCI interface name, or configured ifName) <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin-top: 5px;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Blank</td><td style="padding: 2px;">No SNMP interface alias name</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias name	Range	
Blank	No SNMP interface alias name				
Range					

Table 97: Information table for static SNMP alias interface

29.4.3 Configuring SNMP interface alias using the command line

SNMP interface alias is configured under the network package **/etc/config/network**

The following examples use an interface section named MOBILE.

29.4.3.1 SNMP interface alias using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show network
network.MOBILE=interface
.....
network.MOBILE.snmp_alias_ifindex=11
network.MOBILE.snmp_alias_ifdescr=primary_mobile
.....
```

29.4.3.2 SNMP interface alias using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show network
config interface 'MOBILE'
.....
option snmp_alias_ifindex '11'
option snmp_alias_ifdescr 'primary_mobile'
.....
```

29.4.4 SNMP interface alias MIBS

OID Name	OID
interface alias table	.1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.1.
snmp_alias_ifindex	.1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.1.<snmp_alias_ifindex+1000>
snmp_alias_ifdescr	1.3.6.1.4.1.2078.3.2.66.1.1.<index>.{5,6}

29.5 SNMP diagnostics

29.5.1 SNMP process

To check the SNMP process is running correctly, enter **pgrep -fl snmpd**.

```
root@GW_router:~# pgrep -fl snmpd
```

```
6970 /usr/sbin/snmpd -Lsd0-6 -p /var/run/snmpd.pid -m -c
/var/conf/snmpd.conf
```

29.5.2 SNMP port

To check that SNMP service is listening on the configured port, enter **netstat -pantu | grep snmp**

```
root@GW_router:~# netstat -pantu | grep snmp
udp    0 0 0.0.0.0:161  0.0.0.0:*          6970/snmpd
```

29.5.3 Retrieving SNMP values

SNMP values can be queried by an snmpwalk or snmpget either locally or remotely.

29.5.3.1 snmpwalk

To do an snmpwalk locally, use **snmpwalk**. An example snmpwalk is shown below:

```
root@GW_router:~# snmpwalk -c public -v 1 localhost .1.3.6.1.2.1.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0 = STRING: "SATEL GWXXXX, SN# 00E0C812D1A0, EDG-
21.00.07.008"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.2.0 = OID: iso.3.6.1.4.1.2078
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0 = Timeticks: (71816) 0:11:58.16
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.0 = STRING: "info@satel.com"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.5.0 = STRING: "GWXXXX"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.6.0 = STRING: "UK"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.7.0 = INTEGER: 79
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.8.0 = Timeticks: (60) 0:00:00.60
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.1 = OID: iso.3.6.1.2.1.4
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.2 = OID: iso.3.6.1.6.3.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.3 = OID: iso.3.6.1.2.1.49
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.4 = OID: iso.3.6.1.2.1.50
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.5 = OID: iso.3.6.1.6.3.16.2.2.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.6 = OID: iso.3.6.1.6.3.10.3.1.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.7 = OID: iso.3.6.1.6.3.11.3.1.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.8 = OID: iso.3.6.1.6.3.15.2.1.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.9 = OID: iso.3.6.1.2.1.10.131
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.4 = Timeticks: (35) 0:00:00.35
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.5 = Timeticks: (38) 0:00:00.38
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.6 = Timeticks: (38) 0:00:00.38
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.7 = Timeticks: (38) 0:00:00.38
```

```
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.8 = Timeticks: (38) 0:00:00.38
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.9 = Timeticks: (60) 0:00:00.60
.....
```

29.5.3.2 snmpget

To do an snmpget locally, use **snmpget**. An example snmpget is shown below.

```
root@GW_router:~# snmpget -c public -v 1 localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.2078.3.14.2
iso.3.6.1.4.1.2078.3.14.2 = STRING: "EDG-21.00.07.008"
```

29.5.4 SNMP status

To view an overview including tx/rx packets and uptime of the SNMP process, enter **snmpstatus**.

```
root@GW_router:~# snmpstatus -c public -v 2c localhost
[UDP: [0.0.0.0]->[127.0.0.1]:161]=>[SATEL GWXXXX, SN# 00E0C812D1A0, EDG-
21.00.07.008] Up: 0:17:05.87
Interfaces: 21, Recv/Trans packets: 47632/9130 | IP: 15045/8256
15 interfaces are down!
```

30 Configuring VRRP

30.1 Overview

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) is a networking protocol designed to eliminate the single point of failure inherent in the static default routed environment.

VRRP specifies an election protocol that dynamically assigns responsibility for a virtual router to one of the VRRP routers on a LAN. The VRRP router controlling the IP address(es) associated with a virtual router is called the Master, and forwards packets sent to these IP addresses. The election process provides dynamic failover in the forwarding responsibility from the Master to a backup router should the Master become unavailable. This process allows the virtual router IP address(es) on the LAN to be used as the default first hop router by end hosts. The advantage gained from using VRRP is a higher availability default path without requiring configuration of dynamic routing or router discovery protocols on every end host.

Two or more routers forming the redundancy cluster are configured with the same Router ID and Virtual IP address. A VRRP router group operates within the scope of the single LAN. Additionally, the VRRP routers are configured with its initial role (Master or Backup) and the router priority, which is a factor in the master router election process. You can also configure a password authentication to protect VRRP protocol messages against spoofing.

The VRRP protocol is implemented according to internet standard RFC2338.

30.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
vrrp	main vrrp_group

30.3 Configuring VRRP using the web interface

To configure VRRP through the web interface, in the top menu, select **Network -> VRRP**. The VRRP page appears. To access configuration settings, click **ADD**.

Figure 151: The VRRP group configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: VRRP Enabled UCI: vrrp.main.enabled Opt: Enabled	Globally enables VRRP on the router. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Group Enabled UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].enabled Opt: Enabled	Enables a VRRP group on the router. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Interface UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].interface Opt: interface	Sets the local LAN interface name in which the VRRP cluster is to operate. For example, 'lan'. The interface name is taken from the package network. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>lan</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	lan		Range	
lan					
Range					
Web: Track Interfaces UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].track_iface Opt: list track_iface	Sets one or more WAN interfaces that VRRP should monitor. If a monitored interface goes down on the Master VRRP router, it goes into 'Fault' state and the Backup VRRP router becomes the Master. Multiple interfaces should be entered with space separator when using UCI. Example: <code>vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].track_iface=WAN MOBILE</code> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>wan</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	wan		Range	
wan					
Range					
Web: IPsec connection UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].ipsec_connection Opt: ipsec_connection	Sets which IPsec connection to bring up or down when VRRP enters 'Backup/Master' state. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>(blank)</td><td>No IPsec connection to toggle.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	(blank)	No IPsec connection to toggle.	Range	
(blank)	No IPsec connection to toggle.				
Range					

Web: Start role UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].init_state Opt: init_state	Sets the initial role in which a VRRP router starts up. In a cluster of VRRP routes, set one as a Master and the others as Backup. <table border="1"><tr><td>BACKUP</td></tr><tr><td>MASTER</td></tr></table>	BACKUP	MASTER		
BACKUP					
MASTER					
Web: Router ID UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].router_id Opt: router_id	Sets the VRRP router ID (1 to 255). All co-operating VRRP routers serving the same LAN must be configured with the same router ID. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>1-255</td></tr></table>	1	Range	1-255	
1					
Range	1-255				
Web: Priority UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].priority Opt: priority	Sets the VRRP router's priority. Higher values equal higher priority. The VRRP routers must use priority values between 1-254. The Master router uses a higher priority. <table border="1"><tr><td>100</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0-255</td></tr></table>	100	Range	0-255	
100					
Range	0-255				
Web: Advert intvl UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].advert_int_sec Opt: advert_int_sec	Sets the VRRP hello value in seconds. This value must match the value set on a peer. <table border="1"><tr><td>120</td><td>120 seconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	120	120 seconds	Range	
120	120 seconds				
Range					
Web: Password UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].password Opt: password	Sets the password to use in the VRRP authentication (simple password authentication method). This field may be left blank if no authentication is required.				
Web: Virtual IP UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].virtual_ipaddr Opt: virtual_ipaddr	Sets the virtual IP address and mask in prefix format. For example, '11.1.1.99/24'. All co-operating VRRP routers serving the same LAN must be configured with the same virtual IP address.				
Web: GARP delay UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].garp_delay_sec Opt: garp_delay_sec	Sets the Gratuitous ARP message sending delay in seconds. <table border="1"><tr><td>5</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	5	Range		
5					
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].track_ipsec Opt: list track_ipsec	Sets one or more IPSec connection that VRRP should monitor. If a monitored IPSec connection goes down on the Master VRRP router, it goes into 'Fault' state and the Backup VRRP router becomes the Master. Multiple IPSec connection should be entered with space separator when using UCI. Example: <code>vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].track_ipsec=conn1 conn2</code> <table border="1"><tr><td>(blank)</td><td>No IPSec connection to track.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	(blank)	No IPSec connection to track.	Range	
(blank)	No IPSec connection to track.				
Range					

Table 98: Information table for VRRP settings

30.4 Configuring VRRP using command line

The configuration file is stored on `/etc/config/vrrp`.

There are two config sections – **main** and **vrrp_group**.

Multiple VRRP groups can be configured. By default, all VRRP group instances are named 'vrrp_group'. It is identified by `@vrrp_group` then the `vrrp_group` position in the package as a number. For example, for the first `vrrp_group` in the package using UCI:

```
vrrp.@vrrp_group[0]=vrrp_group
vrrp.@vrrp_group[0].enabled=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config vrrp_group
    option enabled '1'
```

However, to better identify, it is recommended to give the vrrp_group instance a name. For example, to define a vrrp_group instance named 'g1' using UCI, enter:

```
vrrp.g1.vrrp_group
vrrp.g1.enabled=1
```

To define a named keepalive instance using package options, enter:

```
config vrrp_group 'g1'
    option enabled '1'
```

30.4.1 VRRP using UCI

To view the configuration in UCI format, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show vrrp
vrrp.main=vrrp
vrrp.main.enabled=yes
vrrp.g1=vrrp_group
vrrp.g1.enabled=yes
vrrp.g1.interface=lan
vrrp.g1.track_iface=WAN MOBILE
vrrp.g1.init_state=BACKUP
vrrp.g1.router_id=1
vrrp.g1.priority=100
vrrp.g1.advert_int_sec=120
vrrp.g1.password=secret
vrrp.g1.virtual_ipaddr=10.1.10.150/16
vrrp.g1.garp_delay_sec=5
vrrp.g1.ipsec_connection=Test
vrrp.g1.track_ipsec=conn1 conn2
```

30.4.2 VRRP using package options

To view the configuration in package option format, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export vrrp
package vrrp

config vrrp 'main'
    option enabled 'yes'

config vrrp_group 'g1'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option interface 'lan'
    list track_iface 'WAN'
    list track_iface 'MOBILE'
    option init_state 'BACKUP'
    option router_id '1'
    option priority '100'
    option advert_int_sec '120'
    option password 'secret'
    option virtual_ipaddr '10.1.10.150/16'
    option garp_delay_sec '5'
    option ipsec_connection 'Test'
    list track_ipsec 'conn1'
    list track_ipsec 'conn2'
```

31 Configuring multicasting using PIM and IGMP interfaces

31.1 Overview

IP multicast is a bandwidth-conserving technology that reduces traffic by simultaneously delivering a single stream of information to potentially thousands of corporate recipients. Applications that take advantage of multicast include video conferencing and corporate communications.

IP multicast delivers application source traffic to multiple receivers without burdening the source or the receivers while using a minimum of network bandwidth.

PIM (Protocol Independent Multicast) and IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) are protocols used to create multicasting networks within a regular IP network.

A multicast group is an arbitrary group of receivers that expresses an interest in receiving a particular data stream. The receivers (the designated multicast group) are interested in receiving a data stream from the source. They indicate this by sending an Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) host report to their closest router in the network. The routers are then responsible for delivering the data from the source to the receivers. The routers use Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) between themselves to dynamically create a multicast distribution tree. The data stream will then be delivered only to the network segments that are in the path between the source and the receivers.

To summarize: PIM is used between routers while IGMP is used between a receiver and its router only. As a result, PIM must be enabled on all the interfaces on the route from the multicast source to the multicast client while IGMP must be enabled on the interface to the multicast client only.

31.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
pimd	pimd interface

31.3 Configuring PIM and IGMP using the web interface

To configure PIM through the web interface, in the top menu, select **Network -> PIM**. The PIM page appears. To access the Global settings, click **Add**.

PIM	
Global Settings	
PIM Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SSM Ping Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>
Delete	

Figure 152: The global settings interface

31.3.1 Global settings

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: PIM Enabled UCI: pimd.pimd.enabled Opt: enabled	Globally enables PIM on the router.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: SSM Ping Enabled UCI: pimd.pimd.ssmpingd Opt: ssmpingd	Enables answers to SSM pings.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.

Table 99: Information table for PIM global settings

31.3.2 Interfaces configuration

Interfaces Configuration				
Enabled	Interface	Enable IGMP	Enable SSM	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	gre1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<button>Delete</button>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	wlan_ap	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<button>Delete</button>
<button>Add</button>				

Figure 153: The interfaces configuration section

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enabled UCI: pimd.interface[x].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables multicast management of the given interface by the PIM application.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Interface UCI: pimd.interface[x].interface Opt: interface	Selects the interface to apply PIM settings to.				
Web: Enable IGMP UCI: pimd.interface[x].igmp Opt: igmp	<p>Enable IGMP on given interface.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table> <p>Note: you must enable PIM SSM and/or IGMP depending on your requirements. ICMP must be enabled on the interface to the multicast client only.</p>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Enable SSM UCI: pimd.interface[x].ssm Opt: ssm	<p>Enable SSM on given interface.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 100: Information table for interface settings

To save your configuration updates, click **Save & Apply**.

31.4 Configuring PIM and IGMP using UCI

You can configure PIM and IGMP through CLI using UCI.

The configuration file is stored on **/etc/config/pimd**

To view the configuration file, enter:

```
uci export pimd
root@GW_router:/etc/config1# uci export pimd
package pimd
config routing 'pimd'
    option enabled 'yes'

config interface
    option enabled 'yes'
    option interface 'lan'
    option ssm 'yes'
    option igmp 'yes'

config interface
    option enabled 'yes'
    option interface 'wan'
    option ssm 'yes'
    option igmp 'no'
```

Alternatively, enter:

```
uci show pimd
root@GW_router:/etc/config1# uci show pimd
pimd.pimd=routing
pimd.pimd.enabled=yes
pimd.@interface[0]=interface
pimd.@interface[0].enabled=yes
pimd.@interface[0].interface=lan
pimd.@interface[0].ssm=yes
pimd.@interface[0].igmp=yes
pimd.@interface[1]=interface
pimd.@interface[1].enabled=yes
```

```
pimd.@interface[1].interface=wan  
pimd.@interface[1].ssm=yes  
pimd.@interface[1].igmp=no
```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

32 Configuring Terminal Server

32.1 Overview

Terminal Server is a background application whose main task is to forward data between TCP connections or UDP streams and asynchronous or synchronous serial ports.

Terminal Server application serves up to 4 sessions simultaneously one for each serial port, depending on the device. Each Terminal Server session has an IP endpoint and an associated specific serial port.

You can configure the IP endpoint of each Terminal Server session to be a:

- TCP server: each session is listening on a unique port.
- TCP client: Terminal Server makes a TCP connection to external TCP server.
- UDP endpoint: Terminal Server forwards data between a UDP stream and a serial port.

32.2 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
Tservd	Main
	Port

32.3 Configuring Terminal Server using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Services -> Terminal Server**. The Terminal Server Configuration page appears. You must configure two main sections: Main Settings and Port Settings.

32.3.1 Configure main settings

The screenshot shows the 'Terminal Server' configuration page. At the top, it says 'Terminal Server' and 'Configuration of the Terminal Server'. Below that is a 'Main Settings' section with the following options:

- Enable**: A checkbox labeled 'enable terminal server'.
- Debug Enable**: A checkbox labeled 'enables detailed debug logging (state transitions, data transfer etc)'.
- Syslog severity**: A dropdown menu set to 'Informational'.
- Log RX-TX**: A checkbox labeled 'enable logging data transfers'.

Figure 154: The terminal server main settings page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable UCI: tservd.main.enable Opt: enable	Enables Terminal Server on the router.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Debug Enable UCI: tservd.main.debug_ev_enable Opt: debug_ev_enable	Enables detailed debug logging.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Syslog severity UCI: tservd.main.log_severity Opt: log_severity	Determines the syslog level. Events up to this priority will be logged.	
	0	Emergency
	1	Alert
	2	Critical
	3	Error
	4	Warning
	5	Notice
	6	Informational
	7	Debug
Web: Log RX-TX UCI: tservd.main.debug_rx_tx_enable Opt: debug_rx_tx_enable	Enables logging data transfers.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.

Table 101: Information table for main settings

32.3.2 Configure port settings

The Port Settings section is divided into 3 sub-sections:

- General
- Serial
- Network

32.3.2.1 Port settings: general section

In this section you can configure general port settings. The settings are usually the same for the central and the remote site.

Port Settings

PORt1

- [General](#)
- [Serial](#)
- [Network](#)

Enable [enable port](#)

Network Forwarding Buffer Size [Forwarding buffer size \(serial to network\)](#)

Network Forwarding Timeout (ms) [Forwarding timeout in milliseconds \(serial to network\)](#)

Network Forwarding timer mode [Forwarding timer mode \(serial to network\)](#)

Serial Forwarding Buffer Size [Forwarding buffer size \(network to serial\)](#)

Serial Forwarding Timeout (ms) [Forwarding timeout in milliseconds \(network to serial\)](#)

Serial Forwarding timer mode [Forwarding timer mode \(network to serial\)](#)

Proxy mode [enable proxy mode](#)

Disable remote client's local echo (Telnet option)

Telnet COM port control (RFC2217)

Enable HDLC Pseudowire over UDP (RFC4618)

Serial receive debug log size [bytes \(0=disable\)](#)

Serial transmit debug log size [bytes \(0=disable\)](#)

Figure 155: The general tab fields

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable UCI: tservd.@port[0].enable Opt: enable	Enables Terminal Server port.	
	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	Disabled.
	<input type="checkbox"/> 1	Enabled.
Web: Network Forwarding Buffer Size UCI: tservd.@port[0]. fwd_buffer_size Opt: fwd_buffer_size	Forwarding buffer size in bytes (serial to network).	
	<input type="text" value="256"/>	256 bytes
	<input type="text" value="Range"/>	0-2048
Web: Network Forwarding Timeout(ms) UCI: tservd.@port[0]. fwd_timeout Opt: fwd_timeout	Forwarding timeout in milliseconds (serial to network).	
	<input type="text" value="30"/>	30 ms
	<input type="text" value="Range"/>	0-10000
Web: Network Forwarding Timer Mode UCI: tservd.@port[0]. fwd_timer_mode Opt: fwd_timer_mode	Forwarding timer mode (serial to network).	
	<input type="text" value="Idle"/>	Timer is re-started on each received data.
	<input type="text" value="Aging"/>	Timer started on the first Rx.
Web: Serial Forwarding Buffer Size UCI: tservd.@port[0]. sfwd_buffer_size Opt: sfwd_buffer_size	Forwarding buffer size in bytes (network to serial). Set to 0 to use maximum possible network Rx buffer size.	
	<input type="text" value="0"/>	2048 bytes
	<input type="text" value="Range"/>	0-2048
Web: Serial Forwarding Timeout (ms) UCI: tservd.@port[0]. sfwd_timeout Opt: sfwd_timeout	Forwarding timeout in milliseconds (network to serial). Set to 0 to forward to serial immediately.	
	<input type="text" value="20"/>	20 ms
	<input type="text" value="Range"/>	0-10000

Web: Serial Forwarding Timer Mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].sfwd_timer_mode Opt: sfwd_timer_mode	Forwarding timer mode (network to serial). <table border="1"> <tr><td>Idle</td><td>Timer is re-started on each received data</td></tr> <tr><td>Aging</td><td>Timer started on the first Rx.</td></tr> </table>	Idle	Timer is re-started on each received data	Aging	Timer started on the first Rx.
Idle	Timer is re-started on each received data				
Aging	Timer started on the first Rx.				
Web: Proxy Mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].proxy_mode Opt: proxy_mode	Defines if special proxy mode is configured to allow 'hijacking' of the terminal server. It allows a connection to be made from a remote location and redirect terminal server data temporarily for troubleshooting. When enabled a TCP proxy server is started which listens for an incoming TCP connection from a remote peer. Once an incoming new TCP connection on the proxy server TCP port is accepted: The existing terminal server TCP client connection is disconnected. The terminal server automatically reconnects the TCP client side but this time to the local loopback address 127.0.0.1 and to the local proxies TCP port number. Once the proxy server has both local and remote TCP sessions connected it simply forwards the data between the two connections, taking into account the flow control. When either side TCP socket closes, the main terminal server client re-connects to the normal IP destination and the server proxy returns to listening for another connection from the far end. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Disable Remote Client's Local Echo (Telnet option) UCI: tservd.@port[0].disable_echo Opt: disable_echo	Set to 1 to send IAC WILL ECHO Telnet option to remote client forcing it to disable local echo. For server mode only. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Telnet COM Port Control UCI: tservd.@port[0].com_port_control Opt: com_port_control	Set to 1 to enable support for Telnet COM port control (RFC2217). <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Enable HDLC Pseudowire over UDP (RFC4618) UCI: tservd.@port[0].hdlc_pw_enabled Opt: hdlc_pw_enabled	Set to 1 to enable HDLC pseudowire over UDP support based on RFC4618 (requires Transport Mode (udpmode) to be enabled) <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Serial Receive Debug Log Size UCI: tservd.@port[0].serialRxLogSize Opt: serialRxLogSize	Configures serial receive log size in bytes and enables receive data logging. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Serial Transmit Debug Log Size UCI: tservd.@port[0].serialTxLogSize Opt: serialTxLogSize	Configures serial transmit log size in bytes and enables transmit data logging. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 102: Information table for port settings section

32.3.2.2 Port settings: serial section

In this section you can configure the serial interface settings, such as port mode, port speed, parity stip bit and so on.

Note:

- The displayed settings vary depending on options selected.
- DTR <--> DSR signalling is not available on GW600 router models.

POR1

General Serial Network

Device	/dev/ttySC0	serial device name
Portmode	rs232	serial interface mode
Speed (bps)	9600	asynchronous baud rate
Word size	8	serial device word size in bits
Parity	none	serial device parity in bits
Stop bits	1	serial device number of stop bits
Flow Control	NONE	serial device flow control type
RS485 termination	<input type="checkbox"/>	enable RS485 line termination
Auto RTS Invert	<input type="checkbox"/>	Invert RTS in auto-RTS mode
Keep serial port always open	<input type="checkbox"/>	keep serial port always activated
RS232 Half Duplex	<input type="checkbox"/>	enable RS232 half duplex mode for interfacing to external V.23 modem
RTS timeout	30	RS232 half duplex mode RTS timeout in milliseconds
POST RTS timeout	30	RS232 half duplex mode Post RTS timeout in milliseconds
Atmel USB serial card	<input type="checkbox"/>	enable support for Atmel USB serial card
Dual X.21 card bit reverse	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Dual X.21 card DTE TT Invert	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Dual X.21 card DCE TCLK Invert	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Dual X.21 card DCE RCLK Invert	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Dual X.21 card CLK Invert	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Dual X.21 card RX data delay	0	

Figure 156: The serial section fields (portmode RS232 and usb serial disabled)

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description											
Web: Device UCI: tservd.@port[0].devName Opt: devName	Serial device name. <table border="1"> <tr><td>/dev/ttySC0</td><td>serial port 1</td></tr> <tr><td>/dev/ttySC1</td><td>serial port 2</td></tr> <tr><td>/dev/ttySC2</td><td>serial port 3</td></tr> <tr><td>/dev/ttySC3</td><td>serial port 4</td></tr> </table>		/dev/ttySC0	serial port 1	/dev/ttySC1	serial port 2	/dev/ttySC2	serial port 3	/dev/ttySC3	serial port 4		
/dev/ttySC0	serial port 1											
/dev/ttySC1	serial port 2											
/dev/ttySC2	serial port 3											
/dev/ttySC3	serial port 4											
Web: Port mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].port_mode Opt: port_mode	Sets the serial interface mode. <table border="1"> <tr><td>rs232</td><td>RS232 mode</td></tr> <tr><td>rs485hdx</td><td>RS485 2 wire half duplex mode in which transmitter drives RTS.</td></tr> <tr><td>rs485fdx</td><td>Rs485 4 wire full duplex mode.</td></tr> <tr><td>v23</td><td>Uses V.23 leased line card driver.</td></tr> <tr><td>x21</td><td>Uses USB serial card in sync mode.</td></tr> </table>		rs232	RS232 mode	rs485hdx	RS485 2 wire half duplex mode in which transmitter drives RTS.	rs485fdx	Rs485 4 wire full duplex mode.	v23	Uses V.23 leased line card driver.	x21	Uses USB serial card in sync mode.
rs232	RS232 mode											
rs485hdx	RS485 2 wire half duplex mode in which transmitter drives RTS.											
rs485fdx	Rs485 4 wire full duplex mode.											
v23	Uses V.23 leased line card driver.											
x21	Uses USB serial card in sync mode.											
Web: Speed (bps) UCI: tservd.@port[0].speed Opt: speed	Serial device speed in baud (bps). <table border="1"> <tr><td>9600</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>115200; 57600; 38400; 19200; 9600 4800; 2400; 1800; 1200; 600; 300; 200; 150; 134; 110; 75; 50</td></tr> </table>		9600		Range	115200; 57600; 38400; 19200; 9600 4800; 2400; 1800; 1200; 600; 300; 200; 150; 134; 110; 75; 50						
9600												
Range	115200; 57600; 38400; 19200; 9600 4800; 2400; 1800; 1200; 600; 300; 200; 150; 134; 110; 75; 50											
Web: Word size UCI: tservd.@port[0].wsize Opt: wsize	Serial device word size. <table border="1"> <tr><td>8</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>5-8</td></tr> </table>		8		Range	5-8						
8												
Range	5-8											
Web: Parity UCI: tservd.@port[0].parity Opt: parity	Serial device parity. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Even</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>Odd</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>Space</td></tr> </table>		0	None	1	Even	2	Odd	3	Space		
0	None											
1	Even											
2	Odd											
3	Space											
Web: Stop Bits UCI: tservd.@port[0].stops Opt: stops	Serial device number of stop bits. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>1-2</td></tr> </table>		1		Range	1-2						
1												
Range	1-2											
Web: Flow Control UCI: tservd.@port[0].fc_mode Opt: fc_mode	Serial flow control mode. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>RTS/CTS</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>XON/XOFF</td></tr> </table>		0	None	1	RTS/CTS	2	XON/XOFF				
0	None											
1	RTS/CTS											
2	XON/XOFF											
Web: RS485 Termination UCI: tservd.@port[0].rs485_line_termination Opt: rs485_line_termination	Enables or disable RS485 termination. Applies only if port mode is set to RS485. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>		0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.											
1	Enabled.											
Web: Auto RTS Invert UCI: tservd.@port[0].rtsinvert Opt: rtsinvert	Invert RTS in auto-RTS mode, if portmode is set to RS485. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>		0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.											
1	Enabled.											
Web: Keep Serial Port Always Open UCI: tservd.@port[0].tty_always_open Opt: tty_always_open	Keep serial port always open. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>		0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.											
1	Enabled.											
Web: RS232 Half Duplex UCI: tservd.@port[0].hd_mode Opt: hd_mode	Defines whether to enable special mode in the asynchronous serial driver for communication to an externally connected V.23 half-duplex modem. Note: this setting does not enable half-duplex mode in the serial hardware of the router. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Full duplex mode.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Half duplex mode.</td></tr> </table>		0	Full duplex mode.	1	Half duplex mode.						
0	Full duplex mode.											
1	Half duplex mode.											

Web: RTS Timeout UCI: tservd.@port[0].rts_timeout Opt: rts_timeout	In RS232 half-duplex mode, time in milliseconds between raising RTS and enabling the transmitter. For use with externally connected V.23 modem. <table border="1"> <tr><td>30</td><td>30ms</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	30	30ms	Range	
30	30ms				
Range					
Web: POST RTS Timeout UCI: tservd.@port[0].post_rts_timeout Opt: post_rts_timeout	In RS232 half duplex mode, time in milliseconds between dropping RTS (transmission finished) and enabling the receiver. For use with externally connected V.23 modem. <table border="1"> <tr><td>20</td><td>20 ms</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	20	20 ms	Range	
20	20 ms				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_tx_gain Opt: v23_tx_gain	Defines the transmit gain for v23 mode. <table border="1"> <tr><td>2</td><td>Transmit samples multiplied by 2</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	2	Transmit samples multiplied by 2	Range	
2	Transmit samples multiplied by 2				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_rx_loss Opt: v23_rx_loss	Defines the receive loss for v23 mode. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Receive samples divided by 1.</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	1	Receive samples divided by 1.	Range	
1	Receive samples divided by 1.				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_rts_to_cts_delay Opt: v23_rts_to_cts_delay	Defines the v23 modem RTS to CTS delay in milliseconds. <table border="1"> <tr><td>20</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	20		Range	
20					
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_is_four_wire Opt: v23_is_four_wire	Defines the V23 modem LIM operation. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>2-wire</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>4-wire</td></tr> </table>	0	2-wire	1	4-wire
0	2-wire				
1	4-wire				
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_tx_timeout Opt: v23_tx_timeout	Defines the V23 modem receive echo suppression timeout in milliseconds. <table border="1"> <tr><td>20</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	20		Range	
20					
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_tx_rampdown Opt: v23_tx_rampdown	Defines the time in milliseconds it takes the V23 transmitter to rampdown carrier from peak to zero. <table border="1"> <tr><td>30</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	30		Range	
30					
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_tx_maxfill Opt: v23_tx_maxfill	Defines the maximum transmit queue fill level in bytes. <table border="1"> <tr><td>127</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 255</td></tr> </table>	127		Range	0 - 255
127					
Range	0 - 255				
Web: Atmel USB serial card UCI: tservd.@port[0].is_usb_serial Opt: is_usb_serial	This configures the use of tservd with the Atmel USB serial card. If portmode is X21 then it is used in synchronous mode. If port mode is RS232 it is used in asynchronous mode. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Synchronous mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync mode Opt: sync mode	Defines synchronous frame mode. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>hdlc</td><td>HDLC frame mode.</td></tr> <tr><td>transp</td><td>Transparent mode.</td></tr> </table>	hdlc	HDLC frame mode.	transp	Transparent mode.
hdlc	HDLC frame mode.				
transp	Transparent mode.				
Web: Use CRC32 UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_crc32 Opt: sync_crc32	Defines whether to use CRC32 or CRC16 in HDLC mode. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Use CRC16.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Use CRC32.</td></tr> </table>	0	Use CRC16.	1	Use CRC32.
0	Use CRC16.				
1	Use CRC32.				

Web: DTR control mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].dtr_control_mode Opt: dtr_control_mode	Defines DTR line control modes. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled and port mode is X21. <table border="1"> <tr><td>auto</td><td>DTR set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.</td></tr> <tr><td>on</td><td>DTR always on.</td></tr> <tr><td>off</td><td>DTR always off.</td></tr> <tr><td>app</td><td>DTR controlled by the application</td></tr> <tr><td>ontx</td><td>In HDLC mode DTR is on during frame transmission.</td></tr> </table>	auto	DTR set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.	on	DTR always on.	off	DTR always off.	app	DTR controlled by the application	ontx	In HDLC mode DTR is on during frame transmission.
auto	DTR set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.										
on	DTR always on.										
off	DTR always off.										
app	DTR controlled by the application										
ontx	In HDLC mode DTR is on during frame transmission.										
Web: RTS control mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].rts_control_mode Opt: rts_control_mode	Defines RTS line control modes. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled and port mode is X21. <table border="1"> <tr><td>auto</td><td>RTS set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.</td></tr> <tr><td>on</td><td>RTS always on.</td></tr> <tr><td>off</td><td>RTS always off.</td></tr> <tr><td>app</td><td>RTS controlled by the application.</td></tr> <tr><td>ontx</td><td>In HDLC mode RTS is on during frame transmission.</td></tr> </table>	auto	RTS set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.	on	RTS always on.	off	RTS always off.	app	RTS controlled by the application.	ontx	In HDLC mode RTS is on during frame transmission.
auto	RTS set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.										
on	RTS always on.										
off	RTS always off.										
app	RTS controlled by the application.										
ontx	In HDLC mode RTS is on during frame transmission.										
Web: Synchronous rate UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_speed Opt: sync_speed	Defines the synchronous speed in bps. Set to 0 for external clock. If not set to 0 an internal clock is used. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>64000</td><td>64 kbps</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>2048000; 1024000; 768000; 512000; 384000; 256000; 128000; 19200; 9600</td></tr> </table>	64000	64 kbps	Range	2048000; 1024000; 768000; 512000; 384000; 256000; 128000; 19200; 9600						
64000	64 kbps										
Range	2048000; 1024000; 768000; 512000; 384000; 256000; 128000; 19200; 9600										
Web: Invert receive clock UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_invert_rxclk Opt: sync_invert_rxclk	Defines receive clock inversion. Normal clock data is sampled on falling edge. Inverted clock data is sampled on rising edge. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Invert</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal	1	Invert						
0	Normal										
1	Invert										
Web: Invert transmit clock UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_invert_txclk Opt: sync_invert_txclk	Defines transmit clock inversion. Normal clock data transmitted on falling edge. Inverted clock data transmitted on rising edge. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Invert</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal	1	Invert						
0	Normal										
1	Invert										
Web: RX MSBF UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_rx_msbf Opt: sync_rx_msbf	Defines whether most significant bit is received first. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Receive least significant bit first.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Receive most significant bit first.</td></tr> </table>	0	Receive least significant bit first.	1	Receive most significant bit first.						
0	Receive least significant bit first.										
1	Receive most significant bit first.										
Web: TX MSBF UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_tx_msbf Opt: sync_tx_msbf	Defines whether most significant bit is transmitted first. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Transmit least significant bit first.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Transmit most significant bit first.</td></tr> </table>	0	Transmit least significant bit first.	1	Transmit most significant bit first.						
0	Transmit least significant bit first.										
1	Transmit most significant bit first.										
Web: RX data delay UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_rxdata_dly Opt: sync_rxdata_dly	Defines the number of bit positions to delay sampling data from the detecting clock edge. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range							
0											
Range											
Web: TX data delay UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_txdata_dly Opt: sync_txdata_dly	Defines the number of bit positions to delay output of data from the detecting clock edge. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range							
0											
Range											
Web: Dual X.21 card bit reverse UCI: tservd.@port[0].bit_reverse Opt: bit_reverse	Enables bit reversal of all bits in 8 byte word during transmission. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Reverse.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Reverse.						
0	Normal.										
1	Reverse.										

Web: Dual X.21 card DTE TT Invert UCI: tservd.@port[0].dte_tt_inv Opt: dte_tt_inv	Enables X.21 TT clock signal inversion. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Invert.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Invert.				
0	Normal.								
1	Invert.								
Web: Dual X.21 card DCE TCLK Invert UCI: tservd.@port[0].dce_tclk_inv Opt: dce_tclk_inv	Enables X.21 DCE TCLK signal inversion. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Invert.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Invert.				
0	Normal.								
1	Invert.								
Web: Dual X.21 card DCE RCLK Invert UCI: tservd.@port[0].dce_rclk_inv Opt: dce_rclk_inv	Enables X.21 DCE RCLK signal inversion. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Invert.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Invert.				
0	Normal.								
1	Invert.								
Web: Dual X.21 card CLK Invert UCI: tservd.@port[0].x21_clk_invert Opt: x21_clk_invert	Enables X.21 DCE CLK signal inversion. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Invert.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Invert.				
0	Normal.								
1	Invert.								
Web: Dual X.21 card RX data delay UCI: tservd.@port[0] x21_data_delay Opt: x21_data_delay	Sets X.21 card RX data delay in number of bit positions. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 – 7</td></tr> </table>	0		Range	0 – 7				
0									
Range	0 – 7								
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_tx_idle Opt: sync_tx_idle	Defines the value of idle character (decimal) to transmit in case of transmit underrun. In HDLC mode this configures inter-frame fill. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Transmit 0 (in HDLC mode)</td></tr> <tr><td>126</td><td>Transmit flags (in HDLC mode)</td></tr> <tr><td>255</td><td>Transmit 1 (in HDLC mode)</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 – 255</td></tr> </table>	0	Transmit 0 (in HDLC mode)	126	Transmit flags (in HDLC mode)	255	Transmit 1 (in HDLC mode)	Range	0 – 255
0	Transmit 0 (in HDLC mode)								
126	Transmit flags (in HDLC mode)								
255	Transmit 1 (in HDLC mode)								
Range	0 – 255								
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_inband_carrier_signalling Opt: v23_inband_carrier_signalling	Enables signalling of carrier by sending special characters. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_inband_carrier_on_char Opt: v23_inband_carrier_on_char	Defines the character decimal to signal remote carrier on. <table border="1"> <tr><td>255</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 255</td></tr> </table>	255		Range	0 - 255				
255									
Range	0 - 255								

Table 103: Information table for port settings serial section

32.3.2.3 Port settings: network section

In this section you can configure the network side of the Terminal Server. Note: the displayed settings vary depending on options selected.

POR1

General Serial Network

Transport mode: TCP (Network transport protocol)

Local IP: 0.0.0.0 (Local IP interface to use)

TCP mode: Server (TCP mode)

TCP listen port: 999 (TCP listening port)

Remote IP 1: 0.0.0.0 (remote peer IP address (primary))

Remote IP 2: 0.0.0.0 (remote peer IP address (failover))

Enable TCP keepalives: (enable TCP keepalives)

TCP Keepalive interval: 5 (TCP Keepalive send interval (seconds))

TCP Keepalive timeout: 2 (TCP Keepalive timeout (seconds))

TCP Keepalive count: 1 (TCP Keepalive maximum probe count)

TCP User timeout: 20000 (TCP close maximum wait ack time (milliseconds))

TCP nodelay: (disable TCP Nagle algorithm)

TCP always on: (keep TCP always connected)

Close TCP on DSR: (close TCP session on detection of DSR signal low)

Reconnect time (ms): 5000 (time in milliseconds to start re-connecting after setting DTR low)

Figure 157: The port settings network fields (TCP server mode)

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Transport Mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].udpMode Opt: udpMode	Selects the transport mode.	
	0	TCP
	1	UDP
Web: Local IP UCI: tservd.@port[0].local_ip Opt: local_ip	Local IP address to listen on. 0.0.0.0: Listen on any interface. Range: IPv4 address.	
Web: TCP Mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].server_mode Opt: server_mode	Select between server and client modes of TCP. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. 0: Client Mode. 1: Server Mode.	
Web: TCP Listen Port UCI: tservd.@port[0].listen_port Opt: listen_port	TCP listen port for server mode. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP and server mode is enabled. 999 Range: 1 - 65535	
Web: Remote TCP Port 1 UCI: tservd.@port[0].ip_port1 Opt: ip_port1	Destination peer port IP 1 number. Only displayed if client mode enabled. 951 Range: 1 - 65535	
Web: Remote TCP Port 2 UCI: tservd.@port[0].ip_port2 Opt: ip_port2	Destination peer port IP 2 number for failover. Only displayed if client mode enabled. 951 Range: 1 - 65535	
Web: Remote IP 1 UCI: tservd.@port[0].remote_ip1 Opt: remote_ip1	Destination peer IP 1 address. 0.0.0.0 Range: IPv4 address	

Web: Remote IP 2 UCI: tservd.@port[0].remote_ip2 Opt: remote_ip2	Destination peer IP 2 address. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table border="1"><tr><td>0.0.0.0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>IPv4 address</td></tr></table>	0.0.0.0		Range	IPv4 address
0.0.0.0					
Range	IPv4 address				
Web: Enable TCP Keepalives UCI: tservd.@port[0].tcp_keepalives_enabled Opt: tcp_keepalives_enabled	Enable or disables TCP keepalives. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: TCP Keepalive Interval UCI: tservd.@port[0].tcp_keepalive_interval Opt: tcp_keepalive_interval	Interval in seconds between TCP keepalive probes. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table border="1"><tr><td>5</td><td>5 seconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr></table>	5	5 seconds	Range	0-65535
5	5 seconds				
Range	0-65535				
Web: TCP Keepalive Timeout UCI: tservd.@port[0].tcp_keepalive_timeout Opt: tcp_keepalive_timeout	Time in seconds to wait for response to a TCP keepalive probe. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table border="1"><tr><td>2</td><td>2 seconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr></table>	2	2 seconds	Range	0-65535
2	2 seconds				
Range	0-65535				
Web: TCP Keepalive Count UCI: tservd.@port[0].tcp_keepalive_count Opt: tcp_keepalive_count	Number of TCP keepalive probes to send before connection is closed. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr></table>	1		Range	0-65535
1					
Range	0-65535				
Web: TCP User Timeout UCI: tservd.@port[0].tcp_user_timeout Opt: tcp_user_timeout	Maximum time in milliseconds for TCP to wait for transmitted data to be acked before closing connection in established state. Set to 0 to use kernel defaults. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table border="1"><tr><td>20000</td><td>20 seconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr></table>	20000	20 seconds	Range	0-65535
20000	20 seconds				
Range	0-65535				
Web: TCP Nodelay UCI: tservd.@port[0].tcp_nodelay Opt: tcp_nodelay	Sets TCP to delay behaviour. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Normal operation.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Disable TCP Nagle algorithm. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP.</td></tr></table>	0	Normal operation.	1	Disable TCP Nagle algorithm. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP.
0	Normal operation.				
1	Disable TCP Nagle algorithm. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP.				
Web: TCP Always on UCI: tservd.@port[0].tcp_always_on Opt: tcp_always_on	Keep TCP session always connected. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP and client mode is enabled. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Close TCP on DSR UCI: tservd.@port[0].close_tcp_on_dsr Opt: close_tcp_on_dsr	Close TCP session on detection of DSR signal low. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP and client mode is enabled. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Reconnect Time (ms) UCI: tservd.@port[0].disc_time_ms Opt: disc_time_ms	Time in milliseconds to start reconnecting after setting DTR low. <table border="1"><tr><td>5000</td><td>5 seconds.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0 – 10000</td></tr></table>	5000	5 seconds.	Range	0 – 10000
5000	5 seconds.				
Range	0 – 10000				
Web: UDP Keepalive Interval UCI: tservd.@port[0].udpKaIntervalMs Opt: udpKaIntervalMs	Defines time in milliseconds to send UDP keepalives (empty UDP packets) when no data to send. Only displayed if transport mode is UDP. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	Range	0-65535
0	Disabled.				
Range	0-65535				
Web: UDP Keepalive Count UCI: tservd.@port[0].udpKaCount Opt: udpKaCount	Defines the maximum number of remote UDP keepalive not received before UDP stream is considered broken. Only displayed if transport mode is UDP. <table border="1"><tr><td>3</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr></table>	3		Range	0-65535
3					
Range	0-65535				

Web: local UDP Port UCI: tservd.@port[0].udpLocalPort Opt: udpLocalPort	Local UDP port used by terminal server. Only displayed if transport mode is UDP. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					
Web: remote UDP Port UCI: tservd.@port[0].udpRemotePort Opt: udpRemotePort	Remote UDP port used by terminal server. Only displayed if transport mode is UDP. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr></table>	0		Range	0-65535
0					
Range	0-65535				

Table 104: Information table for port settings network section

32.4 Terminal Server using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show tservd
tservd.main=tservd
tservd.main.log_severity=0
tservd.main.debug_rx_tx_enable=1
tservd.main.debug_ev_enable=1
tservd.@port[0]=port
tservd.@port[0].devName=/dev/ttysC0
tservd.@port[0].remote_ip1=0.0.0.0
tservd.@port[0].remote_ip2=0.0.0.0
```

32.5 Terminal Server using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export tservd
package tservd

config tservd 'main'
    option log_severity '0'
    option debug_rx_tx_enable '1'
    option debug_ev_enable '1'

config port
    option devName '/dev/ttysC0'
    option remote_ip1 '0.0.0.0'
    option remote_ip2 '0.0.0.0'
```

32.6 Terminal Server diagnostics

The tservd process has to be running otherwise diagnostics options for terminal server will not be available.

32.6.1 Checking Terminal Server process

To check if Terminal Server is running, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# ps | grep tservd
1264 root      1032 S  tservd
1769 root      1496 S  grep tservd
```

If Terminal Server is running it will be shown with its process ID.

32.6.2 Terminal Server statistics

To see the terminal server statistics, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# tserv show stats
TERMINAL 1, Dev: /dev/ttysC0
State:          LISTENING
Serial Bytes    Rx (0)   Tx (0)   TxErrs (0)
TCP Packets     Rx (0)   Tx (0)   TxErrs (0)       TxBlocked (0)
TCP Bytes       Rx (0)   Tx (0)
UDP Datagrams   Rx (0)   Tx (0)   TxErrs (0)
UDP Bytes       Rx (0)   Tx (0)
DSR             Up (0)   Down (0)
```

32.6.3 Terminal Server debug statistics

To see debug statistics about the terminal server, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# tserv show debug all
TERMINAL 1, Dev: /dev/ttysC0
State:          LISTENING
netRxBuf length=0 offset=0 hdrsz=0
ttyRxBuf length=0 offset=16 hdrsz=16
line_status_mask = 0x0 line_status = 0x0
RFC2217 negotiated=0
Tcp tx last error: 0
```

32.6.4 Terminal Server advanced debugging

To see advanced debug commands for the terminal server, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# tserv
==== Termserv diagnostics. Command syntax: ===
```

```
tserv show stats - show statistics
tserv clear stats - clear statistics
tserv show serial - show serial interface status
tserv send serial0 <data>- send data to serial port 0
tserv start capture N, N=port number (0 to 3) - start capturing rx serial
data
tserv print capture N, N=port number (0 to 3) - print captured rx serial
data
tserv show serial txlog-hex <Port> [length], Port=port cfg index (0 to 3),
length=length to show
tserv show serial rxlog-hex <Port> [length], Port=port cfg index (0 to 3),
length=length to show
tserv show serial txlog-asc <Port> [length], Port=port cfg index (0 to 3),
length=length to show
tserv show serial rxlog-asc <Port> [length], Port=port cfg index (0 to 3),
length=length to show
tserv show debug - show debug info
tserv show userial stats - show USB serial card statistics
tserv clear userial stats - clear USB serial card statistics
tserv start userial rxlog - start USB serial card rx log
tserv show userial rxlog <offs> <length> - show USB serial card rx log
tserv show userial version - show USB serial card firmware version
tserv show userial cpld status - show USB serial card CPLD programming
status
tserv upgrade userial - initiate upgrade of the USB serial card
tserv quit - terminate termserv process
```


33 Configuring VRF-lite

33.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
vrf	vrf <vrf name1> vrf <vrf name2> vrf <vrf name3>

33.2 VRF (Virtual Routing and Forwarding) overview

VRF-lite allows 'splitting' the router into several segments, each having its own configuration and independent access. You can create multiple VRF instances on the router at the same time. However, there is a limitation of one physical interface per VRF instance. When VRF is enabled in the main configuration, separate instances of relevant configuration files for a given VRF will be created.

33.3 Configuring VRF using UCI

You configure VRF using UCI. The configuration file is stored on:

/etc/config/vrf

VRF instances can be defined and enabled in a general VRF config. A sample VRF configuration is shown below:

```
package vrf

config vrf customer1
    option enabled 'yes'

config vrf customer2
    option enabled 'yes'

config vrf customer3
    option enabled 'yes'
```

VRF names will be configured as sections of VRF configuration file as shown in the example above: customer1, customer2 and customer3.

When VRF is enabled, config packages called `vrf_<vrf name>_<config name>` are extracted to a separate location and the VRF process is started, for example, `vrf_customer1_network`, `vrf_customer1_strongswan`

0:

Configuring VRF-lite

UCI/Package Option	Description
UCI: vrf.customer1=vrf Opt: customer1	Specifies the name for VRF instance.
UCI: vrf.customer1.enabled=yes Opt: enabled	Enables VRF instance.
UCI: vrf.customer2=vrf Opt: customer3	Specifies the name for VRF instance.
UCI: vrf.customer2.enabled=yes Opt: enabled	Enables VRF instance.
UCI: vrf.customer3=vrf Opt: customer3	Specifies the name for VRF instance.
UCI: vrf.customer3.enabled=yes Opt: enabled	Enables VRF instance.

To establish a network communication between different VRF instances, you have to create a network interface with option proto set to virtual, in master config. It will create two connected virtual interfaces named `veX-0` and `veX-1` (where X is the sequence number). `veX-1` can be then used in a VRF-specific network config as usual static interface.

34 Event system

Satel routers feature an event system. It allows you to forward router events to predefined targets for efficient control and management of devices.

This chapter explains how the event system works and how to configure it using UCI commands.

34.1 Configuration package used

Package	Section
va_eventd	main
	forwarding
	target
	conn_tester

34.2 Implementation of the event system

The event system is implemented by the va_eventd application.

The va_eventd application defines three types of object:

Forwardings	Rules that define what kind of events should be generated. For example, you might want an event to be created when an IPSec tunnel comes up or down.
Targets	Define the targets to send the event to. The event may be sent to a target via a syslog message, a snmp trap or email.
Connection testers	Define methods to test the target is reachable. IP connectivity to a server and link state may be checked prior to sending events.

For example, if you want to configure an SNMP trap to be sent when an IPSec tunnel comes up, you will need to:

- Define a forwarding rule for IPSec tunnel up events.
- Set an SNMP manager as the target.
- Optionally use a connection tester to ensure the SNMP manager is reachable.

34.3 Supported events

Events have a class, ID, name and a severity. These properties are used to fine tune which events to report.

Note: only VA events can be forwarded using the event system. A comprehensive table of events is available from the CLI by entering '**vae_cli -d**'.

34.4 Supported targets

The table below describes the targets currently supported.

Target	Description
Syslog	Event sent to syslog server.
Email	Event sent via email.
SNMP	Event sent via SNMP trap.
Exec	Command executed when event occurs.
SMS	Event sent via SMS.

Table 119: Targets currently supported

The attributes of a target vary significantly depending on its type.

34.5 Supported connection testers

The table below describes the methods to test a connection that are currently supported.

Type	Description
link	Checks if the interface used to reach the target is up.
ping	Pings the target. And then assumes there is connectivity during a configurable amount of time.

Table 120: Event system - supported connection tester methods

34.6 Configuring the event system using the web interface

Configuring the event system using the web interface is not currently supported.

34.7 Configuring the event system using UCI

The event system configuration files are stored at **/etc/config/va_eventd**

The configuration is composed of a main section and as many forwardings, targets and connection testers as required.

34.7.1 Va_eventd: main section

34.7.1.1 Main using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show va_eventd
va_eventd.main=va_eventd
va_eventd.main.enabled=yes
va_eventd.main.event_queue_file=/tmp/event_buffer
va_eventd.main.event_queue_size=128K
```

34.7.1.2 Main using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export va_eventd
package va_eventd

config va_eventd main
    option enabled '1'
    option event_queue_file '/tmp/event_buffer'
    option event_queue_size '128K'
```

34.7.1.3 Main table options

UCI/Package Option	Description	
UCI: va_eventd.main.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables the event system. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.	
UCI: va_eventd.main.event_queue_file Opt: event_queue_file	/tmp/event_buffer	File where the events will be stored before being processed. Default file is /tmp/event_buffer.
UCI: va_eventd.main.event_queue_size Opt: event_queue_size	Range	Maximum size of the event queue in bytes. Default value is 128k. 128K 128 kilobytes Range

Table 121: Information table for event settings main section

34.7.2 Va_eventd: forwarding

Forwardings are section rules that define what kind of events should be generated. Multiple forwardings can be defined and each forwarding section can be given a forwarding label for identification. For example, to define a forwarding label of Monitor using package options:

```
config forwarding 'Monitor'
```

To define a forwarding label of Monitor using UCI, enter:

```
va_eventd.Monitor=forwarding
```

In the examples below, no forwarding label has been defined.

34.7.3 Forwarding using UCI

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show va_eventd
va_eventd.@forwarding[0]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].enabled=1
```

```
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].className=ethernet
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].eventName=LinkUp
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].severity=warning-critical
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].target=syslog1
```

34.7.4 Forwarding using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export va_eventd
config forwarding
    option enabled '1'
    option className 'ethernet'
    option eventName 'LinkUp'
    option severity 'warning-critical'
    option target 'syslog1'
```

34.7.5 Forwarding table options

UCI/Package Option	Description																
UCI: va_eventd.<forwarding label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables event generation. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.												
0	Disabled.																
1	Enabled.																
UCI: va_eventd.<forwarding label>.className Opt: className	Only generate events with the given className. Available class names can be viewed using 'vae_cli -d' command. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr><td>ClassName</td></tr> <tr><td>internal</td></tr> <tr><td>mobile</td></tr> <tr><td>ethernet</td></tr> <tr><td>isdn</td></tr> <tr><td>power</td></tr> <tr><td>usage</td></tr> <tr><td>pvc</td></tr> <tr><td>l2tp</td></tr> <tr><td>auth</td></tr> <tr><td>ipsec</td></tr> <tr><td>wifi</td></tr> <tr><td>ppp</td></tr> <tr><td>adsl</td></tr> <tr><td>system</td></tr> <tr><td>ntp</td></tr> </table>	ClassName	internal	mobile	ethernet	isdn	power	usage	pvc	l2tp	auth	ipsec	wifi	ppp	adsl	system	ntp
ClassName																	
internal																	
mobile																	
ethernet																	
isdn																	
power																	
usage																	
pvc																	
l2tp																	
auth																	
ipsec																	
wifi																	
ppp																	
adsl																	
system																	
ntp																	
UCI: va_eventd.<forwarding label>.eventName Opt: eventName	Only generate events with the given className and the given eventName. The eventName is optional and can be omitted.																

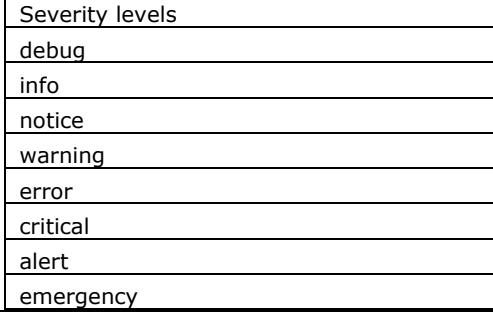
UCI: va_eventd.<forwarding label>.severity Opt: severity	Only generate events with a severity in the severity range. This is optional. Severity must be a range in the form severity1-severity2. Example: va_eventd.@forwarding[0].severity=emergency-warning 
UCI: va_eventd.<forwarding label>.target Opt: target	Target to send the event to. This parameter refers to the target name as defined in a target config section.

Table 122: Information table for event system forwarding rules

34.7.6 Va_eventd: connection testers

There are two types of connection testers:

- ping connection tester, and
- link connection tester.

Multiple connection testers can be defined and each forwarding section can be given a label for identification. For example:

To define a connection tester label of Tester1 using package options, enter:

```
config conn_tester 'Tester1'
```

To define a forwarding label of Tester1 using UCI, enter:

```
va_eventd.Tester1=conn_tester
```

In the examples below no connection tester label has been defined.

34.7.6.1 Ping connection tester

A ping connection tester tests that a connection can be established by sending pings.

If successful, the event system assumed the connection is valid for a configurable amount of time.

34.7.6.2 Ping connection tester using UCI

```
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0]=conn_tester
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].name=pinger
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].enabled=1
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].type=ping
```

```
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_dest_addr=192.168.0.1
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_source=eth0
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_success_duration_sec=60
```

34.7.6.3 Ping connection tester using package options

```
config conn_tester
    option name 'pinger'
    option enabled '1'
    option type 'ping'
    option ping_dest_addr '192.168.0.1'
    option ping_source 'eth0'
    option ping_success_duration_sec '60'
```

34.7.6.4 Ping connection tester table options

UCI/Package Option	Description				
UCI: va_eventd.<conn_tester_label>.name Opt: name	Name of this connection tester. This name is referred to by the target section.				
UCI: va_eventd.<conn_tester_label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enable this connection tester. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
UCI: va_eventd.<conn_tester_label>.type Opt: type	Set to ping for a ping connection tester. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>ping</td><td>Ping connection tester.</td></tr> <tr> <td>link</td><td>Link connection tester.</td></tr> </table>	ping	Ping connection tester.	link	Link connection tester.
ping	Ping connection tester.				
link	Link connection tester.				
UCI: va_eventd.<conn_tester_label>.ping_dest_addr Opt: ping_dest_addr	IP Address to ping.				
UCI: va_eventd.<conn_tester_label>.ping_source Opt: ping_source	Source IP Address of the pings. This is optional. It can also be an interface name.				
UCI: va_eventd.<conn_tester_label>.ping_success_duration_sec Opt: ping_success_duration_sec	Defines the time in seconds the target is considered up for after a successful ping.				

Table 123: Information table for ping connection tester settings

34.7.6.5 Link connection tester

A link connection tester tests a connection by checking the status of the interface being used.

34.7.6.6 Link connection tester using UCI

```
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0]=conn_tester
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].name=linktest
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].enabled=1
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].type=link
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].link_iface=eth0
```

```
Link connection tester using package options

config conn_tester
    option name 'linktest'
    option enabled '1'
    option type 'link'
    option link_iface 'eth0'
```

34.7.6.7 Link connection tester table options

UCI/Package Option	Description				
UCI: va_eventd.<conn_tester label>.name Opt: name	Name of this connection tester. This name is referred to by the target section.				
UCI: va_eventd.<conn_tester label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enable this connection tester. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
UCI: va_eventd.<conn_tester label>.type Opt: type	Set to 'link' for a link connection tester. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>ping</td><td>Ping connection tester.</td></tr> <tr> <td>link</td><td>Link connection tester.</td></tr> </table>	ping	Ping connection tester.	link	Link connection tester.
ping	Ping connection tester.				
link	Link connection tester.				
UCI: va_eventd.<conn_tester label>.link_iface Opt: link_iface	Interface name to check.				

Table 124: Information table for link connection tester settings

34.7.7 Supported targets

There are four possible targets:

- Syslog target
- Email target
- SNMP target
- Exec target
- SMS target

Multiple targets can be defined and each target can be given a label for identification. For example:

To define a connection tester label of Target1 using package options, enter:

```
config target 'Target1'
```

To define a target label of Target1 using UCI, enter:

```
va_eventd.Target1=target
```

34.7.7.1 Syslog target

When a syslog target receives an event, it sends it to the configured syslog server. In the examples below no target label has been defined.

34.7.7.2 Syslog target using UCI

```
va_eventd.@target[0]=target
va_eventd.@target[0].name=syslog1
va_eventd.@target[0].enabled=1
va_eventd.@target[0].type=syslog
va_eventd.target[0].tcp_syslog=0
va_eventd.@target[0].addr=192.168.0.1:514
va_eventd.@target[0].conn_tester=pinger
va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_version=3
```

34.7.7.3 Syslog target using package options

```
config target
    option name syslog
    option enabled '1'
    option type 'syslog'
    option tcp_syslog '0'
    option target_addr '192.168.0.1:514'
    option conn_tester 'pinger'
    option snmp_version '3'
```

34.7.7.4 Syslog target table options

UCI/Package Option	Description										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.name Opt: name	Name of the target. This is to be used in the forwarding section.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enable this target. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.type Opt: type	Must be 'syslog' for a syslog target. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>Syslog</td><td>Syslog target.</td></tr> <tr> <td>email</td><td>Email target.</td></tr> <tr> <td>snmptrap</td><td>SNMP target.</td></tr> <tr> <td>exec</td><td>Exec target.</td></tr> <tr> <td>sms</td><td>SMS target.</td></tr> </table>	Syslog	Syslog target.	email	Email target.	snmptrap	SNMP target.	exec	Exec target.	sms	SMS target.
Syslog	Syslog target.										
email	Email target.										
snmptrap	SNMP target.										
exec	Exec target.										
sms	SMS target.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.tcp_syslog Opt: tcp_syslog	Defines whether to use TCP for delivery of syslog messages. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.target_addr Opt: target_addr	IP address or FQDN and port number to send the syslog message to. If no port is given, 514 is assumed. Format: x.x.x.x:port or FQDN:port.										

UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.conn_tester Opt: conn_tester	Name of the connection tester to use for this target.						
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.snmp_version Opt: snmp_version	Ability to change snmp version. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Version1</td></tr> <tr> <td>2c</td><td>Version 2c</td></tr> <tr> <td>3</td><td>Version 3</td></tr> </table>	1	Version1	2c	Version 2c	3	Version 3
1	Version1						
2c	Version 2c						
3	Version 3						

Table 125: Information table for syslog target settings

34.7.7.5 Email target

When an email target receives an event, it sends it to the configured email address.

34.7.7.6 Email target using UCI

```

va_eventd.@target[0]=target
va_eventd.@target[0].name=email1
va_eventd.@target[0].enabled=1
va_eventd.@target[0].type=email
va_eventd.@target[0].smtp_addr=smtp.site.com:587
va_eventd.@target[0].smtp_user=john_smith@site.com
va_eventd.@target[0].smtp_password=secret word
va_eventd.@target[0].use_tls=0
va_eventd.@target[0].tls_starttls=0
va_eventd.@target[0].tls_forcessl3=0
va_eventd.@target[0].timeout_sec=10
va_eventd.@target[0].from=x@example.com
va_eventd.@target[0].to=y@example.com
va_eventd.@target[0].subject_template=%{serial} %{severityName} %{eventName}
}!!!
va_eventd.@target[0].body_template=%{eventName} (%{class}.%{subclass})
happened!
va_eventd.@target[0].conn_tester=pinger

```

34.7.7.7 Email target using package options

```

config target
    option name email1
    option enabled 1
    option type email
    option smtp_addr "smtp.site.com:587"
    option smtp_user 'john_smith@site.com'
    option smtp_password 'secret word'
    option use_tls '0'

```

```

option tls_starttls '0'
option tls_forcessl3 '0'
option timeout_sec "10"
option from x@example.com
option to y@example.com
option subject_template "%{serial} %{severityName} %{eventName}!!!"
option body_template "%{eventName} (%{class}.%{subclass}) happened!"

```

34.7.7.8 Option conn_tester 'pinger'email target table options

UCI/Package Option	Description											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.name Opt: name	Name of the target to be used in the forwarding section.											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enable this target. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>		0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.											
1	Enabled.											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.type Opt: type	Must be 'email' for a syslog target. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>syslog</td> <td>Syslog target.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>email</td> <td>Email target.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>snmptrap</td> <td>SNMP target.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>exec</td> <td>Exec target.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>sms</td> <td>SMS target.</td> </tr> </table>		syslog	Syslog target.	email	Email target.	snmptrap	SNMP target.	exec	Exec target.	sms	SMS target.
syslog	Syslog target.											
email	Email target.											
snmptrap	SNMP target.											
exec	Exec target.											
sms	SMS target.											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.smtp_addr Opt: smtp_addr	IP address or FQDN and port of the SMTP server to use. Format: x.x.x.x:port or fqdn:port											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.smtp_user Opt: smtp_user	Username for smtp authentication.											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.smtp_password Opt: smtp_password	Password for smtp authentication.											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.use_tls Opt: use_tis	Enable TLS (Transport Layer Security) support. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>		0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.											
1	Enabled.											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.tls_starttls Opt: tis_starttis	Enable StartTLS support. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>		0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.											
1	Enabled.											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.tls_forcessl3 Opt: tis_forcessl3	Force SSLv3 for TLS. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>		0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.											
1	Enabled.											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.timeout_sec Opt: timeout_sec	Email send timeout in seconds. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>10</td> <td>10 seconds</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>		10	10 seconds	Range							
10	10 seconds											
Range												
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.from Opt: from	Source email address.											
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.to Opt: to	Destination email address.											

UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.subject_template Opt: subject_template	Template to use for the email subject. Supported parameters: Serial number: %{serial}; Severity: %{severityName}; Event Name: %{eventName}. Example: option subject_template '%{serial} %{severityName} %{eventName}!'
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.body_template Opt: body_template	Template to use for the email body.
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.conn_tester Opt: conn_tester	Name of the connection tester to use for this target.

Table 126: Information table for email target settings

34.7.8 SNMP target

When a SNMP target receives an event, it sends it in a trap to the configured SNMP manager.

34.7.8.1 SNMP target using UCI

```
va_eventd.@target[0]=target
va_eventd.@target[0].name=snmp1
va_eventd.@target[0].enabled=1
va_eventd.@target[0].type=snmptrap
va_eventd.@target[0].target_addr=192.168.0.1
va_eventd.@target[0].agent_addr=192.168.0.4
va_eventd.@target[0].conn_tester=pinger
```

34.7.8.2 SNMP target using package options

```
config target
    option name 'snmp1'
    option enabled '1'
    option type 'snmptrap'
    option community 'public'
    option target_addr '192.168.0.1'
    option agent_addr '192.168.0.4'
    option conn_tester 'pinger'
```

34.7.8.3 SNMP target table options

UCI/Package Option	Description				
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.name Opt: name	Name of the target to be used in the forwarding section.				
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enable this target. <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.type Opt: type	Must be snmptrap for a snmp target. <table border="1"> <tr><td>syslog</td><td>Syslog target.</td></tr> <tr><td>email</td><td>Email target.</td></tr> <tr><td>snmptrap</td><td>SNMP target.</td></tr> <tr><td>exec</td><td>Exec target.</td></tr> <tr><td>sms</td><td>SMS target.</td></tr> </table>	syslog	Syslog target.	email	Email target.	snmptrap	SNMP target.	exec	Exec target.	sms	SMS target.
syslog	Syslog target.										
email	Email target.										
snmptrap	SNMP target.										
exec	Exec target.										
sms	SMS target.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.community Opt: community	Community name to use to send the trap.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.target_addr Opt: target_addr	IP address of the SNMP manager.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.agent_addr Opt: agent_addr	Optional IP address to use as the trap source IP address.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.conn_tester Opt: conn_tester	Name of the connection tester to use for this target.										

Table 127: Information table for snmp target settings

34.7.8.4 Exec target

When an exec target receives an event, it executes a shell command.

34.7.8.5 Exec target using UCI

```

va_eventd.@target[0]=target
va_eventd.@target[0].name=logit
va_eventd.@target[0].enabled=1
va_eventd.@target[0].type=exec
va_eventd.@target[0].cmd_template=logger -t eventer %{eventName}

```

34.7.8.6 Exec target using package options

```

config target
    option name 'logit'
    option enabled '1'
    option type 'exec'
    option cmd_template "logger -t eventer %{eventName}"

```

34.7.8.7 Exec target table options

UCI/Package Option	Description				
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.name Opt: name	Name of the target to be used in the forwarding section.				
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enable this target. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.type Opt: type	Must be exec for an exec target. <table border="1"> <tr><td>syslog</td><td>Syslog target.</td></tr> <tr><td>email</td><td>Email target.</td></tr> <tr><td>snmptrap</td><td>SNMP target.</td></tr> <tr><td>exec</td><td>Exec target.</td></tr> <tr><td>sms</td><td>SMS target.</td></tr> </table>	syslog	Syslog target.	email	Email target.	snmptrap	SNMP target.	exec	Exec target.	sms	SMS target.
syslog	Syslog target.										
email	Email target.										
snmptrap	SNMP target.										
exec	Exec target.										
sms	SMS target.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.cmd_template Opt: cmd_template	Template of the command to execute.										

Table 128: Information table for exec target settings

34.7.8.8 SMS target

When SMS target receives an event, it sends SMS message.

34.7.8.9 SMS target using UCI

```

va_eventd.@target[0]=target
va_eventd.@target[0].name=sms
va_eventd.@target[0].enabled=1
va_eventd.@target[0].type=sms
va_eventd.@target[0].callee=0123321123321
va_eventd.@target[0].template=%{eventName}

```

34.7.8.10 SMS target using package options

```

config target
    option name 'sms'
    option enabled '1'
    option type 'sms'
    option callee '0123321123321'
    option template '%{eventName}'

```

34.7.8.11 SMS target table options

UCI/Package Option	Description										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.name Opt: name	Name of the target to be used in the forwarding section.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enable this target. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.type Opt: type	Must be sms for an sms target. <table border="1"> <tr><td>syslog</td><td>Syslog target.</td></tr> <tr><td>email</td><td>Email target.</td></tr> <tr><td>snmptrap</td><td>SNMP target.</td></tr> <tr><td>exec</td><td>Exec target.</td></tr> <tr><td>sms</td><td>SMS target.</td></tr> </table>	syslog	Syslog target.	email	Email target.	snmptrap	SNMP target.	exec	Exec target.	sms	SMS target.
syslog	Syslog target.										
email	Email target.										
snmptrap	SNMP target.										
exec	Exec target.										
sms	SMS target.										
UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.callee Opt: callee	Defines the SMS number to send to. <table border="1"> <tr><td>blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	blank		Range							
blank											
Range											

UCI: va_eventd.<target label>.template Opt: template	Template of the command to execute. Uses template associated with that particular event, which can be listed under "vae_cli -d".
---	--

Table 143: Information table for SMS target settings

34.8 Event system diagnostics

34.8.1 Displaying VA events

To view a list of all available class names, events and severity levels, enter:

```
vae_cli -d
```

The following is an example of the output from this command:

Class	ID	Name	Severity	Specific
Template				
internal	1 EventdConfigErr		error	
%{p1} %{p2}: %{p3}	has bad value..			
internal	2 EventdConfigWarn		warning	
%{p1} %{p2}: %{p3}	has bad value..			
internal	3 EventdConfigUnknown		informat	%{p1} %{p2}:
field '%{p3}' is no..				
internal	4 EventdSystemErr		error	
%{p1} %{p2}: %{p3} %{p4} %{p5} %..				
internal	5 EventdSystemWarn		error	
%{p1} %{p2}: %{p3} %{p4} %{p5} %..				
internal	6 EventdUpAndRunning		informat	
internal	7 EventdStopped		warning	%{p1}
mobile	1 SIMIn		notice	SIM card # %{p1}
inserted				
mobile	2 SIMOut		notice	SIM card # %{p1}
removed				
mobile	3 LinkUp		notice	3g link %{p1} up
using sim # %{p2}..				
mobile	4 LinkDown		notice	3g link %{p1}
down				
mobile	5 SMSByPassword		notice	Received SMS
from %{p1} (by pass..				
mobile	6 SMSByCaller		notice	Received SMS
from %{p1} (%{p2})...				
mobile	7 SMSFromUnknown		warning	Received SMS from
unknown sender..				
mobile	8 SMSSendSuccess		informat	SMS send

```

success: %{p1}
| mobile      |  9 | SMSSendError           | warning   | SMS send
error: %{p1}
| mobile      | 10 | SMSSent                | notice    | Sent SMS
to %{p1}: %{p2}
| ethernet    |  1 | LinkUp                 | notice    | Ethernet %{p1} up
| ethernet    |  2 | LinkDown               | notice    | Ethernet %{p1}
down
| auth        |  2 | BadPasswordSSH          | warning   | SSH login attempt
from %{p2}: ba..
| auth        |  3 | BadUserConsole          | warning   | Console login
attempt on %{p1}: ..
| auth        |  4 | BadPasswordConsole       | warning   | Console login
attempt on %{p2}: ..
| auth        |  5 | BadUserTelnet           | warning   | Telnet login
attempt: bad username
| auth        |  6 | BadPasswordTelnet         | warning   | Telnet login
attempt: bad passwo..
| auth        |  7 | BadUserLuCI              | warning   | LuCI login
attempt: bad username..
| auth        |  8 | BadPasswordLuCI          | warning   | LuCI login
attempt: bad password..
| auth        |  9 | LoginSSH                | notice    | SSH login:
user %{p2} from %{p3}
| auth        | 10 | LogoffSSH               | notice    | SSH logoff:
user %{p1} due to "%..
| auth        | 11 | LoginConsole             | notice    | Console login:
user %{p1} on %{p2}
| auth        | 12 | LogoffConsole            | notice    | Console logoff
on %{p1}
| auth        | 13 | LoginTelnet              | notice    | Telnet login:
user %{p1}
| auth        | 14 | LoginLuCI                | notice    | LuCI login:
user %{p1}
| auth        | 15 | ConsoleCommand            | informat  | %{p1}@%{p2} %{p3}
| auth        | 16 | LuCIAction                | informat
| %{p1}@%{p2} %{p3} %{p4} %{p5}
| ipsec       |  6 | IPsecInitIKE             | informat  | IPsec IKE %{p1}
established
| ipsec       |  7 | IPsecInitSA              | informat  | IPsec SA %{p1}
established
| ipsec       |  8 | IPsecCloseIKE             | informat  | IPsec IKE %{p1}
deleted

```

```

| ipsec      |   9 | IPSecCloseSA           | informat | IPSec SA %{p1}
closed
| ipsec      |  10 | IPSecDPDTIMEOut        | informat | IPSec IKE %{p1}
DPD timed out
| wifi       |   1 | WiFiConnectedToAP      | notice   | WiFi %{p1}
connected to AP %{p2}
| wifi       |   1 | WiFiConnectedToAP      | notice   | WiFi %{p1}
connected to AP %{p2}
| wifi       |   2 | WiFiDisconnectedFromAP  | notice   | WiFi %{p1}
disconnected from AP
| wifi       |   2 | WiFiDisconnectedFromAP  | notice   | WiFi %{p1}
disconnected from AP
| wifi       |   3 | WiFiStationAttached     | notice   | WiFi
station %{p2} connected to ..
| wifi       |   3 | WiFiStationAttached     | notice   | WiFi
station %{p2} connected to ..
| wifi       |   4 | WiFiStationDetached    | notice   | WiFi
station %{p2} disconnected ..
| wifi       |   4 | WiFiStationDetached    | notice   | WiFi
station %{p2} disconnected ..
| wifi       |   5 | WiFiStationAttachFailed | notice   | WiFi
station %{p2} failed to con..
| wifi       |   5 | WiFiStationAttachFailed | notice   | WiFi
station %{p2} failed to con..
| ppp        |   1 | LinkUp                 | informat | PPP for
interface %{p2} (proto..
| ppp        |   2 | LinkDown                | informat | PPP for
interface %{p2} (proto..
| ppp        |   3 | ConnEstablished        | informat | PPP connection
for interface %{p..
| adsl       |   1 | LinkUp                 | notice   | ADSL trained.
Starting interface..
| adsl       |   2 | LinkDown                | notice   | ADSL down.
Stopping interface %..
| adsl       |   3 | Silent                  | debug    | ADSL silent
| adsl       |   4 | Training                 | debug    | ADSL training
| adsl       |   5 | TrainingSuccess         | notice   | ADSL training
successfull: data ..
| system     |   1 | BootSuccess            | informat | Success booting
into %{p1}
| system     |   2 | DigitalInputChange     | notice   | Digital
Input %{p1} changed valu..
| ntp        |   1 | InitialSync            | notice   | Initial NTP sync:

```

```

time: %{p1}; o..
| ntp      | 2 | Adjust           | informat | NTP adjust
by %{p1}
| ntp      | 3 | QueryTimeout       | warning   | NTP query
to %{p1} timed out. Ne...
| ntp      | 4 | QueryFailed        | warning   | NTP query
failed: %{p1}

```

34.8.2 Viewing the event system config

To view the event system configuration via UCI, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show va_eventd
```

To view the event system config via package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export va_eventd
```

Example of event system configuration

As an example, the event system can be configured to:

- Forward the “l2tp” event “CannotFindTunnel” with a severity between debug and critical to a syslog server
- Forward all “mobile” events with a severity between notice and critical to a SNMP trap manager
- Execute “logger -t eventer %{eventName}” when an “Ethernet” event occurs
- Forward all “auth” events via email
- Connection to the SNMP and syslog server is checked by sending pings
- Connection to the smtp server is verified by checking the state of “eth0”

Example of output event package configuration:

```

package va_eventd

config va_eventd 'main'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option event_queue_file '/tmp/event_buffer'
    option event_queue_size '128K'

config forwarding
    option enabled 'yes'
    option className 'l2tp'
    option eventName 'CannotFindTunnel'
    option severity 'debug-critical'
    option target 'syslog'

```

```
config forwarding
    option enabled 'yes'
    option className 'mobile'
    option severity 'notice-critical'
    option target 'snmp'

config forwarding
    option enabled 'yes'
    option className 'ethernet'
    option target 'logit'

config forwarding
    option enabled 'yes'
    option className 'auth'
    option target 'email'

config conn_tester
    option name 'mon_server'
    option enabled '1'
    option type 'ping'
    option ping_dest_addr '192.168.100.254'
    option ping_source 'eth0'
    option ping_success_duration_sec '10'

config conn_tester
    option name 'smtp_server'
    option enabled '1'
    option type 'link'
    option link_iface 'eth0'

config target
    option name 'syslog'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option type 'syslog'
    option target_addr '192.168.100.254:514'
    option conn_tester 'mon_server'
```

```

config target
    option name 'email'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option type 'email'
    option smtp_addr '89.101.154.148:465'
    option smtp_user 'x@example.com'
    option smtp_password '*****'
    option use_tls 'yes'
    option tls_starttls 'no'
    option tls_forcessl3 'no'
    option timeout_sec '10'
    option from 'y@example.com'
    option to 'z@example.com'
    option subject_template '%{serial} %{severityName} %{eventName}!!!'
    option body_template '%{eventName} (%{class}.%{subclass})'
happened!'
    option conn_tester 'smtp_server'

config target
    option name 'snmp'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option type 'snmptrap'
    option community 'public'
    option target_addr '192.168.100.254'
    option agent_addr '192.168.100.1'
    option conn_tester 'mon_server'

config target
    option name 'logit'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option type 'exec'
    option cmd_template 'logger -t eventer %{eventName}'

```

35 Configuring SLA reporting on Monitor

35.1 Introduction

This section describes how to configure and view SLA reporting on Monitor, the SATEL provided monitoring system.

Monitor provides:

- centralised access to router connectivity status,
- access to advanced router diagnostic tools, and
- access to SLA Report Management.

When enabled, SLA will present daily graphs for each router for the following:

- Packets: received, transmitted and the difference between them
- Packet loss: average, max and min
- Signal strength: average, max and min
- Online time
- Temperature: average, max and min

The SLA Report Manager can build reports from a list of selected routers presenting a range of statistics over extended periods of time.

Note: as well as configuring Monitor for SLA, you must configure each router. To configure the router for Monitor, read the chapter 'Configuring SLA for a router'.

35.2 Configuring SLA reporting

On the monitoring platform, select a particular router for SLA.

Click **SLA Reporting**.

Click **ON**.



Figure 158: Monitor interface

When enabled, Monitor will instruct the routers to periodically send up their data for SLA reporting.

To enable all devices under a particular reseller for SLA, under the SLA tab, click **ON**. The user must have admin privileges for any change to be made. If they do not, they will be informed of this fact.

35.3 Configuring router upload protocol

The protocol the router uses to upload the files is set for each device on Monitor. Monitor will send a command to the router to use this protocol to upload the SLA files.

To edit a device, on the device settings page in the Activator Upload Protocol drop-down menu, select the desired protocol from the following options:

- TFTP
- HTTP
- HTTPS

Enter in the relevant **Server Address** and the **TFTP Server Port number** to match.

The screenshot shows a form with three fields. The first field is a dropdown labeled "Activator upload protocol" with "TFTP" selected. The second field is a text input labeled "TFTP Server Address:" with a placeholder "*". The third field is a text input labeled "TFTP Server Port:" with the value "69".

Figure 159: The device settings fields

35.4 Viewing graphs

When the router has started to send SLA statistics to the Monitoring platform, default graphs are displayed on the SLA Reporting screen. To view the graphs for one specific network interface, select the relevant interface from the drop-down menu.

As different interfaces may measure some aspects of a device's performance but not others, several graphs can appear empty for any given interface, whereas for another interface they would be populated with data.

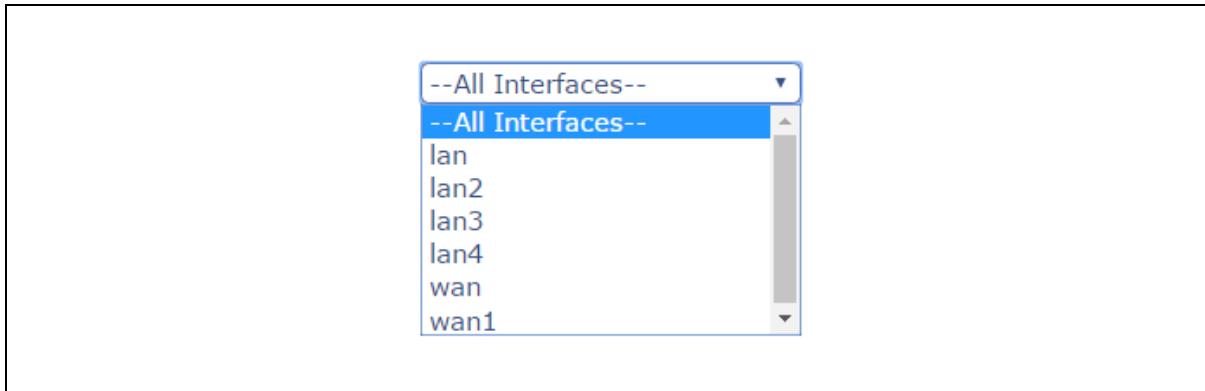


Figure 160: The interface drop-down menu

The graphs initially appear in an hourly format. You can quickly change the view to the corresponding range by using the Hour, Today, Day, Week and Month buttons on-screen.

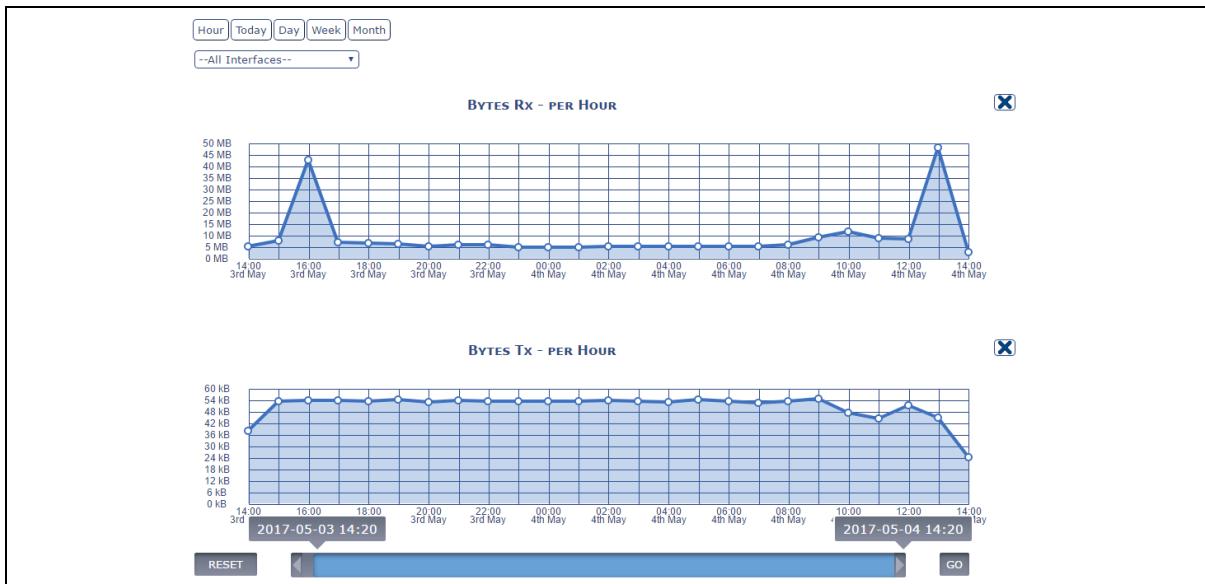


Figure 161: Graphs showing per hour data

To view raw data, hold on the Control key and left-click each graph to produce a summary table.

BYTES RX - PER HOUR	
Date	Bytes Rx
14:00:00 3rd May 2017	05.01 MB
15:00:00 3rd May 2017	07.44 MB
16:00:00 3rd May 2017	42.53 MB
17:00:00 3rd May 2017	06.96 MB
18:00:00 3rd May 2017	06.30 MB
19:00:00 3rd May 2017	06.16 MB
20:00:00 3rd May 2017	05.11 MB
21:00:00 3rd May 2017	05.61 MB
22:00:00 3rd May 2017	05.57 MB
23:00:00 3rd May 2017	04.80 MB
00:00:00 4th May 2017	04.80 MB
01:00:00 4th May 2017	04.81 MB
02:00:00 4th May 2017	05.01 MB
03:00:00 4th May 2017	04.86 MB
04:00:00 4th May 2017	04.98 MB

Figure 162: Raw data information from each graph

To quickly view statistics for a custom range of time, use the blue slider bar at the bottom of the screen.

Click and drag the blue bar left or right to navigate swiftly backwards or forwards chronologically.

Select and drag the leftmost or rightmost side of the scroll bar to specify start or end dates. You can also adjust these by dragging either textual label indicating the dates of the selected range. To quickly shrink or grow the range, hover the cursor over the blue bar and move your mouse's scroll wheel up or down.

When the scroll bar represents less than a period of one day, you can specify the start and end times to display on the graphs.

When you have selected a range with the scroll bar, click **Go** to get statistics for that period.

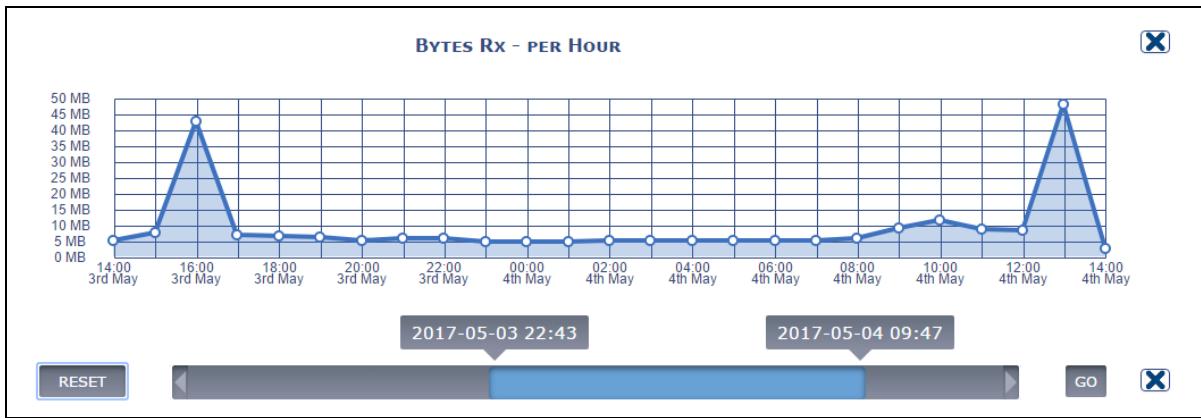


Figure 163: Graph showing specified start and end times

The following graphs can be displayed:

- Packets: received, transmitted and the difference between them
- Packet loss: average, max and min
- Signal strength: average, max and min
- Online time
- Temperature: average, max and min.

To remove a specific graph from view, click **X** in the top-right corner.

If you remove a graph, you can add it back to the page by selecting its name in the **Add SLA Element** drop-down menu. If you have not removed any graphs, this drop-down menu is not available.

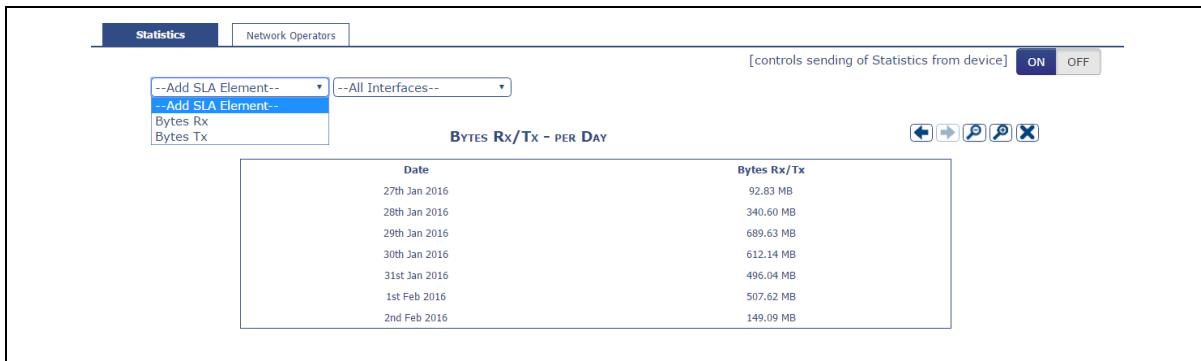


Figure 164: interface showing the add SLA element drop-down menu

35.5 Generating a report

In the top menu, select **Settings**.

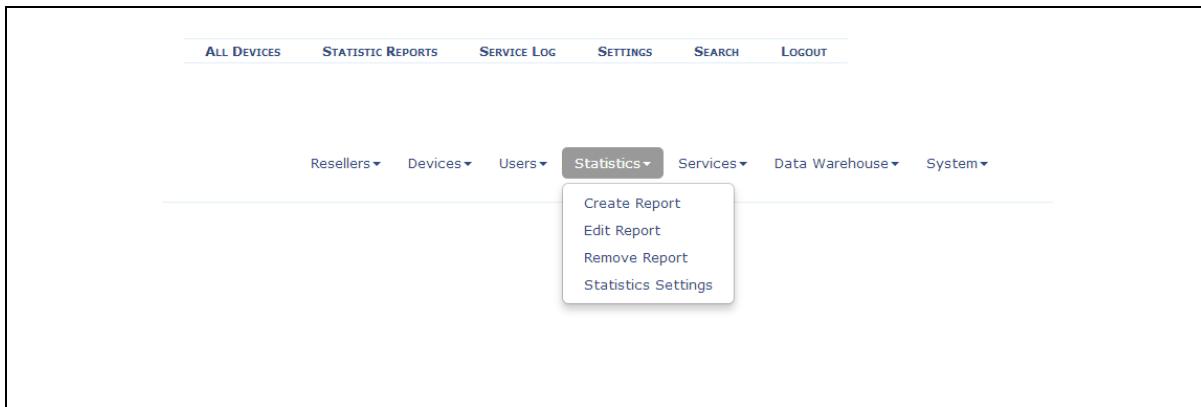


Figure 165: The settings interface

Click **Statistics**. A drop-down menu appears. The menu has the following options.

- Create Report
- Edit Report
- Remove Report
- Statistics Settings

35.5.1 Create a report

Select **Create Report**. Enter the relevant parameters.

- Report name
- Frequency of report
- Assigned devices
- SLA Report Elements

The selected frequency of report determines how often SLA reports will be generated by the Monitor3 Report Generator background service. These reports can then be found in: C:\Monitor\SLaReporting directory.

The available frequency of report options in the drop-down list are:

- Once off
- Hourly
- Daily
- Weekly

To assign devices to the report, click **Change**.

CREATE SLA REPORT

Report name:

Frequency of report: once off

Number of assigned devices: 0 **Change**

SLA Report Elements:

Figure 166: Assign devices to a report

After clicking Change, the select devices page appears, this allows you to select which devices are to be members of the report.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Egress-Demo	egress1	00E0C8121129	Egress
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	GW1041W_Test1	Mike_demo	00E0C8118309	VA_test
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	GW1141W_testtaxi1	testtaxi1	00E0C8121147	VA_Demo
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	GW2021	Mike-desk	00E0C8120180	VA_Demo
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	GW2022_LTE	GW2022_LTE	00E0C81011A8	VA_test
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	GW2022_trinity1	trinity_test1	00E0C810148A	VA_Demo
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	GW2028	GW2028_test	00E0C8122A89	VA_Demo
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	GW6630W_trinity2	GW6630W_trinity2	00E0C8101945	VA_test

Figure 167: Sample from the select devices page

Click **Continue** and then add SLA report elements.

CREATE STATISTIC REPORT

Report name: test report

Frequency of report: once off

Number of assigned devices: 4 **Change**

SLA Report Elements:

Name	Range	Graph	Add
--Select Name--	--Select Range--	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Add
	--Select Range--		
	YEAR		
	MONTH		
	WEEK		
	DAY		

* - mandatory field
1) - must be unique

Figure 168: Add report elements in the create statistic report

The following graph options are available in the drop-down menu in the name column:

- Error Count (Average)
- Signal Strength (Average)
- Error Count (Max)
- Signal Strength (Max)
- Error Count (Min)
- Signal Strength (Min)
- Bytes Transmitted
- Bytes Received
- Bytes Transmitted over Received
- Online time
- Temperature (Min)
- Temperature (Max)
- Temperature (Average)

Select a graph name and then select a relevant range from the following options:

- Year
- Month
- Week
- Day

Click **Add** and when you have selected all graphs, click **Save**.

View reports

To view a report, in the header menu, select **Statistic Reports**.

From the drop down box, select the relevant report and click **Generate**. The report appears.

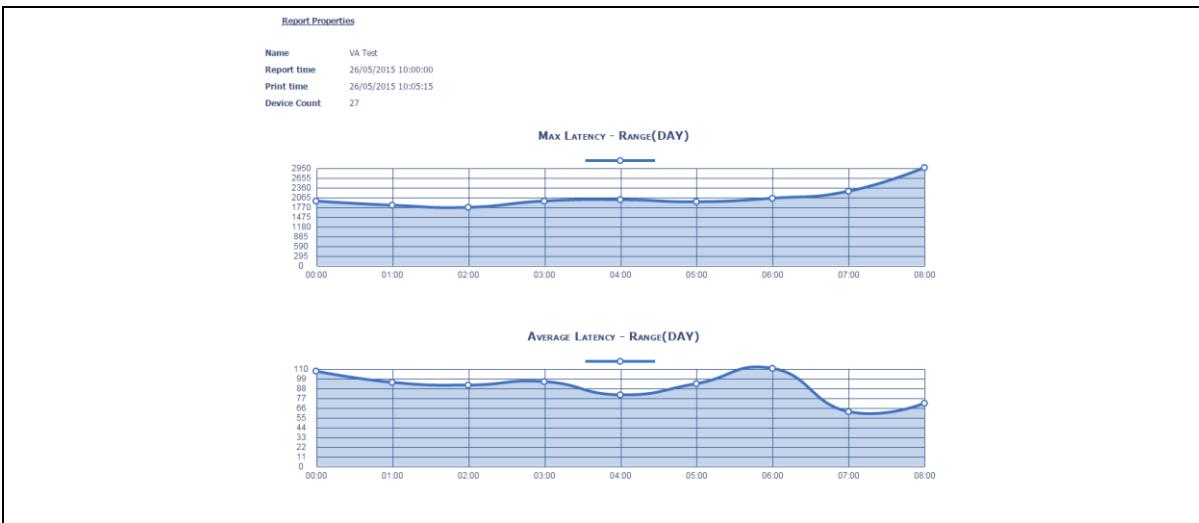


Figure 169: Example of a completed report

35.5.2 Statistics settings

To modify the statistics parameters, in the statics drop-down menu, select **Statistics Settings**.

The form includes a 'STATISTICS SETTINGS' header and two tables. The first table, 'Statistic Range to Rollup Mappings', maps intervals (YEAR, MONTH, WEEK, DAY, HOUR, MINUTE) to rollup intervals (MONTH, WEEK, DAY, HOUR, MINUTE, SECOND). The second table, 'Default Statistic Element Settings', lists various SLA elements with their default ranges, lower limits, upper limits, null values, and whether they have a graph. At the bottom are 'Cancel' and 'Save' buttons.

Default Statistic Element Settings						
Name	Default Range	Lower Limit	Upper Limit	Null Value	Graph	
Error Count (Avg)	DAY	▼	0	1000000000000000	-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Signal Strength (Avg)	DAY	▼	-128	127	127	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Error Count (Max)	DAY	▼	0	1000000000000000	-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Signal Strength (Max)	DAY	▼	-128	127	127	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Error Count (Min)	DAY	▼	0	1000000000000000	-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Signal Strength (Min)	DAY	▼	-128	127	127	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bytes Tx	DAY	▼	0	1000000000000000	-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bytes Rx	DAY	▼	0	1000000000000000	-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bytes Tx/Rx	DAY	▼	0	1000000000000000	-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Online time	DAY	▼	0	100	-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Temperature (Min)	DAY	▼	-128	127	127	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Temperature (Max)	DAY	▼	-128	127	127	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Temperature (Avg)	DAY	▼	-128	127	127	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Figure 170: The statistics settings page

35.5.2.1 SLA range to rollup mappings

The SLA Range to Rollup Mappings option allows you to configure what intervals are used for the various ranges used to display the graphs. For example, the screenshot shows that data will be shown for every minute. If you select **Day**, data will be shown for every day; if you select **Week**, data will be shown for every week, and so on.

35.5.2.2 Default SLA element settings

The Default SLA Element settings control range and graphs.

Range	Sets what the default range will be when a new user is created.
Graph	Selects whether each report element is displayed as a graph or in tabular data form.

The view of SLA data is customisable per user. These default values set how graphs appear when you use SLA for the first time. You can then configure your view of SLA by altering the SLA page using the various controls. These changes are remembered by Monitor so that your view of SLA remains the same when you next return to it. Upper and lower limits control what data is to be ignored when generating SLA graphs.

35.6 Reporting device status to Monitor using UCI

The following UCI sample contains the settings to enable the device to report its status to Monitor. To allow Monitor to track the IP address and ongoing presence of the device, a heartbeat SNMP trap is sent by default every minute. The router is capable of sending SNMP in version 1, 2c and 3.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description						
UCI: monitor.main.enable Opt: Enable	Enables Monitor to send heartbeats to the router. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Enabled.</td> </tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.		
0	Disabled.						
1	Enabled.						
UCI: monitor.main.interval_min Opt: interval_min	Specifies the interval at which traps are sent. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Range</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	1		Range			
1							
Range							
UCI: monitor.main.dev_reference Opt: dev_reference	Sets a unique identification for this device known to Monitor.						
UCI: monitor.main.monitor_ip Opt: monitor_ip	Defines the IP address of Monitor. It is possible to specify multiple addresses to which SNMP heartbeat traps will be sent.						
UCI: monitor.main.snmp_version Opt: snmp_version	Specifies what SNMP version is sent to remote Manager. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>snmp version 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2c</td> <td>SNMP version 2c</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>SNMP version 3</td> </tr> </table>	1	snmp version 1	2c	SNMP version 2c	3	SNMP version 3
1	snmp version 1						
2c	SNMP version 2c						
3	SNMP version 3						

Table 115: Information table for reporting device commands

The table below shows options that are relevant only if you have selected SNMP version 3.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description						
UCI: monitor.main.snmp_uname Opt: snmp_uname	Specifies uname <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td> <td>Default value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>String</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Blank	Default value	String			
Blank	Default value						
String							
UCI: monitor.main.snmp_auth_pass Opt: snmp_auth_pass	snmpv3 authentication password.						
UCI: monitor.main. snmp_auth_proto Opt: snmp_auth_proto	snmpv3 authentication protocol. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td> <td>Default value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MD5</td> <td>MD5 as authentication protocol</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SHA1</td> <td>MD5 as authentication protocol</td> </tr> </table>	Blank	Default value	MD5	MD5 as authentication protocol	SHA1	MD5 as authentication protocol
Blank	Default value						
MD5	MD5 as authentication protocol						
SHA1	MD5 as authentication protocol						

UCI: monitor.main. snmp_priv_proto Opt: snmp_priv_proto	snmpv3 privacy protocol <table border="1"> <tr><td>Blank</td><td>Default value</td></tr> <tr><td>AES</td><td>AES as privacy protocol</td></tr> <tr><td>DES</td><td>MD5 as privacy protocol</td></tr> </table>	Blank	Default value	AES	AES as privacy protocol	DES	MD5 as privacy protocol
Blank	Default value						
AES	AES as privacy protocol						
DES	MD5 as privacy protocol						
UCI: monitor.main. snmp_priv_pass Opt: snmp_priv_pass	snmpv3 privacy password.						
UCI: monitor.main. snmp_context Opt: snmp_context	snmpv3 context name.						
UCI: monitor.main. snmp_context_eid Opt: snmp_context_eid	snmpv3 context engine ID.						
UCI: monitor.main. snmp_sec_eid Opt: snmp_sec_eid	snmpv3 security engine ID.						

A sample Monitor configuration is shown below.

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show monitor
monitor.main=keepalive
monitor.main.enable=yes
monitor.main.interval_min=1
monitor.main.dev_reference=mikesamazondev
monitor.main.monitor_ip=10.1.83.36
monitor.v2=keepalive
monitor.v2.enable=yes
monitor.v2.interval_min=1
monitor.v2.monitor_ip=172.16.250.100
monitor.v2.dev_reference=TEST
monitor.v2.snmp_version=2c
monitor.v3=keepalive
monitor.v3.enable=yes
monitor.v3.interval_min=1
monitor.v3.monitor_ip=172.16.250.100
monitor.v3.dev_reference=TEST
monitor.v3.snmp_version=3
monitor.v3.snmp_uname=TEST
monitor.v3.snmp_auth_pass=vasecret
monitor.v3.snmp_auth_proto=MD5
monitor.v3.snmp_priv_pass=vasecret
monitor.v3.snmp_priv_proto=DES
root@GW_router:~# uci export monitor
package 'monitor'
config keepalive 'main'
```

```
option enable 'yes'
option interval_min '1'
option dev_reference 'mydevice'
option enabled 'yes'
list monitor_ip '10.1.83.36'

config keepalive 'v2'
    option enable 'yes'
    option interval_min '1'
    list monitor_ip '172.16.250.100'
    option dev_reference 'TEST'
    option snmp_version '2c'

config keepalive 'v3'
    option enable 'yes'
    option interval_min '1'
    list monitor_ip '172.16.250.100'
    option dev_reference 'TEST'
    option snmp_version '3'
    option snmp_uname 'TEST'
    option snmp_auth_pass 'vasecret'
    option snmp_auth_proto 'MD5'
    option snmp_priv_pass 'vasecret'
    option snmp_priv_proto 'DES'
config interface_stats 'stats'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option bin_period '1m'
    option bin_cache_size '1440'
```

36 Configuring SLA for a router

SLA reporting works in two parts:

20. The SATEL provided Monitor system server connects via SSH into the router and schedules the task of uploading statistics to Monitor.
21. The SATEL-GW router monitors UDP keepalive packets. It creates and stores statistics in bins. These statistics are uploaded every hour to the Monitor server.

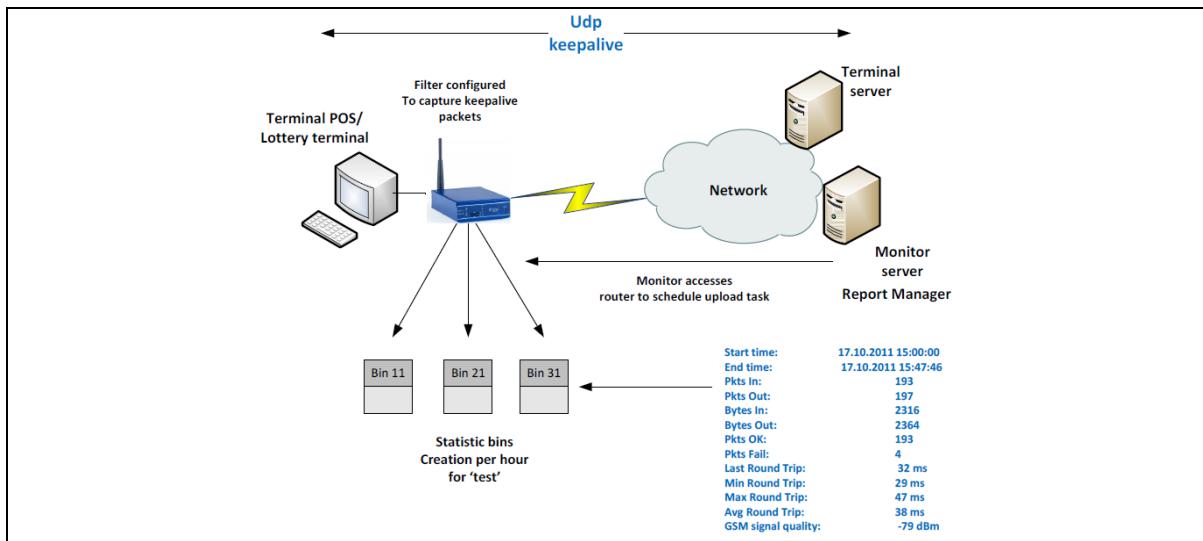


Figure 171: The SLA function

This section describes how to configure SLA on a router. For information on how to configure Monitor for SLA reporting read the previous section 'Configuring SLA on Monitor'.

36.1 Configuration package used

Package	Section
slad	

36.2 Configuring SLA for a router using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Services -> SLA Daemon**. The SLA Daemon page appears.

In the Basic Settings section, click **Add**. The basic settings section for SLA Daemon appears.

SLA Daemon
Configuration of the VA SLA-Daemon.

Basic Settings
Basic settings should be set according to network setup

Enable

Roundtrip Timeout (ms) ⓘ If packet is not replied for before this timeout it is considered lost

Interface Ethernet Adapter: "eth0" (lan)
 Ethernet Adapter: "gre0"
 Ethernet Adapter: "lo" (loopback)
 Custom Interface:

Destination Host IP Address ⓘ Remote side of communication

Destination UDP Port ⓘ Remote side port

Advanced Settings

Bin Restart Period(ms) ⓘ How long one bin is collecting information

Max Bin Count ⓘ How many bins in the queue. After all empty bins are used new information is put in the oldest bin

Figure 172: The SLA daemon page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enable UCI: slad.main.enable Opt: Enable	Enables or disables SLAD application. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Roundtrip Timeout (ms) UCI: slad.main.roundtrip_timeout_msec Opt: roundtrip_timeout_msec	Specifies the time in milliseconds that a packet is not replied before this timeout expires and is considered as lost. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Interface UCI: slad.main.interface Opt: interface	Specifies the interface on which traffic should be monitored.				
Web: Destination Host IP Address UCI: slad.main_destination_host_ip_address Opt: destination_host_ip_address	Specifies the destination IP address for the keepalive packets that are originated on the LAN.				
Web: Destination UDP port UCI: slad.main.destination_udp_ip_address Opt: destination_udp_ip_address	Specifies the destination UDP port for the keepalive packets that are originated on the LAN.				
Web: Bin Restart Period (ms) UCI: slad.main.bin_restart_period_msec Opt: bin_restart_period_msec	Specifies how long one bin is collecting information.				
Web: Max Bin Count UCI: slad.main.max_bin_count Opt: max_bin_count	Specifies how many bins are in the queue. After all empty bins are used new information is put in the oldest bin.				

Table 116: Information table for SLA settings

When you have made all your configuration changes, click **Save & Apply**.

36.3 Configuring SLA for a router using UCI

You can also configure SLA UCI using UCI command suite.

The configuration file is stored on /etc/config/slad

To view the configuration file, enter:

uci export slad

or

uci show slad

```
uci export slad
package slad
config slad 'main'

    option enable 'yes'
    option roundtrip_timeout_msec '5000'
    option interface 'lan'
    option destination_host_ip_address '10.1.1.2'
    option destination_udp_port '53'
    option bin_restart_period_msec '3600000'
    option max_bin_count '73'

uci show slad
slad.main=slad

slad.main.enable=yes
slad.main.roundtrip_timeout_msec=5000
slad.main.interface=lan
slad.main.destination_host_ip_address=10.1.1.2
slad.main.destination_udp_port=53
slad.main.bin_restart_period_msec=3600000
slad.main.max_bin_count=73

Viewing SLA statistics using UCI

To show all available statistic options, enter:
root@GW_router:~# sla
sla [current] | [all] | [oldest] | [newest] | [newest N] | [range:
YYYYMMDDHH-YYYYMMDDHH]
```

Option	Description
current	Shows current sla bin
all	Shows all bin stored on the router
oldest	Shows the oldest sla bin stored
newest	Shows two newest valid bins
newest N	Shows the newest valid bin
range YYYYMMDDHH-YYYYMMDDHH	Shows all bins that match specified time range

Type the command `sla current` To show current statistics, enter:

```
root@GW_router: ~# sla current
-----
Bin valid:          no
Start time         01.01.1970 03:34:00
End time           n/a
Pkts In:            1
Pkts Out:           1
Bytes In:           15
Bytes Out:          15
Pkts OK:            1
Pkts Fail:          0
Last Round Trip:   1 ms
Min Last Trip:     1 ms
Max Round Trip:    1 ms
Avg Round Trip:    1 ms
Min GSM signal quality: n/a
Max GSM signal quality: n/a
Avg GSM signal quality n/a
Availability:       100.00%
```

To show the newest statistics, enter:

```
root@GW_router: ~# sla newest
-----
Bin valid:          yes
Start time         01.01.1970 03:32:00
End time           01.01.1970 03:33:00
Pkts In:             6
Pkts Out:            6
Bytes In:            90
```

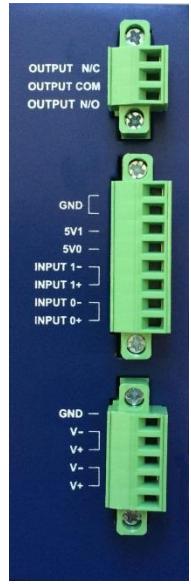
Bytes Out:	90
Pkts OK:	6
Pkts Fail:	0
Last Round Trip:	0 ms
Min Last Trip:	1 ms
Max Round Trip:	1 ms
Avg Round Trip:	1 ms
Min GSM signal quality:	-63 dBm
Max GSM signal quality:	-63 dBm
Avg GSM signal quality	-63 dBm
Availability:	100.00%

37 Configuring GPIO

The Satel GW600 I/O interface has the following features:

- Two digital opto-isolated input ports
- One relay output port

37.1 SATEL-GW600 connectors



OUTPUT N/C	Normal Closed Isolated Relay Output
OUTPUT COM	Common (Isolated)
OUTPUT N/O	Normal Open Isolated Relay Output
GND	System Ground
5V1	5V wetting voltage for analogue input #1 (through 150R)
5V0	5V wetting voltage for analogue input #0 (through 150R)
INPUT 1-	-ve analogue input #1 (optoisolator cathode)
INPUT 1+	+ve analogue input #1 (optoisolator anode though 150R)
INPUT 0-	-ve analogue input #0 (optoisolator cathode)
INPUT 0+	+ve analogue input #0 (optoisolator anode though 150R)
GND	System ground
V-	Power Supply Return
V+	9 – 59 V DC Power Supply Input #1
V-	Power Supply Return
V+	9 – 59 V DC Power Supply Input #2

Figure 173: Connectors on the GW600

37.2 Digital opto-isolated input ports

You can use the digital input ports to connect to a device to monitor its status, for example an external sensor. The digital opto-isolated connectors are labelled as follows:

- INPUT 1-
- INPUT 1+
- INPUT 0-
- INPUT 0+

An event in the router's event system is raised when the status of the digital inputs changes. You can use the router's forwarding event system to forward events to a Syslog server, SNMP, email or SMS.

37.3 Configuring the event system using UCI

You can configure the va_event system via the command line interface or by using the management server, Activator.

From the command line, change to the following directory: **cd/etc/config**

An example setting is shown below. The forwarding section is configured to monitor the status of the digital I/O ports and send an alert to the configured Syslog server.

Class	ID	Name	Severity	Specific Template
system	2	DigitalInputChange	notice	Digital Input

To view a full list of events, type **vae_cli -d**.

```
config va_eventd 'main'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option event_queue_file '/tmp/event_buffer'
    option event_queue_size '128K'

config target
    option name 'syslog1'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option type 'syslog'
    option target_addr '192.168.233.254:514'
    option conn_tester 't1'

config forwarding
    option enabled 'yes'
    option target 'syslog1'
    option className 'system'
    option eventName 'DigitalInputChange'
    option severity 'warning-critical'
```

An example of open and closing input switches causing syslog alert messages on Monitor is shown below.

Reference	Serial Number	Username	Password	Last IP	Tel No.	Eth-0
GW2028_1MB	00EOC8000000	root	Click To See	10.1.10.91		
Syslog SLA Reporting						
Search Export Pause More Clear						
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Received Time	Sitename	Reference	Severity	Message
<input type="checkbox"/>	36594862	2015-02-11 14:17:38	GW	GW	Warning	Monitor: The device is online. The most recent trap was received at 2015-02-11 14:17:22
<input type="checkbox"/>	36575375	2015-02-04 10:39:43	GW	GW	Warning	Monitor: The device is offline. The most recent trap was received at 2015-02-04 10:37:16
<input type="checkbox"/>	36570200	2015-02-02 16:59:45	GW	GW	Warning	Monitor: The device is online. The most recent trap was received at 2015-02-02 16:59:25
<input type="checkbox"/>	36570198	2015-02-02 16:58:15	GW	GW	Warning	Monitor: The device is offline. The most recent trap was received at 2015-02-02 16:56:04
<input type="checkbox"/>	36570199	2015-02-02 16:24:14	GW	GW	Warning	Monitor: The device is online. The most recent trap was received at 2015-02-02 16:23:51
<input type="checkbox"/>	36569784	2015-02-02 13:53:09	GW	GW	Warning	Monitor: The device is offline. The most recent trap was received at 2015-02-02 13:50:40
<input type="checkbox"/>	36569766	2015-04-27 11:23:58	GW	GW	Notice	3 20140427112358 [notice]: DigitalInputChange (system.2): Digital Input 0 changed value to 1
<input type="checkbox"/>	36569764	2015-04-27 11:23:45	GW	GW	Notice	4 20140427112345 [notice]: DigitalInputChange (system.2): Digital Input 1 changed value to 0
<input type="checkbox"/>	36569762	2015-04-27 11:22:47	GW	GW	Notice	3 20140427112247 [notice]: DigitalInputChange (system.2): Digital Input 0 changed value to 0
<input type="checkbox"/>	36569761	2015-04-27 11:22:46	GW	GW	Notice	2 20140427112246 [notice]: DigitalInputChange (system.2): Digital Input 1 changed value to 0

Figure 174: Syslog alert messages on Monitor

	Notice	5 20140427112358 [notice]: DigitalInputChange (system.2): Digital Input 0 changed value to 1
	Notice	4 20140427112345 [notice]: DigitalInputChange (system.2): Digital Input 1 changed value to 1
	Notice	3 20140427112247 [notice]: DigitalInputChange (system.2): Digital Input 0 changed value to 0
	Notice	2 20140427112246 [notice]: DigitalInputChange (system.2): Digital Input 1 changed value to 0

Figure 175: Severity wanting ‘notice’ for digital input change

INPUT	Description
Isolated Digital Input - Dry	Current supplied by external equipment
General Purpose Input 0: SW7	1-8 and 3-6 closed. Others open
General Purpose Input1: SW5	1-8 and 3-6 closed. Others open
Non-isolated Digital Input - Wet	Board supplies current to GPIO_IN+
General Purpose Input 0: SW7	1-8 and 3-6 closed. Others open
General Purpose Input 1: SW5	1-8 and 3-6 closed. Others open

Table 117: Dry and wet inputs with criteria

37.4 Relay output port

The relay will make or break a circuit depending on the state of the digital output port.

OUTPUT N/O	Normal Open
OUTPUT COM	Common
OUTPUT N/C	Normal Closed

Table 118: Connector labels

The output is controlled by command line entries.

digital_io.sh o0 1	Turns relay state on
digital_io.sh o0 0	Turns relay state off
digital_io.sh o0	Returns current state of relay

Table 119: Command line entries and their descriptions

37.4.1 Configuring the relay output port

This script is automatically installed in version LIS-15.00.52 and above, so no special configuration is required.

For versions prior to LIS15.00.73.00, configure the router’s output port using a script like the one shown below. Load the script in UDS (/etc/config/uds).

```
package uds

config script 'relay'

    option enabled 'yes'
    option exec_type 'none'
    option type 'sh'

    list text 'GPIO=/sys/class/gpio/gpio103/value"'
    list text '[ ! -e "$GPIO" ] && {'
    list text '    echo "$GPIO doesn\'t exist. Exiting..." >&2'
    list text '    exit 1'
```

```
list text '}'  
list text 'case "$1" in'  
list text '      "") val=$(cat $GPIO)"'  
list text '          [ "$val" = "1" ] && val="off" || val="on"'  
list text '          echo "$val"'  
list text '          ;;'  
list text '      "off") echo 1 >$GPIO;;'  
list text '      "on") echo 0 >$GPIO;;'  
list text '      *) echo -e "USAGE:\n${0##*/}\t\tprint current  
state\n${0##*/} on\t\tclose the relay\n${0##*/} of f\t\topen the  
relay\n";;'  
list text 'esac'  
  
config script 'link_relay'  
option enabled 'yes'  
option exec_type 'once'  
option type 'sh'  
list text 'ln -sf /var/uds/relay /usr/bin/relay_state'  
list text '      "on") echo 1 >$GPIO;;'  
list text '      *) echo -e "USAGE:\n${0##*/}\t\tprint current  
state\n${0##*/} on\t\tclose the relay\n${0##*/} of f\t\topen the  
relay\n";;'  
list text 'esac'  
config script 'link_relay'  
option enabled 'yes'  
option exec_type 'once'  
option type 'sh'  
list text 'ln -sf /var/uds/relay /usr/bin/relay_state'
```

38 SCADA IEC104 Gateway

38.1 Overview

Supervisory control and data acquisition (SCADA) systems are used by industrial organisations and companies to control and monitor physical processes, examples of which are transmission of electricity, transportation of gas and oil in pipelines, water distribution and traffic lights. Alarm handling is usually an important part of most SCADA implementations.

SCADA systems usually consist of:

- Superviory computers
- Remote terminal units (RTUs)
- Programmable logic controllers (PLCs)

The IEC104 Gateway feature on the router is used for SCADA protocol conversion where the SCADA master is ruuning IEC104 protocol:

- IEC104 to IEC101 conversion (balanced and unbalanced)
- IEC104 to DNP3
- IEC104 to MODBUS (serial and TCP)
- IEC61850 to IEC101 unbalanced conversion

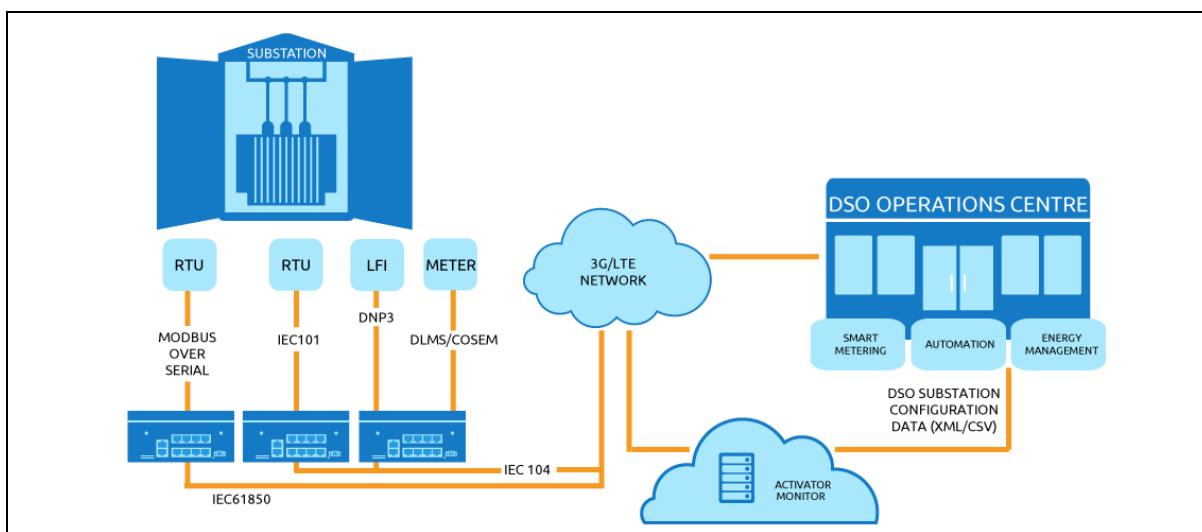


Figure 176: Example network for IEC104 to RTU protocol conversion

Configuration for the above conversions is done in two parts:

- **IEC104 Gateway** (iecd package), and
- **Terminal Server** (tservd package).

The IEC104 Gateway handles the protocol processing while the Terminal Server handles low level serial communication.

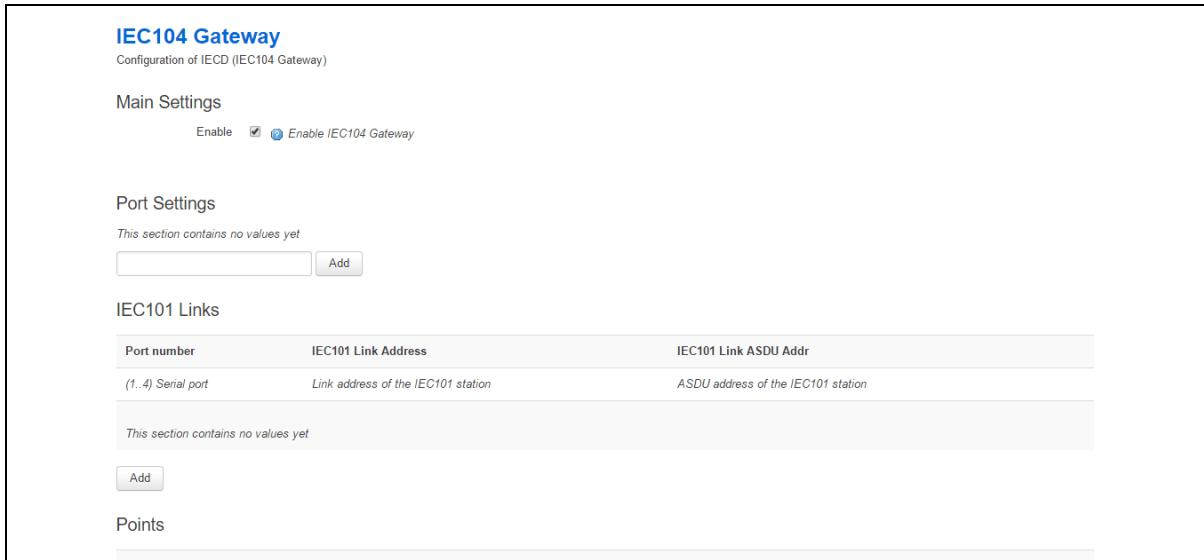
Note: The Terminal Server is not required for IEC104 to Modbus TCP.

38.2 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
iecd	main, port, point
tservd	main, port

38.3 IEC104 gateway configuration using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Services -> IEC104 Gateway**. The IEC104 Gateway page appears.



The screenshot shows the 'IEC104 Gateway' configuration page. It includes sections for Main Settings (with an 'Enable' checkbox checked), Port Settings (with a note 'This section contains no values yet'), IEC101 Links (with a table for port number, link address, and ASDU address, and an 'Add' button), and Points (with an 'Add' button).

Figure 177: The IEC104 Gateway configuration page

There are four sections in the IEC104 Gateway page:

Section	Description
Main Settings	Enables the IEC104 Gateway.
Port Settings	Sets the IEC104 SCADA Master communication settings and the protocol methods used by the RTUs: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• IEC101 unbalanced or balanced• DNP3• Modbus over serial• Modbus over TCP
IEC101 Links	Defines the IEC101 slave links used in IEC101 conversion. Each link is defined by a config iec101link section block. There is a maximum of 32 links supported. In IEC101 unbalanced mode all of these links can be used. In IEC101 balanced mode only one outstation per serial port is assumed since these will be point to point links.
Points	Configures the data point mappings. Note: There are no data point mappings in IEC104 to IEC101 conversion.

38.3.1 Main settings

IEC104 Gateway
Configuration of IECD (IEC104 Gateway)

Main Settings

Enable ⓘ Enable IEC104 Gateway

Figure 178: The IEC104 Gateway main settings configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: Enable	Enables IEC104 gateway.				
UCI: iecd.main.enable	<table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Opt: enable					

Table 120: Information table for IEC104 Gateway main settings configuration

38.3.2 Port settings

The port configuration will depend on the desired protocol conversion. There are 5 sections.

Section	Description
General	Enables an IEC104 port and selects the RTU protocol method.
IEC104	Defines the IEC104 gateway configuration for communication with the SCADA Master.
IEC101	Defines the IEC104 to IEC101 conversion parameters.
DNP3	Defines the IEC104 to DNP3 conversion parameters.
Modbus	Defines the IEC104 to MODBUS conversion parameters (Modbus over serial or Modbus over TCP).
Advanced	Defines logging and TCP keepalive options for all conversion methods.

In the Port Settings section, enter a text name that will be used for the iecd port section, for example, Port1. Select **Add**. The IECD port configuration options appear.

38.3.2.1 Port settings: general

In this section you can configure general port settings. Enable the port and select the RTU Protocol from the drop-down menu.

Port Settings

POR1

General IEC104 IEC101 DNP3 Modbus Advanced

Enable ⓘ Enables IEC104 Gateway port

RTU Protocol IEC101 ⓘ Sets protocol method used by RTU that connects to this router

Figure 179: The IEC104 Gateway port general configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description						
Web: Enable UCI: iecd.<port>.enable Opt: enable	Enables an IEC61850 port. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.		
0	Disabled.						
1	Enabled.						
Web: RTU Protocol UCI: iecd.<port>.master_protocol Opt: master_protocol	Defines the protocol method used by the RTUs that connect to this router. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>iec101</td><td>IEC101</td></tr> <tr> <td>dnp3</td><td>DNP3</td></tr> <tr> <td>modbus</td><td>MODBUS</td></tr> </table>	iec101	IEC101	dnp3	DNP3	modbus	MODBUS
iec101	IEC101						
dnp3	DNP3						
modbus	MODBUS						
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.slave_protocol Opt: slave_protocol	Defines the protocol method used by the SCADA Master. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>iec104</td><td>IC104</td></tr> <tr> <td>iec61850</td><td>IEC61850</td></tr> </table>	iec104	IC104	iec61850	IEC61850		
iec104	IC104						
iec61850	IEC61850						
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec61850_local_ip Opt: iec61850_local_ip	Defines the local IP address this IEC61850 peer binds to.						
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec61850_local_tcpport Opt: iec61850_local_tcpport	Defines the local TCP port this IEC104 peer listens on. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>2404</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	2404		Range	1 - 65535		
2404							
Range	1 - 65535						
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.tcp_user_timeout Opt: tcp_user_timeout	Defines the maximum time in milliseconds to wait for a TCP ACK after data transmission before closing connection in TCP established state. Set to 0 to use kernel defaults (about 15-20 minutes). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>20000</td><td>milliseconds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	20000	milliseconds	Range			
20000	milliseconds						
Range							
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.pointmap_file Opt: pointmap_file	Defines the path to the points map file, for example: /root/iecd/iecd_points1.csv						

Table 121: Information table for IEC104 Gateway port general configuration

38.3.2.2 Port settings: IEC104

In this section you can configure the IEC104 settings.

The screenshot shows the 'Port Settings' configuration page for IEC104. The page has a header 'Port Settings' and a 'Delete' button. Below the header, it says 'PORT1' and lists tabs for 'General', 'IEC104' (which is selected), 'IEC101', 'DNP3', 'Modbus', and 'Advanced'. The 'IEC104' tab contains the following fields:

- IEC104 IOA Offset: 0 (with a tooltip: 'Value to add to each Information Object Address of each configured point')
- IEC104 Local IP: 0.0.0.0 (with a tooltip: 'Local IP address this IEC104 peer binds to')
- IEC104 Listening TCP Port: 2404 (with a tooltip: 'Local TCP port this IEC104 peer listens on')
- IEC104 K: 12 (with a tooltip: 'Maximum number of outstanding I frames')
- IEC104 W: 9 (with a tooltip: 'Receiver acknowledges sender frames after at most W frames (Recommended 2/3 of K)')
- IEC104 T2: 10000 (with a tooltip: 'Timeout for sending S frames in case of no data (milliseconds)')
- Enable IEC104 time synchronization: A checkbox with a tooltip: 'Enables synchronization of router time to IEC104 master time'

Figure 180: The IEC104 Gateway port IEC104 configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description				
Web: IEC104 IOA Offset UCI: iecd.<port>.ioa_offset Opt: ioa_offset	Defines the value to add to each Information Object Address of each configured point. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					
Web: Local IP UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_local_ip Opt: iec104_local_ip	Defines the local IP address this IEC104 peer binds to.				
Web: IEC104 Listening TCP Port UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_local_tcpport Opt: iec104_local_tcpport	Defines the local TCP port this IEC104 peer listens on. <table border="1"><tr><td>2404</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>1 - 65535</td></tr></table>	2404		Range	1 - 65535
2404					
Range	1 - 65535				
Web: IEC104 K UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_k Opt: iec104_k	Defines the maximum number of outstanding I frames. <table border="1"><tr><td>12</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	12		Range	
12					
Range					
Web: IEC104 W UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_w Opt: iec104_w	Defines the number of frames after which the receiver will acknowledge. It is recommended that this value be 2/3 the value of IEC104 K. <table border="1"><tr><td>9</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	9		Range	
9					
Range					
Web: IEC104 T2 UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_t2 Opt: iec104_t2	Defines the timeout in milliseconds for sending S frames in case of no data. <table border="1"><tr><td>10000</td><td>milliseconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	10000	milliseconds	Range	
10000	milliseconds				
Range					
Web: Enable IEC104 time synchronization UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_sync_time Opt: iec104_sync_time	Enables synchronization of router time to IEC104 master time. <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>Enable synchronization</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disable synchronization</td></tr></table>	1	Enable synchronization	0	Disable synchronization
1	Enable synchronization				
0	Disable synchronization				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_gi_resp_time Opt: iec104_gi_resp_time	Defines the time in milliseconds between sending successive general interrogation response messages. <table border="1"><tr><td>200</td><td>milliseconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>50 - 1000</td></tr></table>	200	milliseconds	Range	50 - 1000
200	milliseconds				
Range	50 - 1000				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_txq_size Opt: iec104_txq_size	Defines the the maximum size of transmit ASDU queue in the application layer (number of frames). <table border="1"><tr><td>128</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>2 - 256</td></tr></table>	128		Range	2 - 256
128					
Range	2 - 256				
Web: UCI: n/a iecd.<port>.iec104_time_tagged_cmds Opt: iec104_time_tagged_cmds	Enables support for IEC104 CP56TIME2A tagged commands. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_cmd_delay_time Opt: iec104_cmd_delay_time	Defines the maximum allowable received command age in milliseconds. If set to 0, any age is allowed. <table border="1"><tr><td>5000</td><td>Milliseconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>1000 - 60000</td></tr></table>	5000	Milliseconds	Range	1000 - 60000
5000	Milliseconds				
Range	1000 - 60000				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_fsm_debug_on Opt: iec104_fsm_debug_on	Enables log for IEC104 state transitions and events. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Enable.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Disable.</td></tr></table>	0	Enable.	1	Disable.
0	Enable.				
1	Disable.				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_dump_data Opt: iec104_dump_data	Enables RX/TX Hex dump. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Enable</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Disable</td></tr></table>	0	Enable	1	Disable
0	Enable				
1	Disable				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec104_trace_on Opt: iec104_trace_on	Enables protocol tracing. <table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>Enable.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Disable.</td></tr></table>	0	Enable.	1	Disable.
0	Enable.				
1	Disable.				

Table 122: Information table for IEC104 Gateway port IEC104 configuration

38.3.2.3 Port settings: IEC101

IEC104 to IEC101 conversion feature of the router allows converting commands in the control direction, and the responses and process data in the monitor direction, between the SCADA master running the IEC104 protocol and the remote RTUs running IEC101 protocol over serial interface.

IEC104 to IEC101 conversion can be configured for two modes:

IEC 101 Mode	Description
Unbalanced	In the IEC101 unbalanced mode, the router supports communication of up to 32 IEC101 slaves connected onto the same serial interface.
Balanced	The IEC101 balanced mode is used in point to point configuration. That is, the router is communicating to a single IEC101 outstation on the serial interface. Each peer, either the controlling station (Master) or controlled station (RTU) can initiate communication in balanced mode.

Port Settings

POR1

IEC104

IEC101 Station Target IP	127.0.0.1	Remote IP address of IEC101 station to connects to
IEC101 Station Target TCP Port	999	Remote TCP port of IEC101 station to connect to
IEC101 Link Mode	Balanced	Specifies IEC101 link communication mode
IEC101 Station COT Tx Length	2	Cause Of Transmission length (1 or 2 bytes)
IEC101 Station COT Source Octet	0	Most significant octet in the cause of transmission field
IEC101 Station ASDU Addr Length	2	Length of Common Address of ASDU (1 or 2 bytes)
IEC101 Station Info Object Addr Length	2	Length of the information object address (1, 2 or 3 bytes)
IEC101 Station poll time	10000	RTU polling interval if line idle (milliseconds)
IEC101 Station Link Addr Length	1	Length of the link address field (0, 1 or 2 bytes)

Figure 181: The IEC104 Gateway port IEC101 configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: IEC101 Startion Target IP UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_target_ip Opt: iec101_target_ip	Defines the remote IP address of the IEC101 station to connect to. 127.0.0.1 Range
Web: IEC101 Station Target TCP Port UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_target_tcpport Opt: iec101_target_tcpport	Defines the remote TCP port of the IEC101 station to connect to. 999 Range
Web: IEC101 Link Mode UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_mode Opt: iec101_mode	Defines the IEC101link communication mode. unbalanced balanced

Web: IEC101 Station COT Tx Length UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_cot_tx_length Opt: iec101_cot_tx_length	Defines the Cause of Transmission length (1 or 2 bytes). <table border="1"> <tr><td>2</td><td>bytes</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	2	bytes	Range	
2	bytes				
Range					
Web: IEC101 Station COT Source Length UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_cot_source_octet Opt: iec101_cot_source_octet	Defines the most significant octet in the Cause of Transmission field. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					
Web: IEC101 Station ASDU Addr Length UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_asdu_addrlen Opt: iec101_asdu_addrlen	Defines the length of Common Address of ASDU (1 or 2 bytes). <table border="1"> <tr><td>2</td><td>bytes</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	2	bytes	Range	
2	bytes				
Range					
Web: IEC101 Station Info Object Addr Length UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_info_obj_addrlen Opt: iec101_info_obj_addrlen	Defines the length of the Information Object Address (1, 2 or 3 bytes). <table border="1"> <tr><td>2</td><td>bytes</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	2	bytes	Range	
2	bytes				
Range					
Web: IEC101 Station Poll Time UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_data_polling_time Opt: iec101_data_polling_time	Defines the RTU polling interval in milliseconds if line is idle. <table border="1"> <tr><td>10000</td><td>milliseconds</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	10000	milliseconds	Range	
10000	milliseconds				
Range					
Web: IEC101 Link Addr Length UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_link_addrlen Opt: iec101_link_addrlen	Defines the length of the link address field (0, 1 or 2 bytes). <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>bytes</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	1	bytes	Range	
1	bytes				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_ack_delay Opt: iec101_ack_delay	Defines the time to wait for an IEC101 ACK in milliseconds. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>seconds</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	0	seconds	Range	
0	seconds				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_frame_rsp_time Opt: iec101_frame_rsp_time	Defines maximum number of milliseconds before resending an IEC101 frame. <table border="1"> <tr><td>2000</td><td>milliseconds</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	2000	milliseconds	Range	
2000	milliseconds				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_max_tx_retry Opt: iec101_max_tx_retry	Defines maximum number of times to retry sending an IEC101 frame. <table border="1"> <tr><td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	3		Range	
3					
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_txq_size Opt: iec101_txq_size	Defines size of transmit ASDU queue (number of frames) in the IEC101 link layer. <table border="1"> <tr><td>128</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">Range</td></tr> </table>	128		Range	
128					
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_send_spont_delay_acq Opt: iec101_send_spont_delay_acq	Defines whether to send DELAY ACQUISITION SPONTANEOUS message as part of 'Acquisition of Transmission Delay' procedure. Note: this option is used in the scenario where an IEC104 Master is talking to IEC101 RTU <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Do not send DELAY ACQUISITION SPONTANEOUS message</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Send DELAY ACQUISITION SPONTANEOUS message</td></tr> </table>	0	Do not send DELAY ACQUISITION SPONTANEOUS message	1	Send DELAY ACQUISITION SPONTANEOUS message
0	Do not send DELAY ACQUISITION SPONTANEOUS message				
1	Send DELAY ACQUISITION SPONTANEOUS message				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_fsm_debug_on Opt: iec101_fsm_debug_on	Enables logging IEC104 state transitions and events. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		1	
0					
1					
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_dump_data Opt: iec101_dump_data	Enables RX/TX Hex dump. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		1	
0					
1					
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec101_trace_on Opt: iec101_trace_on	Enables IEC101 protocol tracing. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		1	
0					
1					

Table 123: Information table for IEC104 Gateway port IEC101 configuration

38.3.2.4 Port settings: DNP3

IEC104 to DNP3 conversion feature of the router allows converting commands in the control direction, and the responses and process data in the monitor direction, between the SCADA master running the IEC104 protocol and the remote RTU running DNP3 over serial protocol.

Figure 182: The IEC104 Gateway port DNP3 configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
Web: DNP3 Station Target IP UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_target_ip Opt: dnp3_target_ip	Defines the remote IP address of the DNP3 station to connect to.
Web: DNP3 Station Target TCP Port UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_target_tcpport Opt: dnp3_target_tcpport	Defines the remote TCP port of the DNP3 station to connect to. 999 Range
Web: DNP3 Master Station Address UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_dl_srcaddr Opt: dnp3_dl_srcaddr	Defines the local (Master) DNP3 address. 0 Range
Web: DNP3 Outstation Address UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_dl_dstaddr Opt: dnp3_dl_dstaddr	Defines the remote (Outstation) DNP3 address. 0 Range
Web: Enable DNP3 Data Link Confirms UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_dl_cfrm_user_data Opt: dnp3_dl_cfrm_user_data	Enables DNP3 data link layer user data confirmations. 0 Range

Web: DNP3 Data Link Keep Alive UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_dl_keep_alive_int Opt: dnp3_dl_keep_alive_int	Defines the DNP3 data link keep alive interval in milliseconds (0 to disable).	
	15000	Milliseconds
	Range	
Web: DNP3 Frame Response Time UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_dl_frame_rsp_time Opt: dnp3_dl_frame_rsp_time	Defines the maximum amount of time in milliseconds to receive a frame acknowledge from the DNP3 outstation.	
	1000	Milliseconds
	Range	
Web: DNP3 Maximum Frame Retry UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_dl_max_tx_retry Opt: dnp3_dl_max_tx_retry	Defines the maximum number of times to retry confirmed frame delivery to the DNP3 outstation.	
	3	
	Range	
Web: DNP3 Outstation Poll Time UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_app_poll_time Opt: dnp3_app_poll_time	Defines the DNP3 outstation poll time in milliseconds.	
	30000	Milliseconds
	Range	
Web: Enable DNP3 Unsolicited Responses UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_app_unsol_enable Opt: dnp3_app_unsol_enable	Enables DNP3 application level unsolicited responses.	
	1	Enables
	0	Disable
Web: Enable DNP3 Time Synchronizaton UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_app_sync_time Opt: dnp3_app_sync_time	Enables DNP3 time synchronization.	
	1	Enable
	0	Disable
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_dl_utxq_size Opt: dnp3_dl_utxq_size	Defines the size of DNP3 data link transmit unconfirmed service frame queue (number of frames).	
	128	
	Range	2 – 256
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_dl_ctxq_size Opt: dnp3_dl_ctxq_size	Defines size of DNP3 data link transmit confirmed service frame queue (number of frames).	
	128	
	Range	2 – 256
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_app_read_attr Opt: dnp3_app_read_attr	Enables reading DNP3 device attributes at the start of the session. This feature is useful for debugging and is not recommended for production.	
	0	
	1	
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_app_firstpoll_delay Opt: dnp3_app_firstpoll_delay	Defines initial timeout from start-up in milliseconds before performing first DNP3 integrity poll.	
	5000	milliseconds
	Range	5000 – 65535
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_app_evpoll_time Opt: dnp3_app_evpoll_time	Defines DNP3 outstation event polling interval in milliseconds.	
	3000	milliseconds
	Range	1000 – 65535
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_app_frag_rx_time Opt: dnp3_app_frag_rx_time	Defines DNP3 application level fragment response timeout.	
	10000	Milliseconds
	Range	1000 – 65535
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_app_txq_size Opt:	Defines DNP3 application level transmit queue size (number of frames).	
	64	
	Range	2 – 256

Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_app_output_mode Opt: dnp3_app_output_mode	Defines a decimal code that controls how the router sends DNP3 binary output command to a DNP3 RTU. The most commonly used model is Select/Operate. Note: this command is used in scenario where the router is acting as a DNP3 master.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Use WRITE command.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Use Select/Operate message sequence.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>Use Direct Operate message.</td></tr> </table>	0	Use WRITE command.	1	Use Select/Operate message sequence.	2	Use Direct Operate message.
0	Use WRITE command.						
1	Use Select/Operate message sequence.						
2	Use Direct Operate message.						
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_app_evpoll_mode Opt: dnp3_app_evpoll_mode	Defines DNP3 outstation event polling interval in milliseconds. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3000</td><td>milliseconds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1000 – 65535</td></tr> </table>	3000	milliseconds	Range	1000 – 65535		
3000	milliseconds						
Range	1000 – 65535						
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_fsm_debug_on Opt: dnp3_fsm_debug_on	Enables DNP3 link and application level state machine transition and event logging into syslog. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enable.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disable.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enable.	0	Disable.		
1	Enable.						
0	Disable.						
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_object_parser_debug_on Opt: dnp3_object_parser_debug_on	Enables or disable logging low level debug information when parsing DNP3 objects in the received DNP3 slave messages <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enable.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disable.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enable.	0	Disable.		
1	Enable.						
0	Disable.						
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_dump_data Opt: dnp3_dump_data	Enables RX/TX Hex dump. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enable.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disable.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enable.	0	Disable.		
1	Enable.						
0	Disable.						
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.dnp3_trace_on Opt: dnp3_trace_on	Enables DNP3 protocol tracing. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enable.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disable.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enable.	0	Disable.		
1	Enable.						
0	Disable.						

Table 124: Information table for IEC104 Gateway port DNP3 configuration

38.3.2.5 Port settings: Modbus

The IEC104 to Modbus Conversion feature of the router allows converting commands in the control direction and the responses and process data in the monitor direction between the SCADA Master running the IEC104 protocol and the remote RTUs running Modbus protocol.

The router software supports two variations of the Modbus protocol:

- Modbus over serial: the Modbus devices are connected to the serial interface of the router
- Modbus TCP: the Modbus devices are located on the IP network reachable from the router

In the Modbus over serial variation, currently the router supports Modbus “RTU mode” frame format of the Modbus specification only.

Port Settings

POR1

[Delete](#)

General IEC104 IEC101 DNP3 Modbus Advanced

Modbus protocol: Modbus Serial (Sets protocol variation used by RTU that connects to this router)

Modbus local IP: 0.0.0.0 (Local IP interface to use in modbus mode)

Modbus local port: 888 (Local port to use in modbus mode)

Modbus remotel IP: 127.0.0.1 (Remote IP address to use in modbus mode)

Modbus remote port: 999 (Remote port to use in modbus mode)

Modbus polling time: 3000 (Modbus slave polling interval in milliseconds)

Modbus frame response time: 1000 (Maximum time allowed to receive a response frame from a Modbus slave (milliseconds))

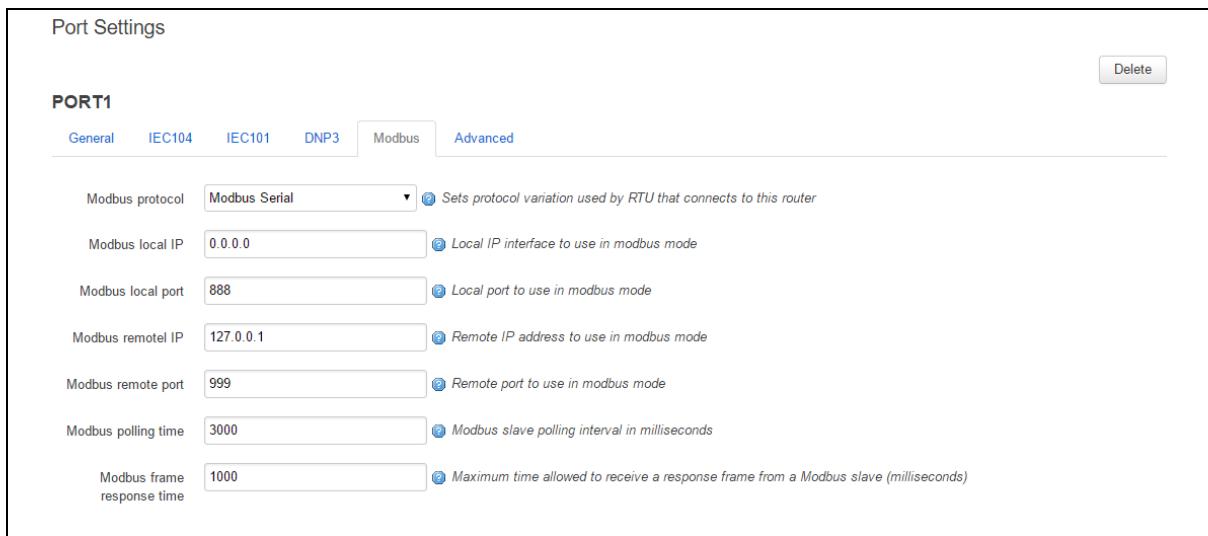


Figure 183: The IEC104 Gateway port MODBUS configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description		
Web: Modbus Protocol UCI: iecd.<port>.modbus_protocol Opt: modbus_protocol	Defines the protocol variation used by RTU that connects to this router.		
	Option	Description	UCI
	Modbus Serial	Modus over serial	modbus_serial
	Modbus TCP	Modbus over TCP	modbus_tcp
Web: Modbus local IP UCI: iecd.<port>.modbus_local_ip Opt: modbus_local_ip	Defines the local IP to use in Modbus mode.		
	0.0.0.0		
	Range		
Web: Modbus local port UCI: iecd.<port>.modbus_local_port Opt: modbus_local_port	Defines the local port to use in Modbus mode.		
	888		
	Range		
Web: Modbus remote IP UCI: iecd.<port>.modbus_remote_ip Opt: modbus_remote_ip	Defines the remote IP address.		
	127.0.0.1		
	Range		
Web: Modbus remote port UCI: iecd.<port>.modbus_remote_port Opt: modbus_remote_port	Defines the remote port.		
	999		
	Range		
Web: Modbus polling time UCI: iecd.<port>.modbus_polling_time Opt: modbus_polling_time	Defines the slave polling interval in milliseconds.		
	3000	3000 milliseconds	
	Range		
Web: Modbus frame response time UCI: iecd.<port>.modbus_resp_time Opt: modbus_resp_time	Defines the maximum time allowed to receive a response frame from a Modbus slave, in milliseconds.		
	1000	1000 milliseconds	
	Range		
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.modbus_dump_data Opt: modbus_dump_data	Enables RX/TX Hex dump.		
	Range		
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.modbus_trace_on Opt: modbus_trace_on	Enables Modbus protocol tracing		
	Range		
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.modbus_fsm_debug_on Opt: modbus_fsm_debug_on	Enables Modbus state machine debugging.		
	Range		

Table 125: Information table for IEC104 Gateway port MODBUS configuration

38.3.2.6 Port settings: advanced

In this section you can configure the advanced port settings.

Port Settings

POR1

General **IEC104** **IEC101** **DNP3** **Modbus** **Advanced**

Syslog severity: Emergency Specifies the lowest severity to be logged by iecd

Enable TCP keepalives Enable TCP keepalives

TCP Keepalive interval: 5 TCP Keepalive send interval (seconds)

TCP Keepalive timeout: 5 TCP Keepalive timeout (seconds)

TCP Keepalive count: 3 TCP Keepalive maximum probe count

Delete

Figure 184: The IEC104 Gateway port advanced configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description																	
Web: Syslog severity UCI: iecd.<port>.loglevel Opt: loglevel	Defines the lowest severity used for logging events by iecd.	<table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Emergency</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Alert</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>Critical</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>Error</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>Warning</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>Notice</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>Informational</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>Debug</td></tr> </table>	0	Emergency	1	Alert	2	Critical	3	Error	4	Warning	5	Notice	6	Informational	7	Debug
0	Emergency																	
1	Alert																	
2	Critical																	
3	Error																	
4	Warning																	
5	Notice																	
6	Informational																	
7	Debug																	
Web: Enable TCP keepalives UCI: iecd.<port>.tcp_keepalive_enabled Opt: tcp_keepalive_enabled	Defines whether to enable TCP keepalive.	<table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Disabled.	0	Enabled.												
1	Disabled.																	
0	Enabled.																	
Web: TCP Keepalive interval UCI: iecd.<port>.tcp_keepalive_interval Opt: tcp_keepalive_interval	Defines the TCP keepalive interval in seconds.	<table border="1"> <tr><td>5</td><td>Seconds.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	5	Seconds.	Range													
5	Seconds.																	
Range																		
Web: TCP Keepalive timeout UCI: iecd.<port>.tcp_keepalive_timeout Opt: tcp_keepalive_timeout	Defines the TCP keepalive timeout in seconds.	<table border="1"> <tr><td>5</td><td>Seconds.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	5	Seconds.	Range													
5	Seconds.																	
Range																		
Web: TCP Keepalive count UCI: iecd.<port>.tcp_keepalive_count Opt: tcp_keepalive_count	Defines the number of unanswered keepalives before terminating the TCP session.	<table border="1"> <tr><td>3</td><td>Seconds.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	3	Seconds.	Range													
3	Seconds.																	
Range																		

Table 126: Information table for IEC104 Gateway port advanced configuration

38.3.3 IEC101 links

The following section defines the IEC101 slave links used in IEC101 conversion. Each link is defined by a **config iec101link** section block. There is a maximum of 32 links supported.

In IEC101 unbalanced mode all of these can be used.

However, as IEC101 balanced mode is used in a point to point scenario, it is assumed there will be only one outstation per serial port. Only the first link configured for that port will be used. Each peer - either controlling station (Master) or controlled station (RTU) can initiate communication in balanced mode.

IEC101 Links					
Port number	IEC101 Link Address		IEC101 Link ASDU Addr		
(1..4) Serial port	Link address of the IEC101 station		ASDU address of the IEC101 station		
<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>		<input type="button" value="Add"/>

Table 127: IECD slave links configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Port Number UCI: iecd.iec101link[x].portno Opt: portno	Defines the serial port number to which this point belongs.	
	Range	1 - 4
Web: IEC101 Link Address UCI: iecd.iec101link[x].address Opt: address	Defines the IEC101 station link address.	
	0	
	Range	
Web: IEC101 Link ASDU Station UCI: iecd.iec101link[x].asduaddr Opt: asduaddr	Defines the IEC101 station common ASDU address.	
	0	
	Range	

Table 128: Information table for IEC104 Gateway port IEC101 configuration

38.3.4 Points

IEC104 point mappings are used for DNP3 and Modbus conversion only.

The point mappings comprise the information necessary to perform conversion between each data variable (point) on the remote RTU and the corresponding variable in the IEC104 domain.

Modbus TCP requires a device route file (**/root/iecd/devroute.csv**) to map the point configuration to an IP address – see Modbus route file section below.

There is a maximum of 400 point mappings supported per serial port.

Points						
Port number	IEC104 Type ID	IEC104 IOA	Device Addr	Group	Index	
(1..4) Serial port	IEC104 Data Type ID	IEC104 Information Object Address	(Modbus Only!) slave address	DNP3 group id or Modbus data type	DNP3 Point index or Modbus data index	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>

Figure 185: The IEC104 Gateway point mapping configuration page

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description	
Web: Port Number UCI: iecd.point[x].portno Opt: portno	Defines the port number to which this point belongs (1 to 4). This corresponds to the serial port number.	
	Range	1 - 4
Web: IEC104 Type ID UCI: iecd.point[x] iec104_type_id Opt: iec104_type_id	Defines the IEC104 type ID (data type). All types are defined in IEC-60870-5-104	
	1	Single Point information.
	2	Double Point information.
	7	Bitstring 32 bits.
	9	Measured normalized value short signed.
	11	Measured scaled value short signed.
	13	IEEE STD 754 = Short floating point number.
	14	IEEE STD 754 = Short floating point number with time tag CP24Time2a.
	15	Integrated totals, 32 bit signed integer.
	20	Packed single point information with status change detection.
	21	Measured normalized value short signed without quality descriptor.
	30	Single-point information with time tag CP56Time2a
	31	Double-point information with time tag CP56Time2a.
	33	Bitstring of 32 bits with time tag CP56Time2a.
	34	Measured normalized value short signed time tag CP56Time2a.
	35	Measured value, scaled value with time tag CP56Time2a.
	36	Measured value, short floating point number with time tag CP56Time2a.
	37	Integrated totals with time tag CP56Time2a.
Web: IEC104 IOA UCI: iecd.point[x].iec104_ioa Opt: iec104_ioa	Defines IEC104 information object address. This is how remote IEC104 SCADA master knows one point from another.	
	Range	1 - 116777215
Web: IEC101 IOA UCI: iecd.point[x].iec101_ioa Opt: iec101_ioa	Defines IEC101 information object address.	
	Range	1 - 116777215
Web: Device Addr UCI: iecd.point[x].devaddr Opt: devaddr	Defines the Modbus device address of the RTU (Modbus slave address). Used for identifying the point mapping to IP address in the device route file for Modbus TCP. This is not used in DNP3 mode.	
	Range	
Web: Group UCI: iecd.point[x].group Opt: group	For DNP3 this defines the DNP3 group number to which this data point maps to. For Modbus, this defines the Modbus data type.	
	Range	0 - 255
	0	Discreet input.
	1	Input register.
	2	Holding register.
	3	Coil.

Web: Index UCI: iecd.point[x].index Opt: index	For DNP3, this defines the DNP3 point index. For Modbus, this defines the Modbus data index (point number). <table border="1"> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 65535</td></tr> </table>			Range	0 - 65535
Range	0 - 65535				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.point[x].dword Opt: dword	Defines the DWORD type. Relevant for Modbus data types IR (input registers) and HR (holding registers). <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Data point is treated as 16 bit wide.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Data point is treated as 32 bit wide (two consecutive 16 bit registers are read from the Modbus device).</td></tr> </table>	0	Data point is treated as 16 bit wide.	1	Data point is treated as 32 bit wide (two consecutive 16 bit registers are read from the Modbus device).
0	Data point is treated as 16 bit wide.				
1	Data point is treated as 32 bit wide (two consecutive 16 bit registers are read from the Modbus device).				

Table 129: Information table for IEC104 Gateway point mapping configuration

38.3.4.1 MODBUS device route file

If the configured MODBUS protocol variation is Modbus TCP, then the device route file at **/root/iecd/devroute.csv** is used to map the device address (iecd.point[x].devaddr) from the point mapping to the remote IP address of the Modbus TCP slave device.

The devroute.csv file entries will have the following format:

<Modbus device addr>, <IP address>

For example, for the point mapping file:

```
config point
    option portno 1
    option iec104_type_id 30
    option iec104_ioa 64213
    option devaddr 1
    option group 0
    option index 2
```

For the devroute.csv entry:

```
1,192.168.0.106
```

38.4 IEC104 gateway configuration using command line

IEC104 Gateway uses the iecd package /etc/config/iecd.

You can configure multiple port, iec101link and points sections.

By default, IEC104 Gateway port instances are named port, it is identified by @port followed by the port position in the package as a number. For example, for the first port in the package using UCI:

```
iecd.@port[0]=port
iecd.@port[0].enable=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config port
    option enable '1'
```

By default, all IEC104 Gateway IEC101 link instances are named iec101link, it is identified by @iec101link followed by the link position in the package as a number. For example, for the first IEC101 link in the package using UCI:

```
iecd.@iec101link[0]=iec101link
iecd.@iec101link[0].portno=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config iec101link
    option portno '1'
```

By default, all IEC104 Gateway point instances are named point, it is identified by @point followed by the point position in the package as a number. For example, for the first point in the package using UCI:

```
iecd.@point[0]=point
iecd.@point[0].portno=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config point
    option portno '1'
```

38.4.1 IEC104 to IEC101 conversion (balanced or unbalanced)

The following example shows IEC104 to IEC101 unbalanced conversion with one IEC101 link.

To configure IEC104 to IEC101 balanced conversion set option iec101_mode to **balanced**.

38.4.1.1 IEC104 to IEC101 using uci

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show iecd
iecd.main=iecd
iecd.main.enable=1
iecd.port1=port
iecd.port1.enable=1
iecd.port1.loglevel=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_enabled=1
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_interval=5
```

```

iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_timeout=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_count=3
iecd.port1.tcp_user_timeout=20000
iecd.port1.master_protocol=iec101
iecd.port1.slave_protocol=iec104
iecd.port1.ioa_offset=0
iecd.port1.pointmap_file=/root/iecd/iecd_points1.csv
iecd.port1.iec104_local_ip=0.0.0.0
iecd.port1.iec104_local_tcpport=2404
iecd.port1.iec104_k=12
iecd.port1.iec104_w=9
iecd.port1.iec104_t2=10000
iecd.port1.iec104_gi_resp_time=200
iecd.port1.iec104_txq_size=128
iecd.port1.iec104_sync_time=1
iecd.port1.iec104_time_tagged_cmds=0
iecd.port1.iec104_cmd_delay_time=5000
iecd.port1.iec104_fsm_debug_on=0
iecd.port1.iec104_dump_data=0
iecd.port1.iec104_trace_on=0

#IEC101 conversion options
iecd.port1.iec101_target_ip=127.0.0.1
iecd.port1.iec101_target_tcpport=999
iecd.port1.iec101_mode=unbalanced      #balanced or unbalanced
iecd.port1.iec101_cot_tx_length=1
iecd.port1.iec101_cot_source_octet=0
iecd.port1.iec101_asdu_addrlen=1
iecd.port1.iec101_info_obj_addrlen=2
iecd.port1.iec101_data_polling_time=500
iecd.port1.iec101_ack_delay=0
iecd.port1.iec101_link_addrlen=1
iecd.port1.iec101_frame_rsp_time=2000
iecd.port1.iec101_max_tx_retry=3
iecd.port1.iec101_txq_size=128
iecd.port1.iec101_send_spont_delay_acq=1

```

```

iecd.port1.iec101_fsm_debug_on=0
iecd.port1.iec101_dump_data=0
iecd.port1.iec101_trace_on=0

# The following section defines IEC101 slave links used in IEC101
unbalanced mode on each link is defined by a config block 'config
iecd101link'

# To add more links repeat the section block for each added link.

# Maximum 32 links are supported

iecd.@iecd101link[0]=iecd101link
iecd.@iecd101link[0].portno=1
iecd.@iecd101link[0].address=6
iecd.@iecd101link[0].asduaddr=6

#No data point mappings for IEC104 to IEC101 conversion

```

38.4.1.2 IEC104 to IEC101 using package options

```

root@GW_router:~# uci export iecd
package iecd

config iecd 'main'
    option enable '1'

config port 'port1'
    option enable '1'
    option loglevel '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_enabled '1'
    option tcp_keepalive_interval '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_timeout '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_count '3'
    option tcp_user_timeout '20000'
    option master_protocol 'iec101'
    option slave_protocol 'iec104'
    option ioa_offset '0'
    option pointmap_file '/root/iecd/iecd_points1.csv'
    option iec104_local_ip '0.0.0.0'
    option iec104_local_tcpport '2404'

```

```

option iec104_k '12'
option iec104_w '9'
option iec104_t2 '10000'
option iec104_gi_resp_time '200'
option iec104_txq_size '128'
option iec104_sync_time '1'
option iec104_time_tagged_cmds '0'
option iec104_cmd_delay_time '5000'
option iec104_fsm_debug_on '0'
option iec104_dump_data '0'
option iec104_trace_on '0'

#IEC101 conversion options
option iec101_target_ip '127.0.0.1'
option iec101_target_tcpport '999'
option iec101_mode 'unbalanced'           #balanced or unbalanced
option iec101_cot_tx_length '1'
option iec101_cot_source_octet '0'
option iec101_asdu_addrlen '1'
option iec101_info_obj_addrlen '2'
option iec101_data_polling_time '500'
option iec101_ack_delay '0'
option iec101_link_addrlen '1'
option iec101_frame_rsp_time '2000'
option iec101_max_tx_retry '3'
option iec101_txq_size '128'
option iec101_send_spont_delay_acq '1'
option iec101_fsm_debug_on '0'
option iec101_dump_data '0'
option iec101_trace_on '0'

# The following section defines IEC101 slave links used in IEC101
unbalanced mode on

# Each link is defined by a config block 'config iec101link'
# To add more links repeat the section block for each added link. To remove
links, s
# Maximum 32 links are supported

```

```

# Definition of options within the section block:
# portno - port number to which this point belongs (1 to 4)
# address - IEC101 slave link address
# asduaddr IEC101 slave common ASDU address

config iec101link
    option portno 1
    option address 6
    option asduaddr 6

#No data point mappings for IEC104 to IEC101 conversion

```

38.4.2 IEC104 to DNP3 conversion

The following example shows definition of two conversion points. The config point section should be repeated for each point to be defined.

38.4.2.1 IEC104 to DNP3 conversion using uci

```

root@GW_router:~# uci show iecd
iecd.main=iecd
iecd.main.enable=1
iecd.port1=port
iecd.port1.enable=1
iecd.port1.loglevel=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_enabled=1
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_interval=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_timeout=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_count=3
iecd.port1.tcp_user_timeout=20000
iecd.port1.master_protocol=dnp3
iecd.port1.slave_protocol=iec104
iecd.port1.ioa_offset=0
iecd.port1.pointmap_file=/root/iecd/iecd_points1.csv
iecd.port1.iec104_local_ip=0.0.0.0
iecd.port1.iec104_local_tcport=2404
iecd.port1.iec104_k=12
iecd.port1.iec104_w=9

```

```
iecd.port1.iec104_t2=10000
iecd.port1.iec104_gi_resp_time=200
iecd.port1.iec104_txq_size=128
iecd.port1.iec104_sync_time=1
iecd.port1.iec104_time_tagged_cmds=0
iecd.port1.iec104_cmd_delay_time=5000
iecd.port1.iec104_fsm_debug_on=0
iecd.port1.iec104_dump_data=0
iecd.port1.iec104_trace_on=0
iecd.port1.iec101_cot_source_octet=0

#DNP3 conversion options
iecd.port1.dnp3_target_ip=127.0.0.1
iecd.port1.dnp3_target_tcpport=999
iecd.port1.dnp3_dl_srcaddr=3
iecd.port1.dnp3_dl_dstaddr=4
iecd.port1.dnp3_dl_cfrm_user_data=0
iecd.port1.dnp3_dl_keep_alive_int=15000
iecd.port1.dnp3_dl_frame_rsp_time=1500
iecd.port1.dnp3_dl_max_tx_retry=3
iecd.port1.dnp3_dl_utxq_size=128
iecd.port1.dnp3_dl_ctxq_size=128
iecd.port1.dnp3_app_read_attr=0
iecd.port1.dnp3_app_unsol_enable=0
iecd.port1.dnp3_app_poll_time=30000
iecd.port1.dnp3_app_firstpoll_delay=5000
iecd.port1.dnp3_app_epoll_time=3000
iecd.port1.dnp3_app_frag_rx_time=10000
iecd.port1.dnp3_app_sync_time=1
iecd.port1.dnp3_app_txq_size=64
iecd.port1.dnp3_app_output_mode=0
iecd.port1.dnp3_app_epoll_mode=0
iecd.port1.dnp3_fsm_debug_on=0
iecd.port1.dnp3_object_parser_debug_on=0
iecd.port1.dnp3_dump_data=0
iecd.port1.dnp3_trace_on=0
```

```
#DNP3 data point mappings

iecd.@point[0]=point
iecd.@point[0].portno=1
iecd.@point[0].iec104_type_id=1
iecd.@point[0].iec104_ioa=1
iecd.@point[0].devaddr=1
iecd.@point[0].group=1
iecd.@point[0].index=0

iecd.@point[1]=point
iecd.@point[1].portno=1
iecd.@point[1].iec104_type_id=1
iecd.@point[1].iec104_ioa=2
iecd.@point[1].devaddr=1
iecd.@point[1].group=1
iecd.@point[1].index=39
```

38.4.2.2 IEC104 to DNP3 conversion using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export iecd
package iecd

config iecd 'main'
    option enable '1'

config port 'port1'
    option enable '1'
    option loglevel '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_enabled '1'
    option tcp_keepalive_interval '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_timeout '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_count '3'
    option tcp_user_timeout '20000'
    option master_protocol 'dnp3'
    option slave_protocol 'iec104'
    option ioa_offset '0'
    option pointmap_file '/root/iecd/iecd_points1.csv'
    option iec104_local_ip '0.0.0.0'
```

```
option iec104_local_tcpport '2404'
option iec104_k '12'
option iec104_w '9'
option iec104_t2 '10000'
option iec104_gi_resp_time '200'
option iec104_txq_size '128'
option iec104_sync_time '1'
option iec104_time_tagged_cmds '0'
option iec104_cmd_delay_time '5000'
option iec104_fsm_debug_on '0'
option iec104_dump_data '0'
option iec104_trace_on '0'
option iec101_cot_source_octet '0'

#DNP3 conversion options
option dnp3_target_ip '127.0.0.1'
option dnp3_target_tcpport '999'
option dnp3_dl_srcaddr '3'
option dnp3_dl_dstaddr '4'
option dnp3_dl_cfrm_user_data '0'
option dnp3_dl_keep_alive_int '15000'
option dnp3_dl_frame_rsp_time '1500'
option dnp3_dl_max_tx_retry '3'
option dnp3_dl_utxq_size '128'
option dnp3_dl_ctxq_size '128'
option dnp3_app_read_attr '0'
option dnp3_app_unsol_enable '0'
option dnp3_app_poll_time '30000'
option dnp3_app_firstpoll_delay '5000'
option dnp3_app_evpoll_time '3000'
option dnp3_app_frag_rx_time '10000'
option dnp3_app_sync_time '1'
option dnp3_app_txq_size '64'
option dnp3_app_output_mode '0'
option dnp3_app_evpoll_mode '0'
option dnp3_fsm_debug_on '0'
```

```

option dnp3_object_parser_debug_on '0'
option dnp3_dump_data '0'
option dnp3_trace_on '0'

config point
    option portno '1'
    option iec104_type_id '1'
    option iec104_ioa '1'
    option devaddr '1'
    option group '1'
    option index '0'

config point
    option portno '1'
    option iec104_type_id '1'
    option iec104_ioa '2'
    option devaddr '1'
    option group '1'
    option index '39'

```

38.4.3 IEC104 to Modbus conversion

The following example shows IEC104 to Modbus over serial.

To configure Modbus TCP, set `option modbus_protocol` to **modbus_tcp**.

When configuring Modbus TCP, then device route file at `/root/iecd/devroute.csv` must be configured to map the device address `option devaddr` from the point mapping to the remote IP address of the Modbus TCP slave device.

The `devroute.csv` file entries will have the following format:

`<Modbus device addr>, <IP address>`

For example, for the point mapping file:

```

config point
    option portno 1
    option iec104_type_id 30
    option iec104_ioa 64213
    option devaddr 1
    option group 0
    option index 2

```

For the devroute.csv entry:

```
1,192.168.0.106
```

38.4.3.1 IEC104 to modbus using uci

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show iecd
iecd.main=iecd
iecd.main.enable=1
iecd.port1=port
iecd.port1.enable=1
iecd.port1.loglevel=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_enabled=1
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_interval=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_timeout=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_count=3
iecd.port1.tcp_user_timeout=20000
iecd.port1.master_protocol=modbus
iecd.port1.slave_protocol=iec104
iecd.port1.ioa_offset=0
iecd.port1.pointmap_file=/root/iecd/iecd_points1.csv
iecd.port1.iec104_local_ip=0.0.0.0
iecd.port1.iec104_local_tcpport=2404
iecd.port1.iec104_k=12
iecd.port1.iec104_w=9
iecd.port1.iec104_t2=10000
iecd.port1.iec104_gi_resp_time=200
iecd.port1.iec104_txq_size=128
iecd.port1.iec104_sync_time=1
iecd.port1.iec104_time_tagged_cmds=0
iecd.port1.iec104_cmd_delay_time=5000
iecd.port1.iec104_fsm_debug_on=0
iecd.port1.iec104_dump_data=0
iecd.port1.iec104_trace_on=0
iecd.port1.iec101_cot_source_octet=0

#Modbus conversion options
iecd.port1.modbus_protocol=modbus_serial
```

```

iecd.port1.modbus_local_ip=0.0.0.0
iecd.port1.modbus_local_port=888
iecd.port1.modbus_remote_ip=127.0.0.1
iecd.port1.modbus_remote_port=999
iecd.port1.modbus_polling_time=3000
iecd.port1.modbus_resp_time=1000
iecd.port1.modbus_dump_data=0
iecd.port1.modbus_trace_on=0
iecd.port1.modbus_fsm_debug_on=0

#Modbus data point mappings
iecd.@point[0]=point
iecd.@point[0].portno=1
iecd.@point[0].iec104_type_id=36
iecd.@point[0].iec104_ioa=6620161
iecd.@point[0].iec101_ioa=0
iecd.@point[0].devaddr=11
iecd.@point[0].group=1
iecd.@point[0].index=18459
iecd.@point[0].dword=1
iecd.@point[1]=point
iecd.@point[1].portno=1
iecd.@point[1].iec104_type_id=36
iecd.@point[1].iec104_ioa=6620162
iecd.@point[1].iec101_ioa=0
iecd.@point[1].devaddr=11
iecd.@point[1].group=1
iecd.@point[1].index=18461
iecd.@point[1].dword=1

```

38.4.3.2 IEC104 to modbus using package options

```

root@GW_router:~# uci export iecd
package iecd

config iecd 'main'
    option enable '1'

```

```
config port 'port1'
    option enable '1'
    option loglevel '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_enabled '1'
    option tcp_keepalive_interval '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_timeout '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_count '3'
    option tcp_user_timeout '20000'
    option master_protocol 'modbus'
    option slave_protocol 'iec104'
    option ioa_offset '0'
    option pointmap_file '/root/iecd/iecd_points1.csv'
    option iec104_local_ip '0.0.0.0'
    option iec104_local_tcpport '2404'
    option iec104_k '12'
    option iec104_w '9'
    option iec104_t2 '10000'
    option iec104_gi_resp_time '200'
    option iec104_txq_size '128'
    option iec104_sync_time '1'
    option iec104_time_tagged_cmds '0'
    option iec104_cmd_delay_time '5000'
    option iec104_fsm_debug_on '0'
    option iec104_dump_data '0'
    option iec104_trace_on '0'
    option iec101_cot_source_octet '0'

    #Modbus conversion options
    option modbus_protocol 'modbus_serial'
    option modbus_local_ip '0.0.0.0'
    option modbus_local_port '888'
    option modbus_remote_ip '127.0.0.1'
    option modbus_remote_port '999'
    option modbus_polling_time '3000'
    option modbus_resp_time '1000'
    option modbus_dump_data '0'
```

```

option modbus_trace_on '0'
option modbus_fsm_debug_on '0'

config point
    option portno '1'
    option iec104_type_id '36'
    option iec104_ioa '6620161'
    option iec101_ioa '0'
    option devaddr '11'
    option group '1'
    option index '18459'
    option dword '1'

config point
    option portno '1'
    option iec104_type_id '36'
    option iec104_ioa '6620162'
    option iec101_ioa '0'
    option devaddr '11'
    option group '1'
    option index '18461'
    option dword '1'

```

38.5 Configuring the terminal server

The terminal server is used to control the data from the serial port over the IP network.

The terminal server configuration can be found at **Services -> Terminal Server**. The Terminal Server Configuration page appears. You must configure two main sections: Main Settings and Port Settings.

The terminal server for IEC104 to each of the RTU protocol conversions differ only slightly. This section shows the command line options for configuring the terminal server for IEC104 conversion.

See the terminal server user manual section for more detailed information on web configuration and option values.

38.5.1 Configuring the terminal server for IEC104 to IEC101

38.5.1.1 Configuring IEC104 to IEC101 using uci

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show tservd
```

```
tservd.main=tservd
tservd.main.enable=1
tservd.main.debug_ev_enable=0
tservd.main.log_severity=5
tservd.main.debug_rx_tx_enable=0
tservd.port1=port
tservd.port1.enable=1
tservd.port1.devName=/dev/ttySC0
tservd.port1.ip_port1=0
tservd.port1.ip_port2=0
tservd.port1.remote_ip1=0.0.0.0
tservd.port1.remote_ip2=0.0.0.0
tservd.port1.tcp_always_on=1
tservd.port1.close_tcp_on_dsr=0
tservd.port1.tty_always_open=1
tservd.port1.fwd_timeout=0
tservd.port1.fwd_timer_mode=idle
tservd.port1.fwd_buffer_size=1
tservd.port1.sfwd_buffer_size=0
tservd.port1.sfwd_timeout=0
tservd.port1.sfwd_timer_mode=idle
tservd.port1.speed=9600
tservd.port1.wszie=8
tservd.port1.parity=1
tservd.port1.stops=1
tservd.port1.fc_mode=0
tservd.port1.disc_time_ms=5000
tservd.port1.server_mode=1
tservd.port1.proxy_mode=0
tservd.port1.local_ip=0.0.0.0
tservd.port1.listen_port=999
tservd.port1.udpMode=0
tservd.port1.udpLocalPort=0
tservd.port1.udpRemotePort=0
tservd.port1.udpKaIntervalMs=0
tservd.port1.udpKaCount=3
```

```
tservd.port1.serial_mode_gpio_control=1
tservd.port1.tcp_nodelay=1
tservd.port1.portmode=rs232
```

38.5.1.2 Configuring IEC104 to IEC101 using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export tservd
package tservd

config tservd main
    # set to 1 to enable terminal server
    option enable 1

    # enables detailed debug logging (state transitions, data transfer etc)
    option debug_ev_enable 0

    # sets syslog level (0 to 7), default is 6
    option log_severity 5

    option debug_rx_tx_enable 0

config port 'port1'
    # enables this port
    option enable 1

    # serial device name
    option devName '/dev/ttySC0'

    # destination peer port IP number (two number for failover)
    option ip_port1 0
    option ip_port2 0

    # destination peer ip address (two addresses for failover)
    option remote_ip1 '0.0.0.0'
    option remote_ip2 '0.0.0.0'

    # keep TCP session always connected
```

```
option tcp_always_on 1

# close TCP session on detection of DSR signal low
option close_tcp_on_dsr 0

# keep serial port always open (if option not present, default is 0)
option tty_always_open 1

# Forwarding timeout in milliseconds (serial to network)
option fwd_timeout 0

# Forwarding timer mode (serial to network), 'idle'=timer re-started on
each received data,
# 'aging'=timer started on first rx
option fwd_timer_mode 'idle'

# Forwarding buffer size (serial to network)
option fwd_buffer_size 1

# Forwarding buffer size (network to serial), 0=use maximum possible
network rx buffer size
option sfwd_buffer_size 0

# Forwarding timeout in milliseconds (network to serial), 0=forward to
serial immediately
option sfwd_timeout 0

# Forwarding timer mode (network to serial), 'idle'=timer re-started on
each received data,
# 'aging'=timer started on first rx
option sfwd_timer_mode 'idle'

# serial device speed in baud
option speed 9600

# serial device word size (5,6,7,8)
option wszie 8
```

```
# serial device parity (0=none, 1=even, 2=odd)
option parity 1

# serial device number of stop bits (1 or 2)
option stops 1

# serial flow control mode (0=none, 1=RTS CTS, 2=XONXOFF)
option fc_mode 0

# time in milliseconds to start re-connecting after setting DTR low
option disc_time_ms 5000

# TCP server mode
option server_mode 1

# Proxy mode (off by default)
option proxy_mode 0

# Local IP address to listen on (0.0.0.0=listen on any interface)
option local_ip '0.0.0.0'

# TCP listen port for server mode
option listen_port 999

# UDP mode
option udpMode 0

# UDP local port UDP mode
option udpLocalPort 0

# UDP port for UDP mode
option udpRemotePort 0

# If set to non zero, send empty UDP packets every this many
milliseconds to remote peer
```

```

option udpKaIntervalMs 0

# Max number of consecutive remote UDP keepalive missed (not received)
before UDP

# session considered broken
option udpKaCount 3

option serial_mode_gpio_control 1
option tcp_nodelay 1

# rs232 - RS-232 mode, rs485hdx - rs485 2 wire half duplex mode in
which transmitter drives

# RTS. rs485fdx - RS485 4 wire full duplex mode. 'v23' - using V.23
leased line card driver.

# x21 - use USB serial card in sync mode
option portmode 'rs232'

```

38.5.2 Configuring the terminal server for IEC104 to DNP3

The terminal server server configuration for IEC104 to DNP3 is the same as for IEC104 to IEC101 except for serial device parity which is set to **none**.

Parity setting using uci:

```
tservd.port1.parity=1
```

Parity setting using package options:

```
option parity 0
```

38.5.3 Configuring the terminal server for IEC104 to Modbus over serial

The terminal server server is only used for IEC104 to Modbus over serial. It is not used for Modbus over TCP.

The following options necessary for IEC104 to Modbus are listed below (for the first serial port only).

38.5.3.1 IEC104 to Modbus over serial using uci

```

root@GW_router:~# uci show tservd
tservd.main=tservd
tservd.main.enable=1
tservd.main.debug_ev_enable=0

```

```
tservd.main.log_severity=5
tservd.main.debug_rx_tx_enable=0
tservd.port1=port
tservd.port1.enable=1
tservd.port1.devName=/dev/ttySC0
tservd.port1.ip_port1=999
tservd.port1.ip_port2=999
tservd.port1.remote_ip1=127.0.0.1
tservd.port1.remote_ip2=127.0.0.1
tservd.port1.tcp_always_on=1
tservd.port1.close_tcp_on_dsr=0
tservd.port1.tty_always_open=1
tservd.port1.fwd_timeout=10
tservd.port1.fwd_timer_mode=idle
tservd.port1.fwd_buffer_size=300
tservd.port1.sfwd_buffer_size=0
tservd.port1.sfwd_timeout=0
tservd.port1.sfwd_timer_mode=idle
tservd.port1.speed=19200
tservd.port1.wsizes=8
tservd.port1.parity=1
tservd.port1.stops=1
tservd.port1.fc_mode=0
tservd.port1.disc_time_ms=5000
tservd.port1.server_mode=1
tservd.port1.proxy_mode=0
tservd.port1.local_ip=0.0.0.0
tservd.port1.listen_port=999
tservd.port1.udpMode=1
tservd.port1.udpLocalPort=999
tservd.port1.udpRemotePort=888
tservd.port1.udpKaIntervalMs=0
tservd.port1.udpKaCount=3
tservd.port1.serial_mode_gpio_control=1
tservd.port1.portmode=rs232
```

38.5.3.2 IEC104 to Modbus over serial using package options

```
root@GW_router:~# uci export tservd

package tservd

config tservd main

    # set to 1 to enable terminal server
    option enable 1

    # enables detailed debug logging (state transisions, data transfer etc)
    option debug_ev_enable 0

    # sets syslog level (0 to 7), default is 6
    option log_severity 5

    option debug_rx_tx_enable 0

config port 'port1'

    # enables this port
    option enable 1

    # serial device name
    option devName '/dev/ttySC0'

    # destination peer port IP number (two number for failover)
    option ip_port1 999
    option ip_port2 999

    # destination peer ip address (two addresses for failover)
    option remote_ip1 '127.0.0.1'
    option remote_ip2 '127.0.0.1'

    # keep TCP session always connected
    option tcp_always_on 1

    # close TCP session on detection of DSR signal low
    option close_tcp_on_dsr 0
```

```
# keep serial port always open (if option not present, default is 0)
option tty_always_open 1

# Forwarding timeout in milliseconds (serial to network)
option fwd_timeout 10

# Forwarding timer mode (serial to network), 'idle'=timer re-started on
each received data,
# 'aging'=timer started on first rx
option fwd_timer_mode 'idle'

# Forwarding buffer size (serial to network)
option fwd_buffer_size 300

# Forwarding buffer size (network to serial), 0=use maximum possible
network rx buffer size
option sfwd_buffer_size 0

# Forwarding timeout in milliseconds (network to serial), 0=forward to
serial immediately
option sfwd_timeout 0

# Forwarding timer mode (network to serial), 'idle'=timer re-started on
each received data,
# 'aging'=timer started on first rx
option sfwd_timer_mode 'idle'

# serial device speed in baud
option speed 19200

# serial device word size (5,6,7,8)
option wsize 8

# serial device parity (0=none, 1=even, 2=odd)
option parity 1
```

```
# serial device number of stop bits (1 or 2)
option stops 1

# serial flow control mode (0=none, 1=RTS CTS, 2=XONXOFF)
option fc_mode 0

# time in milliseconds to start re-connecting after setting DTR low
option disc_time_ms 5000

# TCP server mode
option server_mode 1

# Proxy mode (off by default)
option proxy_mode 0

# Local IP address to listen on (0.0.0.0=listen on any interface)
option local_ip '0.0.0.0'

# TCP listen port for server mode
option listen_port 999

# UDP mode
option udpMode 1

# UDP local port UDP mode
option udpLocalPort 999

# UDP port for UDP mode
option udpRemotePort 888

# If set to non zero, send empty UDP packets every this many
milliseconds to remote peer
option udpKaIntervalMs 0

# Max number of consecutive remote UDP keepalive missed (not received)
before UDP
# session considered broken
```

```

option udpKaCount 3

option serial_mode_gpio_control 1

# rs232 - RS-232 mode, rs485hdx - rs485 2 wire half duplex mode in
which transmitter drives

# RTS. rs485fdx - RS485 4 wire full duplex mode. 'v23' - using V.23
leased line card driver.

# x21 - use USB serial card in sync mode

option portmode 'rs232'

```

38.6 Configuring IEC61850 to IEC101 conversion

The IEC61850 to IEC101-unbalanced conversion feature of the router allows converting commands in the control direction and the responses and process data in the monitor direction between the SCADA Master running the IEC61850 protocol and the remote RTUs running IEC101 protocol in unbalanced mode over serial interface.

In IEC101 unbalanced mode, the router supports communication of up to 32 IEC101 slaves connected onto the same serial interface.

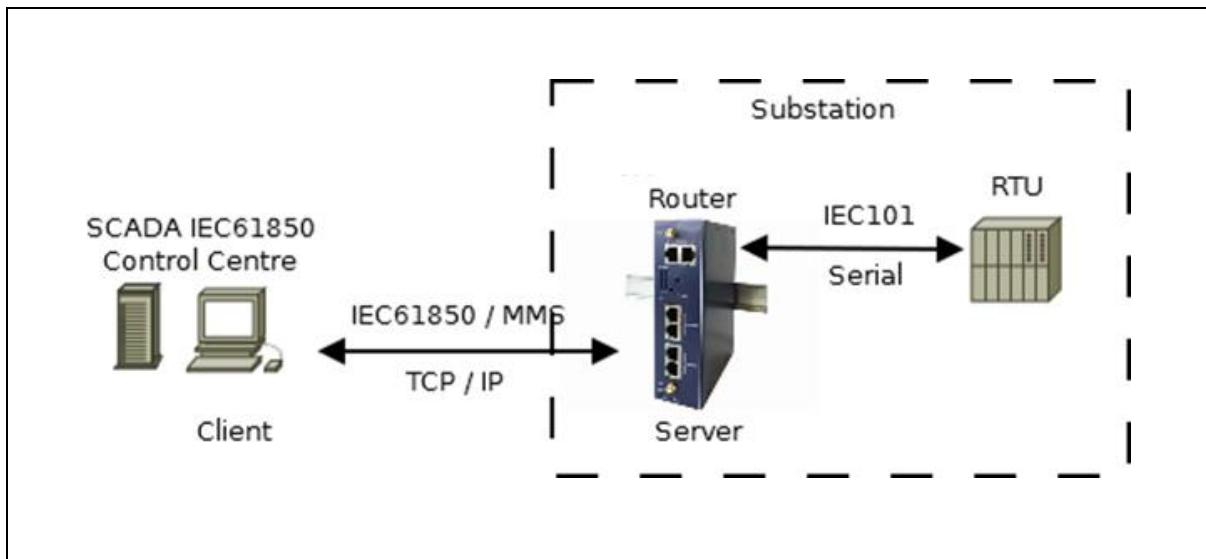


Figure 186: Example of IEC61850 to IEC101 conversion scenario

The IEC104 Gateway and terminal server are used for IEC61850 to IEC101 conversion, as in the other protocol conversions however the IEC62850 options are currently not available via the web interface. The following section details command line configuration.

Web Field/UCI/Package Option	Description
iecd port config section	

Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.slave_protocol Opt: slave_protocol	Defines what protocol the SCADA control centre is using to connect to this gateway. <table border="1"> <tr><td>iec104</td><td>IC104</td></tr> <tr><td>iec61850</td><td>IEC61850</td></tr> </table>	iec104	IC104	iec61850	IEC61850
iec104	IC104				
iec61850	IEC61850				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec61850_local_ip Opt: iec61850_local_ip	Defines the local IP address this IEC61850 peer binds to.				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.<port>.iec61850_local_tcpport Opt: iec61850_local_tcpport	Defines the local TCP port this IEC104 peer listens on. <table border="1"> <tr><td>2404</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>1 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	2404		Range	1 - 65535
2404					
Range	1 - 65535				
iecd point config section					
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.point[x].iec61850_id Opt: iec61850_id	Defines the IEC61850 logical device name. For example option iec61850 ld 'SENSORS' <table border="1"> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 32 chars</td></tr> </table>			Range	0 - 32 chars
Range	0 - 32 chars				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.point[x].iec61850_ln Opt: iec61850_ln	Defines the IEC61850 logical node name. For example option iec61850 ln 'LLN0' <table border="1"> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 32 chars</td></tr> </table>			Range	0 - 32 chars
Range	0 - 32 chars				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.point[x].iec61850_do Opt: iec61850_do	Defines the IEC61850 data object name. For example: option iec61850 do 'SPS01' <table border="1"> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 32 chars</td></tr> </table>			Range	0 - 32 chars
Range	0 - 32 chars				
Web: n/a UCI: iecd.point[x] iec101_type_id Opt: iec101_type_id	Defines the IEC104 type ID (data type). For example: 1 – Single Point Information 2 – Double Point Information All types are defined in IEC-60870-5-101. <table border="1"> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			Range	
Range					
Web: IEC101 IOA UCI: iecd.point[x].iec101_ioa Opt: iec101_ioa	Defines IEC101 information object address. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Single Point Information</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>1 - 16777215</td></tr> </table>	1	Single Point Information	Range	1 - 16777215
1	Single Point Information				
Range	1 - 16777215				

Table 130: Information table for IEC61850 specific configuration

38.6.1 Relation of IEC101 data types to IEC61850 data types

Supported data type combinations are listed below:

option iec101_type_id (IEC101 explanation)	option iec61850_do (IEC61850 explanation)	IEC101 point R/W	IEC61850 point R/W
'1' SPI (Single Point Information)	'SPS' Single-point status	read only	read only
'1' SPI (Single Point Information)	'SPC' Controllable single-point	read-write	read-write
'1' SPI (Single Point Information)	'SPG' Single point setting	--	write only
'3' DPI (Double Point Information)	'DPS' Double-point status	read only	read only

'3' DPI (Double Point Information)	'DPC' Controllable double-point	read-write	read-write
'11' Measured value, scaled value short signed	'INS' Integer status	read only	read only
'11' Measured value, scaled value short signed	'STV' Status value	read only	read only
'11' Measured value, scaled value short signed	'ENS' Enumerated Status	read only	read only
'11' Measured value, scaled value short signed	'ENC' Controllable enumerated status	read-write	read-write
'11' Measured value, scaled value short signed	'ENG' Enumerated status setting	--	write only
'11' Measured value, scaled value short signed	'INC' Controllable integer status	read-write	read-write
'11' Measured value, scaled value short signed	'CMD' Command	--	write only
'11' Measured value, scaled value short signed	'ING' Integer status setting	--	write only
'11' Measured value, scaled value short signed	'MV' Measured Value	read only	read only
'13' Measured value, short floating point number	'MV' Measured Value	read only	read only
'13' Measured value, short floating point number	'APC' Controllable analog set point	read-write	read-write
'13' Measured value, short floating point number	'SPV' Set point value	--	write only
'13' Measured value, short floating point number	'ASG' Analog setting	--	write only

Table 131: IEC101 data types to IEC61850 data types

38.6.2 IEC61850 to IEC101 conversion using the command line

Two configuration packages must be configured

- **iecd** for the IEC104 Gateway; **/etc/config/iecd**
- **tservd** for the Terminal Server; **/etc/config/tservd**

The IECD point mappings comprise the information necessary to perform conversion between each data variable (point) on the remote IEC101 RTU and the corresponding variable in the IEC61850 domain.

In the IEC61850 domain, the data points are identified by unique textual names in the general form.

LogicalDevice/LogicalNode/DataObject, e.g. 'SENSORS/LLN0/SPS01'

In the IEC101 domain, the data points are identified by type ID and information object address (IOA). For example:

Type ID 1 (Single Point Information), IOA 3

Each point is defined at the end of the **/etc/config/iecd** configuration file by a **config point** section block. A sample definition of two points is given below. The example configuration shows the points of IEC61850 domain belonging to logical device 'SENSORS' (option iec61850_id), logical node 'LLN0' (option iec61850_ln) with data objects (option iec61850_do) 'SPS01' and 'SPS02' (single point status) mapping to IEC101 data points of type id 1 (M_SP_NA_1 – Single Point Information) and having IEC101 Information Object Addresses (option iec101_ioa) 5 and 6

To add more points repeat the section block for each added point.

To remove points, simply remove the section block.

Note: Maximum 400 points supported per serial port.

38.6.2.1 IEC61850 to IEC101 conversion using uci

```
root@GW_router:~# uci show iecd
iecd.main=iecd
iecd.main.enable=1
iecd.port1=port
iecd.port1.enable=1
iecd.port1.loglevel=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_enabled=1
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_interval=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_timeout=5
iecd.port1.tcp_keepalive_count=3
iecd.port1.tcp_user_timeout=20000
```

```
iecd.port1.master_protocol=iec101
iecd.port1.slave_protocol=iec61850
iecd.port1.ioa_offset=0
iecd.port1.pointmap_file=/root/iecd/iecd_points1.csv
iecd.port1.iec104_local_ip=0.0.0.0
iecd.port1.iec104_local_tcpport=2404
iecd.port1.iec104_k=12
iecd.port1.iec104_w=9
iecd.port1.iec104_t2=10000
iecd.port1.iec104_gi_resp_time=200
iecd.port1.iec104_txq_size=128
iecd.port1.iec104_sync_time=1
iecd.port1.iec104_time_tagged_cmds=0
iecd.port1.iec104_cmd_delay_time=5000
iecd.port1.iec104_fsm_debug_on=0
iecd.port1.iec104_dump_data=0
iecd.port1.iec104_trace_on=0
iecd.port1.iec61850_local_ip=0.0.0.0
iecd.port1.iec61850_local_tcpport=104
iecd.port1.iec101_target_ip=127.0.0.1
iecd.port1.iec101_target_tcpport=999
iecd.port1.iec101_mode=unbalanced
iecd.port1.iec101_cot_tx_length=1
iecd.port1.iec101_cot_source_octet=0
iecd.port1.iec101_asdu_addrlen=1
iecd.port1.iec101_info_obj_addrlen=2
iecd.port1.iec101_data_polling_time=500
iecd.port1.iec101_ack_delay=0
iecd.port1.iec101_link_addrlen=1
iecd.port1.iec101_frame_rsp_time=2000
iecd.port1.iec101_max_tx_retry=3
iecd.port1.iec101_txq_size=128
iecd.port1.iec101_send_spont_delay_acq=1
iecd.port1.iec101_fsm_debug_on=0
iecd.port1.iec101_dump_data=0
iecd.port1.iec101_trace_on=0
```

```

iecd.@iec101link[0]=iec101link
iecd.@iec101link[0].portno=1
iecd.@iec101link[0].address=6
iecd.@iec101link[0].asduaddr=6
iecd.@point[0]=point
iecd.@point[0].portno=1
iecd.@point[0].iec61850_ld=SENSORS
iecd.@point[0].iec61850_ln=LLNO
iecd.@point[0].iec61850_do=SPSS01
iecd.@point[0].iec104_type_id=1
iecd.@point[0].iec104_ioa=5
iecd.@point[0].iec101_type_id=1
iecd.@point[0].iec101_ioa=5
iecd.@point[0].devaddr=1
iecd.@point[0].group=1
iecd.@point[0].index=0
iecd.@point[0].dword=0
iecd.@point[1]=point
iecd.@point[1].portno=1
iecd.@point[1].iec61850_ld=SENSORS
iecd.@point[1].iec61850_ln=LLNO
iecd.@point[1].iec61850_do=SPSS02
iecd.@point[1].iec104_type_id=1
iecd.@point[1].iec104_ioa=6
iecd.@point[1].iec101_type_id=1
iecd.@point[1].iec101_ioa=6
iecd.@point[1].devaddr=1
iecd.@point[1].group=1
iecd.@point[1].index=0
iecd.@point[1].dword=0

```

38.6.2.2 IEC61850 to IEC101 conversion using package options

```

root@GW_router:~# uci export iecd
package iecd

config iecd 'main'
    option enable '1'

```

```
config port 'port1'

    option enable '1'
    option loglevel '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_enabled '1'
    option tcp_keepalive_interval '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_timeout '5'
    option tcp_keepalive_count '3'
    option tcp_user_timeout '20000'
    option master_protocol 'iec101'
    option slave_protocol 'iec61850'
    option ioa_offset '0'
    option pointmap_file '/root/iecd/iecd_points1.csv'

    # IEC104 related settings
    option iec104_local_ip '0.0.0.0'
    option iec104_local_tcpport '2404'
    option iec104_k '12'
    option iec104_w '9'
    option iec104_t2 '10000'
    option iec104_gi_resp_time '200'
    option iec104_txq_size '128'
    option iec104_sync_time '1'
    option iec104_time_tagged_cmds '0'
    option iec104_cmd_delay_time '5000'
    option iec104_fsm_debug_on '0'
    option iec104_dump_data '0'
    option iec104_trace_on '0'

    # IEC61850 related settings
    option iec61850_local_ip '0.0.0.0'
    option iec61850_local_tcpport '104'

    option iec101_target_ip '127.0.0.1'
    option iec101_target_tcpport '999'
    option iec101_mode 'unbalanced'
```

```

option iec101_cot_tx_length '1'
option iec101_cot_source_octet '0'
option iec101_asdu_addrlen '1'
option iec101_info_obj_addrlen '2'
option iec101_data_polling_time '500'
option iec101_ack_delay '0'
option iec101_link_addrallen '1'
option iec101_frame_rsp_time '2000'
option iec101_max_tx_retry '3'
option iec101_txq_size '128'
option iec101_send_spont_delay_acq '1'
option iec101_fsm_debug_on '0'
option iec101_dump_data '0'
option iec101_trace_on '0'

# The following section defines IEC101 slave links used in IEC101
unbalanced mode on

# Each link is defined by a config block 'config iec101link'
# To add more links repeat the section block for each added link. To remove
links, s

# Maximum 32 links are supported

#
# Definition of options within the section block:
# portno - port number to which this point belongs (1 to 4)
# address - IEC101 slave link address
# asduaddr IEC101 slave common ASDU address

config iec101link
    option portno 1
    option address 6
    option asduaddr 6

config point
    option portno '1'
    option iec61850_ld 'SENSORS'
    option iec61850_ln 'LLN0'
    option iec61850_do 'SPSS01'

```

```

option iec104_type_id '1'
option iec104_ioa '5'
option iec101_type_id 1
option iec101_ioa '5'
option devaddr '1'
option group '1'
option index '0'
option dword '0'

config point
    option portno '1'
    option iec61850_ld 'SENSORS'
    option iec61850_ln 'LLN0'
    option iec61850_do 'SPSS02'
    option iec104_type_id '1'
    option iec104_ioa '6'
    option iec101_type_id 1
    option iec101_ioa '6'
    option devaddr '1'
    option group '1'
    option index '0'
    option dword '0'

```

38.7 Diagnostics

38.7.1 Starting and stopping services

The iecd and tserv background services are started automatically at router power up.

These services can be manually stopped, started or restarted as follows:

iecd

```

/etc/init.d/iecd stop - stops IECD service
/etc/init.d/iecd start - starts IECD service
/etc/init.d/iecd restart - stops and starts IECD service

```

tservd

```

/etc/init.d/tservd stop - stops TSERVD service
/etc/init.d/ tservd start - starts TSERVD service

```

```
/etc/init.d/ tservd restart - stops and starts TSERVD service
```

38.7.2 Events

The diagnosing and protocol tracing on the router the following features are available:

- Viewing syslog events (error messages)
- Running and viewing protocol traces (using syslog)
- Viewing statistic counters and debug information using diagnostic commands

To see the appropriate debug information different debug options must be enabled.

The following table summarizes various options for tracing and diagnostics of the IEC104 to IEC101 / DNP3 / Modbus conversion:

Diagnostic feature	IEC104	IEC101	DNP3	MODBUS
Protocol Tracing	option log_severity '7' option iec104_trace_on '1' /etc/init.d/iecd restart logread -f	option log_severity '7' option iec101_trace_on '1' /etc/init.d/iecd restart logread -f	option log_severity '7' option dnp3_trace_on '1' /etc/init.d/iecd restart logread -f	option log_severity '7' option modbus_trace_on '1' /etc/init.d/iecd restart logread -f
Viewing Rx / Tx Hex dump	option log_severity '7' option iec104_dump_data '1' /etc/init.d/iecd restart logread -f	option log_severity '7' option iec101_dump_data '1' /etc/init.d/iecd restart logread -f	option log_severity '7' option dnp3_dump_data '1' /etc/init.d/iecd restart logread -f	option log_severity '7' option modbus_dump_data '1' /etc/init.d/iecd restart logread -f
Viewing Statistics	iec show stats	iec show stats	iec show stats	iec show stats
Clearing Statistics	iec clear satts	iec clear satts	iec clear satts	iec clear satts
Viewing debug information	N/a	N/a	N/a	iec show modbus debug
View point loaded points	iec show points	iec show points	iec show points	iec show points

Table 132: SCADA applications debug options table

38.7.3 Viewing statistics

To view IEC104 Gateway statistics, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~/iecd# iec show stats  
Modbus stats:
```

```
=====
Modbus DL Frames Rx 20 Tx 3845 TxErrs 0
Modbus DL CRCErrs 0 Bad Addr 0 LengthErrs 0 UnknownPeer 0 SessionClose 0
Modbus App PDU Rx 20 PDU Tx 3845 PDU Rx Errors 0 PDU Rx Exception 0
Modbus App PDU Rx Timeout 3825 Unknown DevAddr 0 Rx Unexpected FC 0
Modbus App PDU TxQ Overrun 0

IEC104 stats:
=====
IEC104 DL state: CLOSED
IEC104 DL uptime: 0 hrs 0 mins 0 secs
IEC104 DL PktsRx 15 PktsTx 21 TxQ Overrun 0
IEC104 App ASDU Rx 6 ASDU Tx 12 Bad ASDU 0
```

38.7.4 Viewing point mappings

To view IEC104 Gateway point mappings, enter:

```
root@GW_router:~/iecd# iec show points
===== IEC104 point map: =====
IEC 104 Types Legend:
-----
SPI: Single point information (1 bit)
DPI: Double point information (2 bit)
MVA: Measured normalized value (16 bit signed)
MVAFP: Measured value, floating point number (32 bit signed)
SVA: Measured scaled value (16 bit signed)
BSTR32: Bitstring of 32 bits
IT: Integrated Total (Counter 32 bit)
CP24: with 3 octet time tag CP24Time2a
CP56: with 7 octet time tag CP56Time2a
NQD: Without quality descriptor
-----
(#1) IOA=64213, Val=0x00000000, IEC104TypeId=30 (SPI-CP56) DevAddr 1 Modbus pt 1, Type 0 (Discreet Input (1bit))
(#2) IOA=64214, Val=0x00000000, IEC104TypeId=30 (SPI-CP56) DevAddr 1 Modbus pt 2, Type 0 (Discreet Input (1bit))
(#3) IOA=64215, Val=0x00000000, IEC104TypeId=30 (SPI-CP56) DevAddr 1 Modbus pt 9, Type 0 (Discreet Input (1bit))
(#4) IOA=64216, Val=0x00000000, IEC104TypeId=30 (SPI-CP56) DevAddr 1 Modbus pt 10, Type 0 (Discreet Input (1bit))
(#5) IOA=64217, Val=0x00000000, IEC104TypeId=34 (MVA-CP56) DevAddr 1 Modbus pt 2, Type 1 (Input Register (16 bit))
```

```
(#6) IOA=64218, Val=0x00000000, IEC104TypeId=34 (MVA-CP56) DevAddr 1 Modbus pt 7, Type 1 (Input Register (16 bit))
```

```
(#7) IOA=64219, Val=0x00000000, IEC104TypeId=34 (MVA-CP56) DevAddr 1 Modbus pt 1, Type 2 (Holding Register (16 bit))
```